



PORSCHE



911

Good to know – Driver's Manual

Porsche, the Porsche crest, 911, PCCB, PCM, PDK, PSM, PTM, Tequipment and other marks are registered trademarks of Dr. Ing. h.c. F. Porsche AG.

Printed in Germany.

Reprinting, even of excerpts, or duplication of any type is only permissible with the written authorisation of Dr. Ing. h.c. F. Porsche AG.

© Dr. Ing. h.c. F. Porsche AG

Porscheplatz 1
70435 Stuttgart
Germany

On-board literature

Always keep this on-board literature in the vehicle and please hand it over to the new owner if you sell your vehicle.

Do you have any questions, suggestions, or ideas for your vehicle or for the on-board literature?

Please write to us:

Dr. Ing. h.c. F. Porsche AG
Vertrieb Customer Relations
Porscheplatz 1
70435 Stuttgart
Germany

Equipment

Because our vehicles undergo continuous development, equipment and specifications may not be as illustrated or described by Porsche in this manual. Items of equipment are sometimes optional or vary depending on the country in which the vehicle is sold. For more information on retrofit equipment, please contact your Porsche partner.

Because of different legal requirements in individual countries, the equipment in your vehicle may vary from that described in this manual. Should your Porsche be fitted with any equipment not described

in this manual, your Porsche partner will be glad to provide information concerning correct operation and care of the items concerned.

Warnings and symbols

Various types of warnings and symbols are used in this manual.



DANGER

Serious injury or death

Failure to observe warnings in the "Danger" category will result in serious injury or death.



WARNING

Possible serious injury or death

Failure to observe warnings in the "Warning" category can result in serious injury or death.



CAUTION

Possible moderate or minor injury

Failure to observe warnings in the "Caution" category can result in moderate or minor injuries.

NOTICE

Possible vehicle damage

Failure to observe warnings in the "Notice" category can result in damage to the vehicle.

Information

Additional information is indicated using the word "Information".

- ✓ Conditions that must be met in order to use a function.
- ▶ Instruction that you must follow.
- 1. If an instruction comprises several steps, these are numbered.

- ▶ Notice on where you can find further important information on a topic.

Airbag warning sticker



Child restraint system on passenger's seat

If a child restraint system is fitted on the passenger seat, there is a danger of serious or fatal injury when the airbag is triggered.

- ▶ **Never** use a rearward-facing child restraint system on the passenger's seat with the **front airbag activated** as it poses a **risk of injury and death** to the child.
- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Child Restraint Systems (Child Seats)" on page 73.



Layout of the Manual

Driver's Manual – Digital



The Driver's Manual is available in digital form on-board in the vehicle and as an app.

▷ From page 3

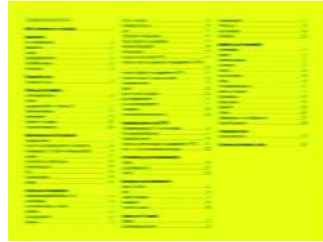
Practical Tips



Browse through and gain additional information about new functions.

▷ From page 26

Contents



Gain an overview and find the topics you are looking for.

Topics from A – Z



Find out how components and controls work and how to operate them.

▷ From page 219

Safety and Driving Pleasure



Find out how to enjoy your driving pleasure safely.

▷ From page 5

Technical Data



Look for specific figures.

▷ From page 280

Overviews



Familiarise yourself with components and controls.

▷ From page 19

Index



Get straight to the information you are looking for.

Driver's Manual - Digital

Further information about your vehicle is available (depending on country) in the **on-board** Driver's Manual in your vehicle and in the Porsche "Good to know" **app**: Video instructions, interactive graphics, practical tips and functions in detail.

On-board



You can find the Driver's Manual in the Porsche Communication Management (PCM) under:



App



You can download the Driver's Manual from the relevant app store by searching for **Gut zu wissen**, **Good to know** or **车主指南**:



Apple, the Apple logo, Apple CarPlay, iPhone, iPod, iOS, Siri and other designations of Apple are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

App Store is a service mark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Contents

More Safety and More Driving Pleasure5

Overview Illustrations

Cockpit	20
Control Panel	21
Driver's Cockpit	19
Filler Openings	24
Overhead Console	23
Switch Panel	22

Practical Tips

Practical Tips	26
----------------------	----

Opening and locking

Central locking	67
Convertible top	82
Driver's Key	97
Engine Compartment Lid	107
Garage door opener (HomeLink®)	117
Luggage Compartment Lid	149
Slide/Tilt Roof	206
Windows	273

Air Conditioning and Ergonomics

Airbag Systems	36
Automatically Controlled 2-Zone Air Conditioning	43
Child Restraint Systems (Child Seats)	73
Mirror	155
Personal Settings	169
Roll-over protection (Cabriolet)	194
Seat Belts	200
Seats	203
Steering Wheel	217
Sun Visors	221

Driving and Driver Assistance Systems

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)	29
Alarm System	38
Auto Start Stop function	49

Brakes	58
Cruise control (CC)	92
Driving programmes	100
Front axle lift system	113
HOLD function	119
Interior lighting	127
Lane Change Assist (LCA)	132
Lane Keep Assist	137
Lights	140
Night View Assist	164
ParkAssist	166
Porsche Active Safe (warning and brake assist)	171
Porsche Active Suspension Management (PASM)	174
Porsche Stability Management (PSM)	185
Porsche Vehicle Tracking System (PVTS)	188
Spoiler	212
Sport Chrono Stopwatch	213
Starting and Stopping the Engine	216
Traffic Sign Detection	231
Transmission	233
Windscreen Wipers	275

Instrument Cluster and PCM

Driving Data Display (Trip Information)	99
Instrument Cluster	120
Porsche Communication Management (PCM)	175
Vehicle Settings	246
Warning and Information Messages	255

Entertainment and Communication

Media	152
Telephone	222
Voice Control	248

Navigation and Connectivity

Apple CarPlay	39
Apps	41
Device Manager	96
Navigation	159

Porsche Connect	182
-----------------------	-----

Luggage and Transport

Cupholders	94
Luggage compartment	146
Roof Transport System	195
Smoker's Package	210
Socket	211
Storage	219

Mobility and Breakdown Assistance

Battery	52
Brake Fluid	57
Car Care	61
Coolant	90
Emergency Call System	103
Engine oil	108
Flat Tyre	110
Fuses	114
Jack and Lifting Platform	128
Jump-lead Starting	129
Refuelling	191
Screenwash	199
Tests on Test Stands	227
Towing	228
Tyres and Wheels	238

Technical data

Radio equipment in accordance with 2014/53/EU	288
Radio equipment outside European countries	292
Software licences	297
Technical Data	280

Index	303
-------------	-----

Same Driving Pleasure, More Safety

Your Porsche: Extreme performance, extreme sportiness. A fascinating experience - no doubt about it. But only if you can remain relaxed whatever the situation. Therefore, for us safety is also a matter of maximum quality.

Here you can find out how you can play your part in ensuring safety while driving your Porsche.

Perfect technology: a prerequisite for your safety

High-quality materials and excellent workmanship will keep your car on the road for many years to come. In order to achieve its full potential, the vehicle requires attention and care. That way, you will also be able to rely on your Porsche in critical situations.

Checking the vehicle for damage and correct functioning



A vehicle with technical defects may be the cause of accidents due to faulty operating behaviour, for example.

- ▶ Check your vehicle regularly (at least once a month and before any long journey), to ensure it is in good technical condition. In particular, pay attention to the following:

- Tyres are not damaged, have the right pressure and sufficient tread
- Headlights, brake lights and direction indicators all work
- Aerodynamic components are undamaged
- Wiper blades are intact
- Windscreen/windows are unobstructed without any cracks or damage to the glass
- Exterior and interior mirrors are intact and correctly positioned
- Sensors and cameras are without cracks or damage
- Cooling air ducts, sensors and cameras are not obstructed (e.g. through films or stone shields, number plate holders)
- ▶ Only use telephones or 2-way radios inside the vehicle with an external antenna connected, so as not to exceed the limits for electromagnetic radiation in the vehicle.

Checking tyres for damage



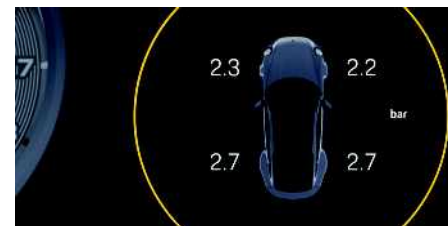
Damaged tyres may burst while you are driving. You may lose control of the vehicle.

- ▶ Depending on how often you drive and the conditions, check tyres regularly – at least once a month – for foreign bodies, nicks, cuts, cracks

and bulges. Remember to also check the side walls of the tyres.

- ▶ If in doubt, have the tyres and the entire wheel checked by a qualified specialist workshop.
- ▶ Do **not** continue driving with damaged tyres. Have damaged tyres replaced immediately: Visit a qualified workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Adjusting the tyre pressure



Excessively low or high tyre pressure irreparably damages the tyre and the wheel, lengthens the braking distance and greatly increases the risk of an accident. If the tyre pressure is too low, fuel consumption can increase noticeably.

- ▶ Adapt tyre pressure to suit your specific tyres and the payload.
 - ▷ Please refer to chapter "Technical Data" on page 280.
 - ▷ Please refer to chapter "Tyres and Wheels" on page 238.
- ▶ Make sure that the settings in the Tyre Pressure Monitoring menu on the multi-function display correspond to the tyres fitted on the vehicle and load condition of the vehicle.
 - ▷ Please refer to chapter "Configuring Tyre

Pressure Monitoring (TPM) in the PCM" on page 239.

- ▶ When a red tyre pressure warning appears on the instrument cluster: stop immediately in a suitable place and check the tyres for damage. Do **not** continue driving with damaged tyres. If necessary, remedy the damage with tyre sealant.
 - ▶ Please refer to chapter "Flat Tyre" on page 110.

Checking the lights



If lights are faulty, your vehicle is in the dark and hard to see in conditions of poor visibility. Other drivers will see you too late and you could be involved in an accident. The lights to check are:

- Parking light, dipped beam, driving lights, high beam
 - Direction indicators, brake lights, reversing lights
 - Fog lights
- ▶ Check that all lights are working, and have defective lights repaired immediately.

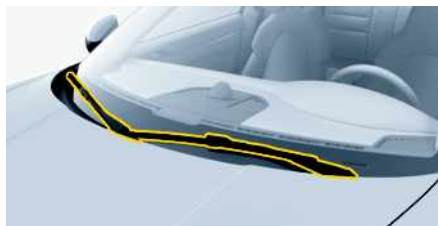
Checking aerodynamic components



Damaged or missing aerodynamic components (e.g. spoilers or underbody panelling) impair vehicle handling.

- ▶ Inspect your vehicle for signs of damage.
- ▶ Have damaged or missing components replaced immediately.

Keeping windows and wiper blades clean and in good working order



Dirty windscreens, windows and defective wiper blades reduce visibility and dramatically increase the risk of an accident.

- ▶ Keep the vehicle and windscreen/windows clean.
- ▶ Thaw frozen wiper blades and free them from the windscreen.
- ▶ Replace wiper blades regularly, or at the latest when they leave streaks on the windscreen.

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Windscreen Wipers" on page 275.

Maintenance and modifications only by qualified specialist workshops



Any modification to the vehicle can adversely affect or even disable safety functions. Unauthorised work performed during the warranty period may result in claims being invalidated.

- ▶ Have all maintenance and all modifications to the vehicle performed solely by a qualified specialist workshop. This ensures that your vehicle remains reliable and safe to drive, and that no consequential damage occurs to your vehicle. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Diagnostic socket



The diagnostic socket is used to connect diagnostic equipment in qualified specialist workshops.

External equipment (e.g. navigation units, head-up displays) connected to the diagnostic socket can impair the function of the vehicle systems and run down or damage the battery (exhaustive discharge) when the ignition is switched off. The external equipment and cables can obstruct clearance around the pedals or become caught between the pedals when braking or changing direction.

- ▶ Do not connect any equipment to the diagnostic socket.
- ▶ Do not place any equipment or cables in the driver's footwell.

Spare parts for your Porsche



- ▶ Only use genuine Porsche spare parts for your vehicle, or spare parts of an equivalent quality

that have been manufactured according to the specifications and production requirements of Porsche. This ensures that your vehicle remains reliable and safe to drive, and that no consequential damage occurs to your vehicle. You can obtain these parts from a Porsche partner or a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

- ▶ Only use accessories that are from the Porsche Equipment range or have been tested and approved by Porsche. For information on Porsche Equipment: Contact your Porsche partner.

Information

If other spare parts or accessories are used, Porsche refuses to accept liability for any damage caused by their use. Even if the supplier of other spare parts or accessories is a recognised supplier, the safety of your vehicle may still be compromised.

Using spare parts or accessories that are not approved by Porsche may invalidate your vehicle warranty.

Loading, safety systems, children in the vehicle: know-how for Porsche drivers

With your Porsche, you can accelerate to over 100 km/h (62 mph) in just a few seconds. With this much power at your disposal, you should do everything to ensure safety before you set off.

Therefore, put the same passion into getting reading for a trip as you do into driving.

Your lifesaver: Using seat belts correctly



Seat belts can only protect you from injury if they are used correctly and in good working order.

Information

Severe injuries can occur at speeds as low as 30 km/h (20 mph) if you are not wearing a seat belt. Safety systems only protect you when working in combination. For example, airbags can only provide the right protection if the safety belt is also put on correctly.

- ▶ Always fasten seat belts tightly, even on short journeys.
- ▶ Use one seat belt to secure one occupant only.
- ▶ Remove bulky items of clothing (e.g. winter coats).
- ▶ Do not place the seat belts across hard or fragile objects (e.g. glasses or ball-point pens).
- ▶ Do not twist the seat belts.
- ▶ Always make sure unused seat belts are completely retracted.
- ▶ For pregnant women: Pregnant drivers or passengers should position the lap belt under the belly and the shoulder belt taut over the chest.
- ▶ If worn or damaged, have the belt, belt buckle or attachment points replaced.

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Seat Belts" on page 200.

Airbag system



Airbag systems can only perform their protective function if all occupants have their seat belts fastened and maintain the correct seat position. Objects and luggage must be stowed safely.

- ▶ Make sure that there are no persons, animals or objects between the occupants and the area into which the airbag deploys.
- ▶ Keep a distance from the airbags, e.g. do not lean against the inside of the doors. Always keep your feet in the footwell when driving. Do not put your feet on the dashboard or seat surface.

Airbag systems that have been tampered with offer no protection. They may either not trigger or be triggered in an uncontrolled manner. An airbag that triggers in an uncontrolled manner can cause serious injuries.

- ▶ Do not use seat covers.
- ▶ Do not attach any additional trims or stickers to

the steering wheel or in the vicinity of the airbags.

- ▶ Do not route any cables of additional electrical equipment in the vicinity of the airbag wiring.
- ▶ Do not remove airbag components (e.g. steering wheel, front seats, roof trims).
- ▶ Do not modify the wiring or components of the airbag system.
 - ▶ Please refer to chapter "Airbag Systems" on page 36.

Securing all objects in the passenger compartment



An unsecured or incorrectly positioned load in the passenger compartment can slide around as a result of braking or acceleration as well as during changes of direction or an accident. This can endanger and injure vehicle occupants.

Information

In the event of a collision at 50 km/h (30 mph), for example, unsecured objects can be thrown forwards with a force up to 50 times their weight. For example, a 1.5 litre bottle of water has a force of up to 75 kg as it flies through the interior.

- ▶ Always secure items for transport.
- ▶ Always stow loads securely, e.g. in the luggage compartment.
- ▶ Stow small items in storage compartments and close them all. Never let objects protrude from storage compartments.
- ▶ Never place objects on top of the dashboard.
- ▶ Secure loads with tie-down belts (tear strength at least 700 kg).
- ▶ Do not transport any heavy objects in open storage compartments.
- ▶ Also provide your passengers with all information regarding safety measures.

For correctly loading your Porsche and stowing items:

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Storage" on page 219.
- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Luggage compartment" on page 146.

Preventing crushing hazards



Persons or animals can get caught or crushed if they are in the range of movement of the vehicle parts below. These parts include the following, among others:

- Adjustable front seats
- Doors
- Window
- Slide/tilt roof

- Flaps and lids
- Lids of storage compartments
- ▶ Make sure that no persons or animals are within the range of movement when moving these vehicle components.

Supervising children's behaviour



Children often cannot judge dangers correctly and may behave inappropriately in dangerous situations. Children can accidentally trigger automatic settings (e.g. seat adjustment) and suffer injury. Children may not be able to exit the vehicle in emergency situations e.g. overheated passenger compartment. This can be life-threatening, especially for small children.

- ▶ Keep children away from live or hot parts, e.g. the exhaust tailpipe.
- ▶ Keep toxic materials, e.g. tyre sealing compound, engine oil, out of the reach of children.
- ▶ Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended.

Using a child restraint system safely



Child restraint systems can only work if they are correctly installed.

- ▶ **Only** use child restraint systems that are approved for your Porsche.
- ▶ Before you use a child restraint system: Read and follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions as well as this manual.
 - ▷ Please refer to chapter "Child Restraint Systems (Child Seats)" on page 73.

Safe and competent driving: always make the right decision

Your Porsche is an all-rounder. From Launch Control to the emergency braking function – once you let it loose, everything is possible. However, at the end of the day, you are responsible for keeping your power house under control.

Avoid distraction



If you use the PCM or other components in the vehicle while driving, you are distracted from the traffic and may not react in time to dangerous situations. For your safety, some functions are only available when the vehicle is stationary.

- ▶ Never adjust the mirror, seat or steering wheel while driving. The seat or steering wheel may move unexpectedly far. You may lose control of the vehicle. Adjust the mirror, seat and steering wheel position before driving.
- ▶ Only use the multi-function steering wheel, infotainment system, etc. while driving if the traffic situation permits. In case of doubt, stop the vehicle when it is safe to do so.
- ▶ Do not use mobile phones or other mobile devices while driving.
- ▶ Always use hands-free equipment.
- ▶ Do not reach through the steering wheel spokes while driving. Otherwise, you may not be able to react in time to dangerous situations.

Awareness of braking behaviour in rain and snow



In heavy rain, while driving through water or after leaving a car wash, a film of water may form on the brakes, delaying the braking action and requiring increased pressure on the brake pedal.

Moreover, after a long drive in wintry road conditions, a coating may form on brake discs and pads that significantly reduces friction and therefore also the braking action.

- ▶ Brake the brakes dry, especially before parking the vehicle. This will prevent corrosion.
- ▶ Corroded brakes tend to "judder". If braking comfort is noticeably impaired, have the brake system checked.

Suitable tyres and appropriate driving style



- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Tyres and Wheels" on page 238.

Responding correctly to uneven running or vibrations

Damage to the tyres or vehicle can lead to uneven running or vibration while driving. You may lose control of the vehicle.

- ▶ Reduce your speed immediately, but without braking sharply.
- ▶ Stop the vehicle and check the tyres. If you cannot find a cause for the problem, continue driving carefully and have the problem fixed. Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Keeping tyres in safe condition

Damaged tyres can burst, especially at high speeds. Prevent damage to tyres by driving in a manner that protects your tyres.

- ▶ Cross kerb edges slowly and at right angles if possible.
- ▶ Avoid driving over steep or sharp kerbs.

Running in new tyres

New tyres do not yet have maximum adhesion to the road surface and tend to slip.

- ▶ Run in new tyres at a moderate speed for the first 200 km (125 miles).

Driving with winter tyres

Winter tyres are subject to maximum speeds. If you exceed the maximum permitted speed, a tyre may burst.

- ▶ Always observe the maximum permitted speed for the tyres you are using.
- ▶ Affix a sticker showing the maximum permitted speed in the driver's field of vision. Observe country-specific laws.
- ▶ Setting the maximum permitted speed as the speed limit via the instrument cluster:

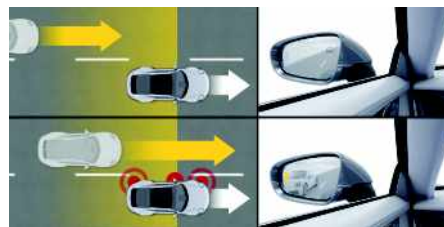
- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Instrument Cluster" on page 120.

Driving with summer tyres

Parking or manoeuvring at outside temperatures below 15 °C may result in noises.

- ▶ Change to winter tyres when outside temperatures are below 7 °C.

Assistance systems and their limitations



Your Porsche is equipped with assistance systems that enhance your safety and driving comfort.

None of these systems can overcome the laws of physics affecting driving.

- ▶ Do not be tempted to take greater risks with your safety. Assistance systems cannot reduce the risk of accidents caused by an inappropriate driving style.
- ▶ Assistance systems are no substitute for your careful attention. Always remain attentive so that you can react appropriately to the traffic situation.
- ▶ Familiarise yourself with assistance systems before you use them.

Here you can find the Assistance systems at a glance:

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)	▷ p. 29
Anti-lock brake system (ABS)	▷ p. 185
HOLD function	▷ p. 119
Automatic headlights, PDLS Plus, dynamic high beam	▷ p. 140
Night View Assist	▷ p. 164
ParkAssist, reversing camera, Surround View	▷ p. 166
Porsche Active Safe (PAS)	▷ p. 171
Porsche Active Suspension Management (PASM)	▷ p. 174
Porsche Stability Management (PSM)	▷ p. 185
Porsche Vehicle Tracking System (PVTS)	▷ p. 188
Tyre Pressure Monitoring (TPM)	▷ p. 238
Lane Keep Assist	▷ p. 137
Lane Change Assist (LCA)	▷ p. 132
Cruise control	▷ p. 92
Traffic sign detection	▷ p. 231

Emergency braking function



You can carry out emergency braking using the electric parking brake, for example if the conventional footbrake is defective.

Emergency braking takes place with very high braking power. As a result, the traffic behind may be endangered.

- ▶ Only use the emergency braking function in an emergency situation and not during normal driving.
- ▶ For emergency braking, pull and hold switch (Ⓢ). To stop braking, release the switch.
 - ▷ Please refer to chapter "Brakes" on page 58.

Driving with a loaded vehicle



The handling of your Porsche changes depending on the vehicle load. If you are using a roof transport system, there is also greater wind resistance.

- ▶ Adapt your driving style to the changed vehicle handling.
- ▶ Do not drive at a speed of more than 130 km/h (80 mph) with the roof transport system fitted and loaded.
- ▶ Do not drive at a speed of more than 180 km/h (110 mph) with the roof transport system fitted but not loaded.
- ▶ Do not exceed the maximum gross weight and axle load.

Driving off with Launch Control



The vehicle accelerates very quickly with Launch Control activated when driving off. In certain circumstances (poor road conditions, lack of attention, etc.) you may lose control of the vehicle or endanger other road users.

- ▶ Only use Launch Control on public roads if road and traffic conditions permit.
- ▶ Do not endanger other road users when driving off with Launch Control.
 - ▷ Please refer to chapter "Transmission" on page 233.
- ▶ By switching the sports exhaust system to the sound-optimised mode, the very sporty driving style is accompanied by a significantly increased noise level. Therefore, assume your social responsibility and respect nearby residents, especially at night.

Reacting correctly to warning signals



If the systems detect malfunctions or defective parts, your vehicle warns you with lights or messages on the instrument cluster or PCM. If you ignore vehicle warning signals, the risk of accidents, injuries and damage to the vehicle may increase.

- ▶ Familiarise yourself with the meaning of warning lights and messages before starting to drive so that you can respond correctly to the warnings. Stop driving if necessary.
 - ▷ Please refer to chapter "Warning and Information Messages" on page 255.
 - ▷ Please refer to chapter "Instrument Cluster" on page 120.

Hazards during refuelling



Fuel is highly flammable and can deflagrate or explode. Fuel and fuel vapours are also harmful to health.

- ▶ Fire, naked flames and smoking are prohibited when refuelling.
- ▶ Do not inhale fuel vapours.
- ▶ Do not let fuel come into contact with skin or clothing.
 - ▷ Please refer to chapter "Refuelling" on page 191.

If a spare canister in the vehicle is damaged in an accident, fuel may leak out of it and ignite or explode.

- ▶ Do not carry spare canisters in the vehicle.

Hazardous fluids



Not only fuel, but also engine and transmission oil, battery acid, coolant and brake fluid are also hazardous to health.

- ▶ Only work on the vehicle in the open or in well-ventilated spaces.
- ▶ Fluid containers must be labelled appropriately and must be kept out of reach for children.
- ▶ Dispose of residues in an environmentally friendly manner and according to regulations.

Engine oil can ignite. Cloths containing residues of engine oil that are thrown away or stored without ventilation can ignite by themselves and cause a fire.

- ▶ Soak up spilled engine oil with cloths.
- ▶ Keep cloths saturated with engine oil in a ventilated place until they are disposed of.

Toxic exhaust gases



Exhaust gas contains colourless and odourless carbon monoxide, which is toxic even in low concentrations.

- ▶ Turn off the engine when the vehicle is stationary. Never leave the engine running unnecessarily in confined spaces.
- ▶ Perform work with the engine running only outdoors or with suitable extraction systems for the exhaust gases.

Parking the vehicle safely



If the vehicle is not parked correctly, it can roll away uncontrolled, endangering people or causing material damage.

Before you leave the vehicle:

- ▶ Activate the electric parking brake.
- ▶ Vehicles with PDK: Activate the transmission parking lock via the P button on the selector

lever. If the operating mode **P** is flashing on the instrument cluster, the parking lock is not correctly engaged. Press the P button on the selector lever again or switch off the ignition.

When the ignition is switched off, the transmission parking lock is automatically engaged.

- ▶ Vehicles with manual transmission: Engage first or reverse gear.

The exhaust system is very hot when the engine is running and for a while after the engine has been stopped. Risk of burns and fire!

- ▶ Do not park your vehicle in places where combustible materials, such as dry grass or leaves, can come into contact with the hot exhaust system.
- ▶ If you are standing behind the vehicle, maintain a safe distance from the tailpipes.
- ▶ Make sure that children do not burn themselves on the tailpipes.

Just in case: safety in the event of a breakdown or emergency

If you break down, pay attention to this information – for your own safety!

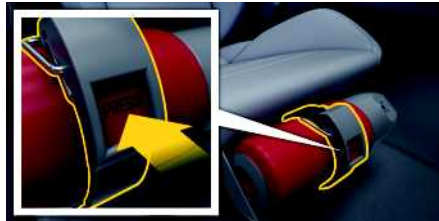
Do not use voice control in an emergency



In emergency situations, stress may cause your voice to change so that voice control does not recognise your instructions.

- ▶ Do **not** use voice control in an emergency.

Removing the fire extinguisher



If available in the relevant vehicle, the fire extinguisher is located under the passenger seat.

- ▶ Hold the extinguisher with one hand and press the button **PRESS** on the fire extinguisher holder with the other hand.

In order to ensure correct, safe operation of the fire extinguisher, observe the following points:

- ▶ Observe the inspection intervals for the fire extinguisher. If the fire extinguisher is used after

the inspection interval has elapsed, functionality is no longer guaranteed.

- ▶ Observe the operating instructions on the fire extinguisher.
- ▶ Observe the safety instructions on the leaflet supplied by the fire extinguisher manufacturer on the extinguisher handle.
- ▶ The fire extinguisher should be checked by a specialist workshop every 1-2 years to ensure correct operation.
- ▶ Have the fire extinguisher refilled after use.

Caution when working on the vehicle



The engine and adjacent components in the engine compartment get very hot when the engine is running. The coolant tank is pressurised.

The fans can start running automatically at any time.

- ▶ Switch off the engine and allow to cool if possible.
- ▶ Keep parts of the body, clothing, long hair and jewellery away from all moving parts, such as fans and drive belts.
- ▶ Wear safety gloves that provide protection from hot parts.
- ▶ Only add coolant when the engine is cold and the vehicle is level. Do **not** open the coolant tank when the engine is hot.

Protective equipment must be worn when performing certain operations on the vehicle, e.g. gloves to prevent cuts.

- ▶ Always have work on the vehicle carried out by a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Jump-lead starting



Unsuitable jump leads or an incorrect starting procedure can cause a short circuit and lead to a fire. In addition, there are risks of injury in the engine compartment due to parts that may start up automatically, such as radiator fans.

Before providing or receiving jump starting:

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Jump-lead Starting" on page 129.

Towing

Vehicles with PDK



Danger of significant damage to the vehicle as a result of tow-starting and push-starting.

- ▶ **Never** tow-start or push-start the vehicle.
- ▶ Before towing your vehicle or having your vehicle towed:
 - ▷ Please refer to chapter "Towing" on page 228.

Vehicles with manual transmission¹

There is an increased risk of accident when towing. Power assistance may not be available, so that steering requires greater effort. If the brake booster has failed, you will require a great deal of force for braking.

- ▶ Exercise the utmost caution when towing if the engine has stopped or if power assistance or the brake booster has failed.
- ▶ Do not tow vehicles with defective brakes.
 - ▷ Please refer to chapter "Towing" on page 228.

Flat tyres



If you drive with damaged tyres, depending on your speed it may not be possible to steer the vehicle safely.

- ▶ **Never** continue driving with a flat tyre.
- ▶ Park the vehicle correctly and safely, and have the problem fixed.
 - ▷ Please refer to chapter "Flat Tyre" on page 110.

After a collision



The safety systems may not be operational (e.g. seat-belt pretensioners and airbags) after a collision. The safety systems can then no longer protect you.

1. Equipment may be available for use only at a later time or may only be available in certain markets.

- ▶ Have the safety systems checked even if they were not triggered.
- ▶ Always have triggered safety systems replaced. Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Before driving off: important information on your Porsche

Running in the vehicle



In a new vehicle, the moving parts first have to be run in with each other. The first 3,000 km (1,865 miles) are required for this. The oil and fuel consumption may be somewhat higher than normal during this time.

Drive as follows during the running-in period:

- ▶ Preferably take longer trips. If possible, avoid frequent cold starts with short distances.
- ▶ Do not participate in motor racing events, sports driving schools, or similar.
- ▶ Avoid high engine speeds above 4,000 rpm. Drive at low speeds when the engine is cold.

Running in new brake pads



New brake pads and brake discs have to be "bedded in" and therefore only attain optimal friction when the vehicle has covered several hundred miles.

The somewhat reduced braking action requires greater force when pressing the brake pedal. This is also the case whenever the brake pads or brake discs are replaced.

Paying attention to ground clearance



The vehicle has low ground clearance and can therefore easily bottom.

- ▶ Avoid steep ramps.
- ▶ Drive carefully in the following situations:
 - Steep uphill and downhill slopes, e.g. in multi-storey car parks
 - Kerbs
 - Uneven road surfaces
 - Lifting platforms

Vehicles with front axle lift system: The body can be raised by approx. 40 mm at the front of the vehicle (front edge of front spoiler).

Driving on race circuits



Compared with driving on roads, driving on race circuits involves disproportionately high vehicle loads, which pure race vehicles are able to withstand thanks to short maintenance and component reconditioning intervals. This includes carrying out checks and replacing individual components where necessary after each race circuit session, through to overhauling entire assemblies after a specified period.

- ▶ Always make enquiries about the current stipulations before driving on race circuits: Contact your Porsche partner.

Following race circuit sessions, "cooling laps" must be performed to control the temperature reduction of chassis components which are subjected to particularly strong thermal load. Instantaneous stopping of the vehicle would result in a further rise in component temperature due to stationary heat build-up. This can irreparably damage individual components.

Brake system

Brake fluid absorbs moisture from the air over time. This absorption of water lowers the boiling point and can considerably impair braking efficiency at high temperatures.

Brake pads and brake discs are subjected to very high stress when driving on a race circuit.

- ▶ If the brake fluid is more than 12 months old: Replace brake fluid before driving on a race circuit.
- ▶ Have the brake pads and brake discs checked for wear before and after driving on race circuits.

Tyres

Tyres are also subjected to very high loads when driving on a race circuit.

- ▶ Have tyres checked for wear before and after driving on race circuits.
- ▶ Do not fit racing tyres. Racing tyres are not approved by Porsche.

Engine oil

- ▶ Check the engine oil level before and after driving on race circuits.
 - ▷ Please refer to chapter "Engine oil" on page 108.

Before driving abroad



Not all Porsche models are sold in all countries. As a result, spare parts may not be available, or the Porsche Partner may not be able to carry out all repair work.

Find out the following information before driving abroad:

- Can the vehicle be repaired if it breaks down?

- Does the vehicle require technical adjustments?
- Is the fuel octane rating sufficient?
- Do the headlights need to be changed to left/right-hand traffic?
- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Vehicle Settings" on page 246.

Data processing in the vehicle



Electronic control units are installed in your vehicle. Some of these are required for the operational safety of your vehicle, while others provide assistance while driving (driver assistance systems). Moreover, your vehicle offers comfort and entertainment functions which are also made possible through electronic control units.

Your vehicle has a unique chassis number. This vehicle identification number (VIN) can be traced back to the present owner and to previous owners of the vehicle through the local authorities within the European Union. There are also other ways of tracing data collected from the vehicle back to the owner or driver, e.g. using the registration number.

Storing technical data in the vehicle

Electronic control units have data memories that can temporarily or permanently store technical information about vehicle status, component stress, servicing requirements, events or faults. Generally speaking, this technical information documents the

status of a component, module, system or environment such as:

- Operating states of system components (e.g. fill levels)
- Status messages about the vehicle and its individual components (e.g. wheel revolutions, speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration)
- Malfunctions and faults in important system components (e.g. lights, brakes)
- Information about events that can damage the vehicle
- The vehicle response in special driving situations (e.g. triggering an airbag, activation of the stability control system)
- Environmental conditions (e.g. temperature)

In addition to providing the actual vehicle function, this data is used to detect and correct faults and enables the manufacturer to optimise vehicle functions. Most of this data is volatile and is only processed in the vehicle itself. Only a small part of the data is stored in event or fault memories. Moreover, your vehicle offers comfort and entertainment functions which are also made possible through electronic control units.

Read-out of technical data

You can have data that is only stored locally in the vehicle read out with the help of technical experts, e.g. in a workshop, for a certain fee if necessary. To comply with statutory regulations, Porsche - as the manufacturer - may be required to release data stored by the manufacturer in so far as is necessary at the request of government bodies in individual cases (e.g. investigation of an offence).

When having your vehicle serviced, service network employees (e.g. workshops, breakdown services, manufacturers) can read out the technical information from the vehicle. Services include e.g. repair services, service processes, warranty claims and

quality assurance measures. The data is read out using a legally prescribed connection for OBD (on-board diagnosis) in the vehicle. The data is collected, processed and used by the relevant service network personnel and may be sent to Porsche in order to comply with product monitoring obligations or to improve quality for example. The fault and event memories in the vehicle can be reset by a repair workshop in the context of repair or service operations.

Using functions in the vehicle

Within the scope of the selected equipment options, you are able to enter information such as multimedia and address book data or navigation destinations and other settings in the vehicle comfort and infotainment functions. This data may be stored locally in the vehicle or it may be contained on a device which you have connected to the vehicle (e.g. mobile phone, USB stick or MP3 player). Where this data has been stored in the vehicle, you can delete it at any time. This data is only sent to third parties at your request and particularly while using online services, only in accordance with the settings you have selected.

If your vehicle has the required equipment, you can control your connected mobile phone or another mobile device using the controls integrated in the vehicle. Picture and sound from your mobile phone can be output via the multimedia system. Certain information can also be transferred to your mobile phone. This includes, depending on the relevant type of integration, e.g. general vehicle information or position data. This allows optimal use of selected apps on the mobile phone, e.g. for using a navigation system or playing music. Active access to the vehicle data via the mobile phone does not take place. The type of subsequent data processing is determined by the provider of the relevant app being used. Whether and which settings you can configure

for this depends on the app and the operating system on your mobile phone.

Use of online services

If your vehicle has a wireless network connection, this can be used to exchange data between your vehicle, the surrounding area and other systems. You can connect to the wireless network via the send and receive unit in the vehicle or via your connected mobile devices (e.g. mobile phone). Online functions can be used via this wireless network connection. These include online services and applications/apps that are available to you through Porsche or other providers.

For Porsche online services, the various functions are described at a suitable place (e.g. the Porsche Connect website) and the related data protection legislation information is provided. Personal data can be used for the provision of online services. The required data exchange takes place via a protected connection, e.g. with the Porsche IT systems set up for this purpose. Collection, processing and use of personal data beyond that required for the provision of services takes place exclusively on the basis of a legal authorisation or consent.

Usually, you can activate or deactivate the (often fee-based) services and functions and in some cases, even the entire data connection in the vehicle. Excluded from this are in particular functions and services required by law.

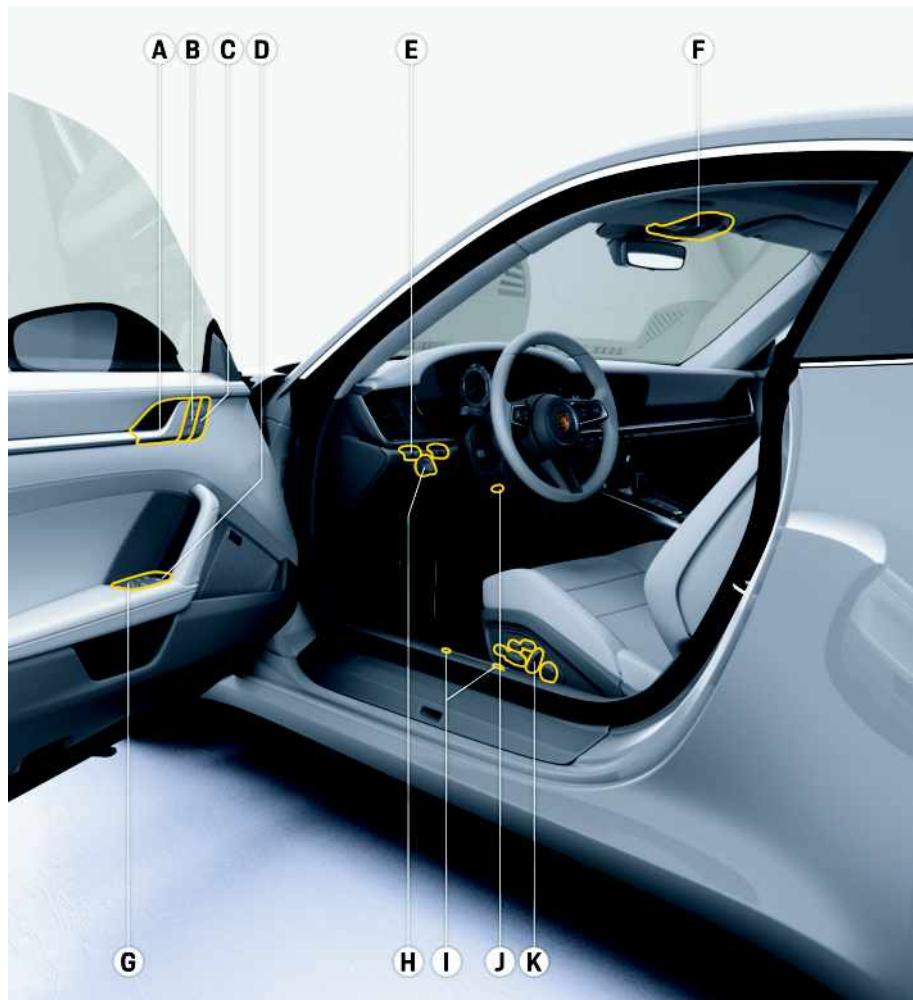
If the option exists to use the online services of other providers, these are the responsibility of and subject to the data protection policy and terms of usage of the relevant provider. Porsche has no influence on the data exchanged in these cases. Please therefore obtain information from the relevant service provider on the type, scope and purpose of such data collection and the use of personal data in the context of third-party services.

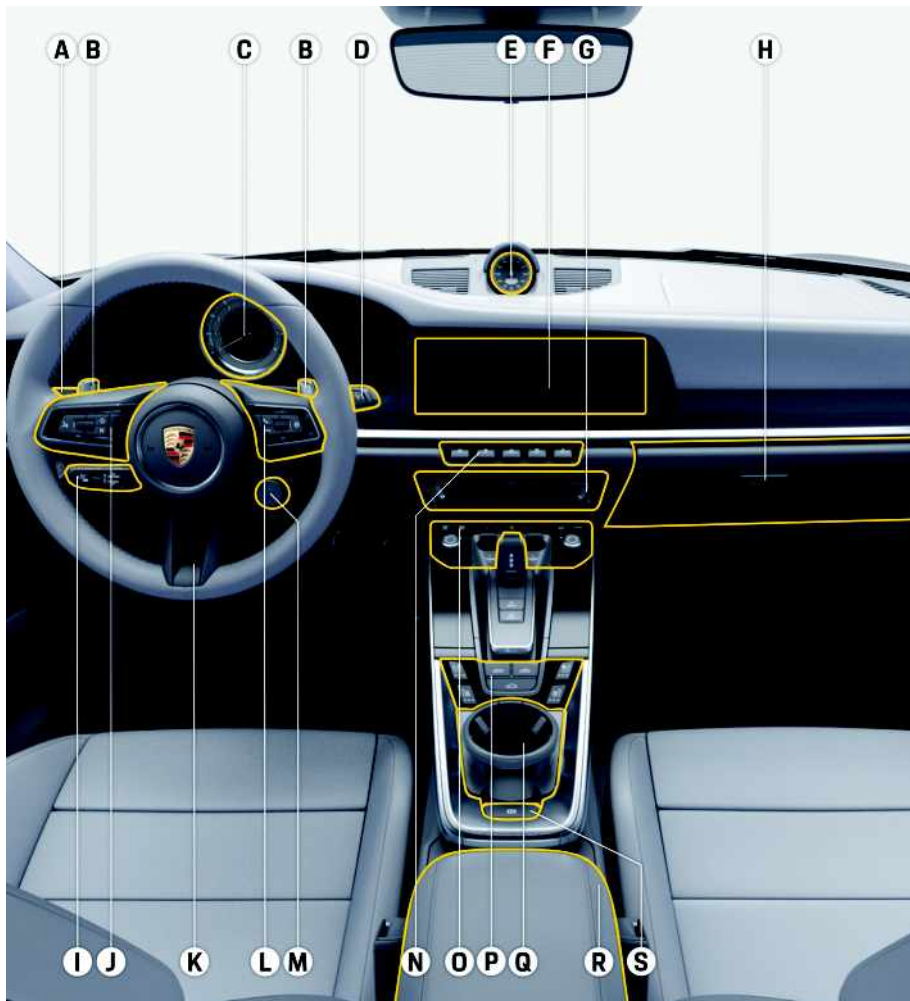
Overview Illustrations

On the following pages, you will find overview illustrations of all areas of the vehicle, with a brief explanation. Further information can be found on the relevant page.

Driver's Cockpit

- A** Door opener ▷ p. 67
- B** Memory buttons ▷ p. 169
- Personal settings
- C** Central locking buttons ▷ p. 70
- D** Power windows ▷ p. 273
- E** Light buttons ▷ p. 140
- F** Overhead console ▷ p. 23
- G** Exterior mirror adjustment ▷ p. 155
- H** Ignition lock ▷ p. 216
- I** Engine compartment lid release ▷ p. 107
- Luggage compartment lid release ▷ p. 149
- J** Steering wheel adjustment ▷ p. 217
- K** Seat adjustment ▷ p. 203





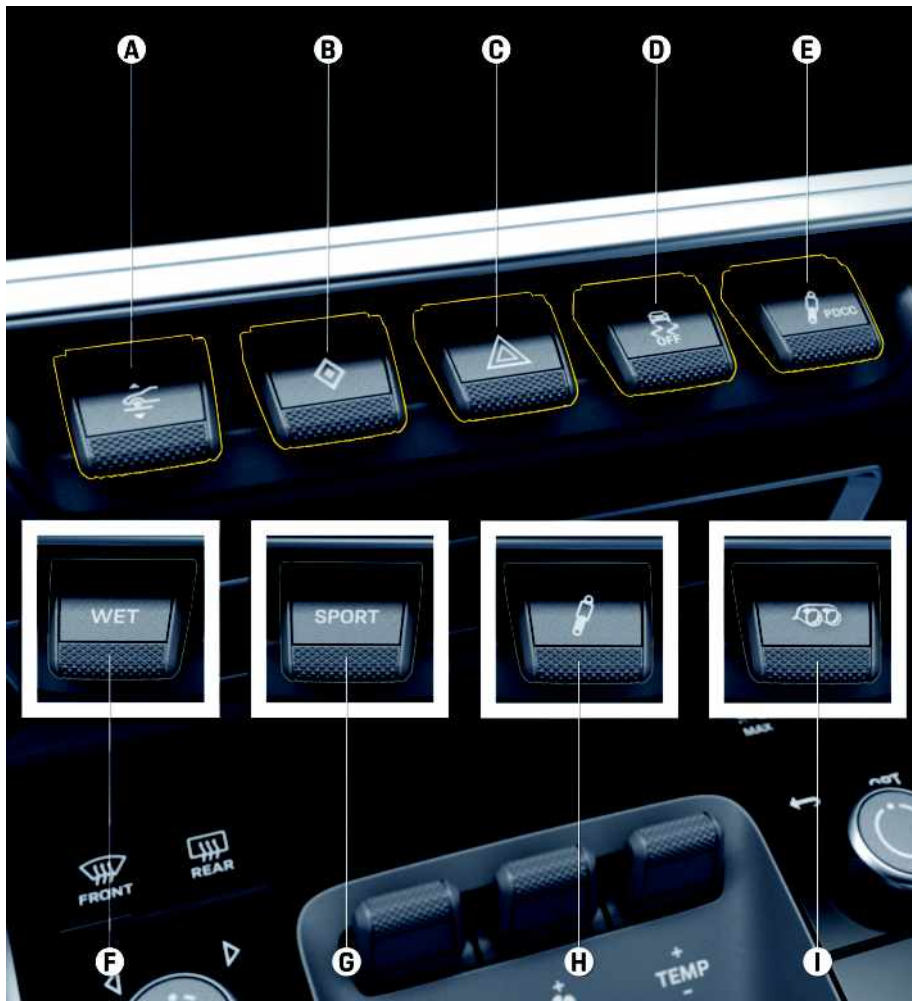
Cockpit

A	Direction indicators and high beam	▷	p. 143
B	Gearshift paddles	▷	p. 233
C	Instrument cluster	▷	p. 120
D	Windscreen wipers	▷	p. 275
E	Sport Chrono stopwatch	▷	p. 213
F	Porsche Communication Management (PCM)	▷	p. 175
G	Air vents	▷	p. 46
H	Glove box lock	▷	p. 219
	Airbag deactivation in the glove box	▷	p. 37
I	Cruise control	▷	p. 92
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)	▷	p. 29
J	Voice controls, infotainment, instrument cluster	▷	p. 122
K	Heated steering wheel	▷	p. 217
L	Telephone controls, infotainment, instrument cluster	▷	p. 122
M	Mode switch	▷	p. 100
N	Switch panel	▷	p. 22
O	Air-conditioning upper control panel	▷	p. 21
P	Lower control panel	▷	p. 21
Q	Ashtray	▷	p. 210
	Cupholder	▷	p. 94
R	Armrest, storage compartment	▷	p. 220
S	Electric parking brake	▷	p. 58

Control Panel

- | | | |
|----------|--|---------------------|
| A | Switch PCM on and off
Adjust the volume | ▷ p. 175 |
| B | Air-conditioning control panel | ▷ p. 43 |
| C | Rotary push button (for operating the PCM) | ▷ p. 178 |
| D | Parking lock | ▷ p. 233 |
| E | Manual shifting mode | ▷ p. 234 |
| F | Seat heating/seat ventilation | ▷ p. 205 |
| G | Control panel for slide/tilt roof
Convertible top | ▷ p. 206
▷ p. 82 |





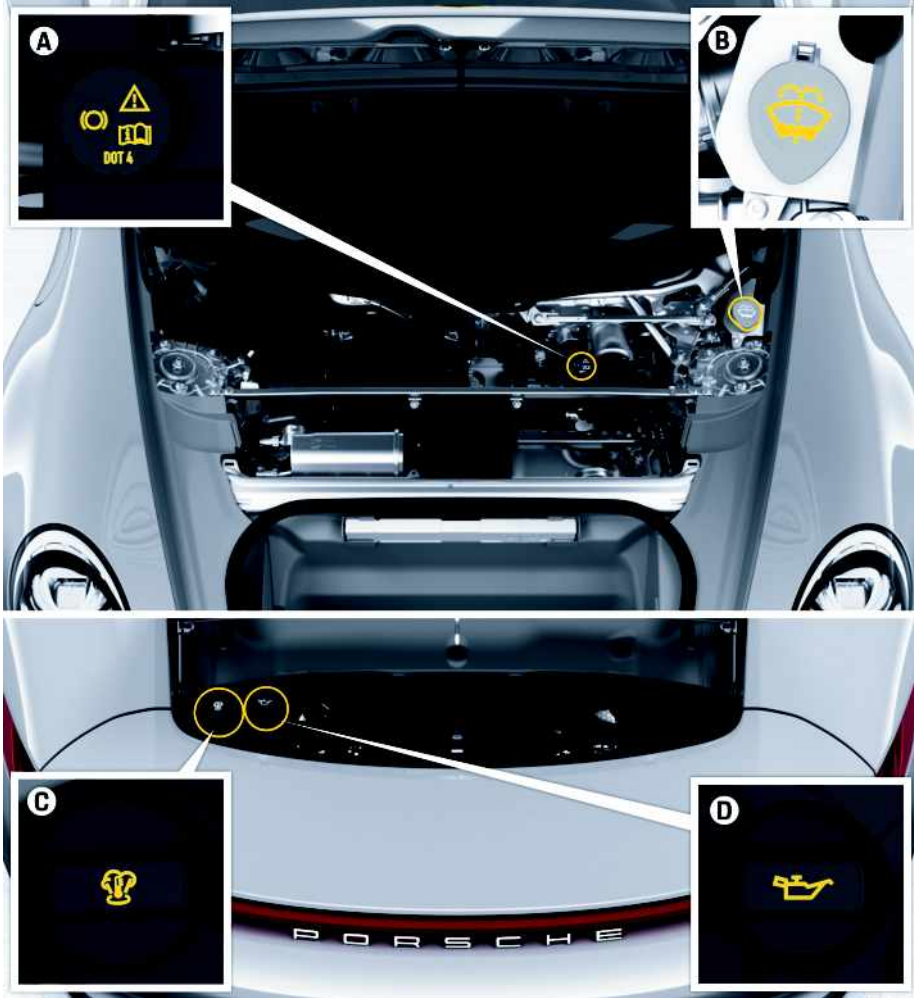
Switch Panel

- | | | | |
|----------|---|---|--------|
| A | Front axle ride-height lift system | ▷ | p. 113 |
| B | Quick access button (◊ button) for individual function assignment | ▷ | p. 246 |
| C | Hazard warning lights | ▷ | p. 145 |
| D | Porsche Stability Management (PSM) | ▷ | p. 185 |
| E | Porsche Active Suspension Management (PASM) with Porsche Dynamic Chassis Control (PDCC) | ▷ | p. 174 |
| F | Driving programme WET mode | ▷ | p. 100 |
| G | SPORT driving programme | ▷ | p. 100 |
| H | Porsche Active Suspension Management (PASM) | ▷ | p. 174 |
| I | Sports exhaust system | ▷ | p. 100 |

Overhead Console

- A** Reading lights ▷ p. 127
- B** Button for interior/reading light ▷ p. 127
- C** Interior light (lighting on the control panel) ▷ p. 127
- D** SOS button ▷ p. 103
- E** Automatic dimming function button ▷ p. 158
- F** PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF/ON warning light ▷ p. 37





Filler Openings












- A Brake fluid ▷ p. 57
- B Washer fluid ▷ p. 199
- C Coolant ▷ p. 90
- D Engine oil ▷ p. 108

Practical Tips



On the following pages, you will find practical tips on the selected area of your vehicle.

Practical Tips





General Operation Porsche Advanced Cockpit and Porsche Communication Management (PCM)

Topic	Tip
Operating assistance systems	Assistance systems can be switched on and off via the PCM under ASSIST  . Preliminary settings for the assistance systems can be made under ASSIST  ▶ Options  ▶ Assistance system settings .
Making vehicle settings	General vehicle settings can be made under CAR  ▶ CONTROL  ▶ Vehicle (vehicle settings) or under CAR  ▶ CONTROL  ▶ Displays (touch display PCM and instrument cluster settings).
Operating the instrument cluster	The displays integrated on the left and right in the instrument cluster are displayed by turning and pressing the right-hand rotary knob on the multi-function steering wheel.
Using shortcut buttons (◇ buttons)	The quick access buttons (◇ buttons) on the multi-function steering wheel/centre console switch panel can be freely assigned to a variety of vehicle and infotainment functions (e.g. in radio/media playback, navigation etc.).
Quick access via the Info widget and homescreen	The Info widget and the homescreen  provide fast access to the most important vehicle and infotainment functions and can also be individually adapted.
Opening the Device Manager	Connections can be managed centrally using the Device Manager (e.g. connect phone or Bluetooth® audio player). ▶ Select  or  in the footer (depending on the connection status).
Activating voice control	The  button on the steering wheel activates different functions, depending on the application: – Short press: Voice control of the PCM is activated. – Long press: Siri voice recognition is activated.
Switching between two connected mobile phones	If a mobile phone is already connected to the PCM, a second mobile phone can also be connected to the PCM and the user can switch between the two mobile phones. ▶ Select the currently connected mobile phone at the top right in the header. The two devices already connected are displayed. ▶ Select the desired mobile phone.




Garage door opener

Topic	Tip
Programming the garage door opener	All functions for the programming and use of the integrated garage door opener can be found under CAR  ▶ CONTROL  ▶ HomeLink® .
Programming the garage door opener	If the battery voltage of the original remote control is inadequate, faults may occur in signal transmission. The system in the vehicle then learns the wrong code, which will not be recognised reliably by the garage door opening mechanism. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Make sure that the battery in the original remote control for the garage door opener is new.

Air conditioning system

Topic	Tip
Switching upper ventilation field on or off	The upper ventilation panel can be activated or deactivated via the PCM. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ CLIMATE  ▶ AIR  ▶ Centre
Adjusting the fresh air supply depending on the air quality	Auto air circulation can be switch on or off via PCM. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ CLIMATE  ▶ AIR  ▶ Auto air circ.

Central locking

Topic	Tip
When the vehicle is unlocked, only one door is unlocked.	The setting for locking and unlocking the doors has been changed. All doors can be unlocked irrespective of the selected setting. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Press button  on the driver's key twice within 5 seconds. <p>This setting can be changed under CAR  ▶ CONTROL  ▶ Vehicle ▶ Locking.</p>

Topics

On the following pages you will find topics listed in alphabetical order.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

General safety instructions

WARNING

Lack of attention

The increased comfort offered by the driver assistance system should not induce you to risk your safety. The driver remains responsible when driving, e.g. keeping a safe distance or driving at an appropriate speed, regardless of the activated driver assistance system. The driver assistance system cannot replace the driver's attentiveness.

- ▶ Drive with extreme care.
- ▶ Should the deceleration provided by the system prove insufficient, brake the vehicle immediately with the brake pedal.
- ▶ Make sure that it is possible to take over control of the vehicle at all times.

WARNING

Unsafe traffic situations and unfavourable road conditions

Use of the driver assistance system may cause accidents if the current situation does not permit driving safely at an adequate distance from the vehicle in front and at a constant speed.

When driving in turn-off lanes, motorway exits or in areas with roadworks, the vehicle can accelerate to the set speed.

- ▶ Do not use the driver assistance system in heavy traffic, where there are road works, in built-up areas, on private or field tracks, or in areas with

traffic calming.

- ▶ Switch off the driver assistance system temporarily when driving on turn-off lanes, motorway exits or in areas with roadworks.

WARNING

Covered radar sensor

Covering the radar sensor can adversely affect or disable the function of the driver assistance system.

- ▶ The radar sensor must always be kept free of dirt, ice and snow.



Fig. 1: Location of radar sensor

WARNING

Risk of damage to the radar sensor

Shocks or damage to the bumper, wheel housings or underbody, e.g. through parking collisions, can move the radar sensor. This may impair performance of the

Adaptive Cruise Control.

- ▶ Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

WARNING

Foot placed on the accelerator pedal

The driver assistance system does not brake automatically when the foot is placed on the accelerator pedal. Placing the foot on the accelerator may override the cruise and distance control.

- ▶ When the driver assistance system is activated, remove your foot from the accelerator pedal.

System limitations

WARNING

Unfavourable road and weather conditions

Radar sensor vision can be impaired by rain, snow, ice, fog, stone chippings or spray. Vehicles in front will not be detected properly or may not be detected at all.

Reflective objects such as ice, heavy rain, crash barriers or tunnel entrances may impair the functionality of the radar sensor. A message indicating that the driver assistance system is not available appears on the instrument cluster.

- ▶ Do not use the driver assistance system in such conditions.

WARNING

Undetected vehicles or objects

The radar sensor detects a narrow, cone-shaped area in front of your vehicle. As a result, vehicles or

- objects may not be detected in time or cannot be detected in the following situations:
- in the case of vehicles that change lanes or cut in
 - in the case of vehicles with a small cross-section or narrow vehicles
 - when driving into and out of bends
 - in the case of stationary vehicles
 - in the case of vehicles with large overhangs
 - in the case of pedestrians, cyclists and animals
 - in the case of objects on the road
 - in the case of oncoming vehicles and cross traffic
- ▶ Take action and brake if necessary.
 - ▶ Drive with extreme care and always pay attention to the traffic conditions and vehicle surroundings.

Vehicles changing lanes or cutting in and narrow vehicles

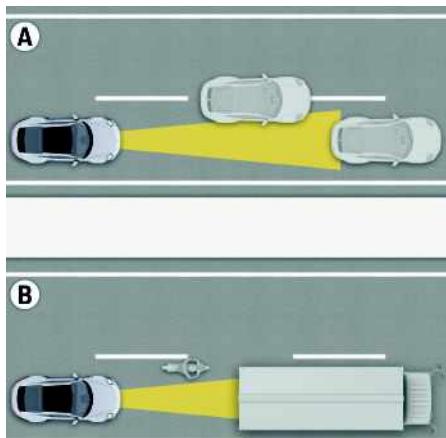


Fig. 2: Vehicles changing lanes or cutting in (A) and narrow vehicles (B)

A vehicle changing lanes or cutting in will not be identified until it is completely in its own driving lane.

A narrow vehicle will not be detected or will be detected too late.

Cornering and stationary vehicles

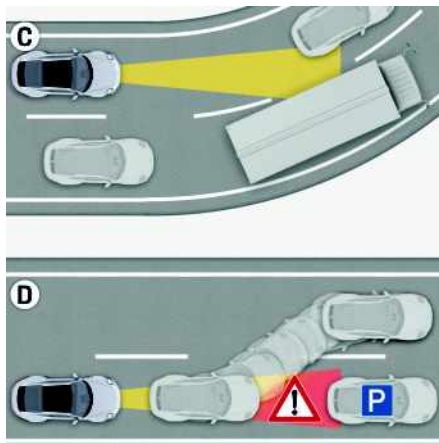


Fig. 3: Cornering (C) and stationary vehicles (D)

When driving into and out of bends, vehicles will not be detected or will be detected too late, or the system will react to vehicles in adjacent lanes.

A stationary vehicle or obstacle that appears suddenly in the detection field of the radar sensor, e.g. after a vehicle in front changes lanes or at the end of a traffic jam, can only be detected by Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) to a limited extent.

Vehicles with large overhangs



Fig. 4: Vehicles with large overhangs

If there is a vehicle in front with a long overhang, e.g. a timber lorry, the radar sensor may not detect the end of the vehicle or may detect it incorrectly.

Operating principle

Adaptive cruise control (ACC) operates between approx. 30 and 210 km/h (20 and 130 mph) to automatically maintain a selected speed and distance without you having to use the accelerator pedal.

If a vehicle travelling at less than the selected speed is detected in the same lane, ACC automatically maintains a specific distance. Adaptive cruise control applies the brakes if the distance to the vehicle ahead becomes too short, and accelerates if the distance increases.

If the vehicle in front stops, ACC will slow down to a stop and automatically move off again provided the vehicle in front resumes motion within a certain time frame. The driver assistance system's readiness to move off is shown in the Speed & Assist display on the instrument cluster. Otherwise, automatic speed control and distance control can be resumed by the driver.

The speed of the vehicle can be increased at any time by pressing the accelerator. The stored desired speed and distance are retained and set again after the accelerator pedal is released. The speed of the

vehicle can be reduced at any time by braking. The driver assistance system thus switches to the passive operating condition.

Controls



Fig. 5: Control stalk for driver assistance systems

- R** Switch driver assistance systems on/off and open options menu
- S** Open options menu (when driver assistance system is switched on)
- 1** Set/increase the desired speed
- 2** Reduce the desired speed
- 3** RESUME: Resume control, adopt speed
- 4** CANCEL: Interrupt control

Display elements

All important information, messages and warnings for Adaptive Cruise Control are displayed in the ACC main menu on the Speed & Assist display in the instrument cluster.

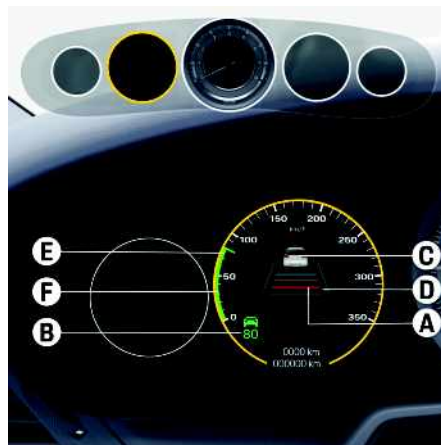






Fig. 6: ACC in the Speed & Assist display

- A** Desired distance from vehicle in front
- B** Status display and desired speed
- C** Vehicle detected in front
- D** Current distance from vehicle in front
- E** Current speed of vehicle in front
- F** Display of set desired speed

When Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is switched on, the status display **B** appears on the Speed & Assist display in the instrument cluster.

Status display symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	ACC is passive.
	ACC is passive at set desired speed.

Symbol	Meaning
	ACC is active at set desired speed.
	A vehicle was detected ahead while the desired speed was set. A vehicle symbol is displayed instead of the cruise control symbol.

Operating states

Passive

This mode is set after switching on and when ACC is active after pressing the brake pedal and after pressing down the control stalk (position **4**, **CANCEL**).

- The status display **B** is grey.
- There is no control.
- The set desired speed and the set desired distance are retained.

Active

This mode is set after setting the speed, after resuming control (position **3**, **RESUME**) and after temporarily overriding control by pressing the accelerator pedal.

- The status display **B** is green.
- Speed and distance to the vehicle ahead are controlled.

Temporarily passive

This mode is set while the accelerator pedal is pressed when ACC is active.

- A message indicating that ACC is passive appears in the instrument cluster.

- The status display **B** is grey.
- There is no control.
- The set desired speed and the set desired distance are retained.
- Control is active again after releasing the accelerator pedal.

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) on and off

The driver assistance system that was selected last is always switched on. The driver assistance system is initially in **passive** mode when switched on. Cruise control must first be activated before the control function starts working.

Switching the ACC on

- ✓ A driver assistance system is not yet switched on.
- 1. Press button **R** on the control stalk.
The options menu for the driver assistance systems appears on the instrument cluster.
- 2. If ACC is not already selected, select **ACC** using the rotary push button on the steering wheel and press to confirm.
ACC is switched on and **passive**.

Switching from an already activated driver assistance system to ACC

1. Press button **S** on the control stalk.
The options menu for the driver assistance systems appears on the instrument cluster.
2. Select **ACC** using the rotary push button on the steering wheel and press to confirm.
ACC is switched on and **passive**.

Information

The last selected driver assistance system is retained even after switching it off and operational readiness is restored.

Switching off ACC

- ▶ Press button **R** on the control stalk.
The set desired speed is deleted.
The desired distance is stored.

Activating Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

- ✓ ACC on.
 - 1. Accelerate or decelerate to the desired speed using the accelerator pedal.
 - 2. Briefly press the control stalk forward (position **1**) and release the accelerator pedal.
ACC is **active**.
- The current driving speed is set as the desired speed.
- The current desired speed is displayed in green in the status display and maintained automatically unless a vehicle travelling in front is detected as driving slower than the desired speed.

Changing the desired speed

The set desired speed can be changed by pressing the control stalk.

- ✓ ACC is active.

Increasing the speed

- ▶ Press the control stalk forward (position **1**):
 - Brief press = 1 km/h (1 mph) increments
 - Press and hold = 10 km/h (6 mph) increments

Reduce speed

- ▶ Pull the control stalk (position **2**):
 - Brief pull = 1 km/h (1 mph) increments
 - Pull and hold = 10 km/h (6 mph) increments

The status display **B** shows the new desired speed. The green bar **F** indicates the set desired speed of your vehicle.

Setting the desired distance

The desired distance from the vehicle in front can be set in **5** stages. Stage **3** is recommended. The distance depends on the driving speed. It reduces as the vehicle slows down and increases as it speeds up.

Information

When you switch to the WET driving programme, the set distance for adaptive cruise control is changed to the medium setting ("half speedometer distance") if the set distance was previously lower.

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Selecting driving programme" on page 100.



Fig. 7: Setting the desired distance

Information

When the system display is not active, pressing rocker switch **Z** for the first time displays the main menu for the driver assistance system without changing the desired distance.

Increasing the desired distance

- ▶ Press the rocker switch **Z** upwards.
The relevant more distant segment of the desired distance indication **A** to the vehicle in front **C** is displayed.

Reducing the desired distance

- ▶ Press the rocker switch **Z** downwards.
The relevant closer segment of the desired distance indication **A** to the vehicle in front **C** is displayed.

Displaying the distance from the vehicle in front

If a vehicle is detected in front, the vehicle symbol **C** appears in the instrument cluster or in the status display **B**.

The grey area **D** shows the current distance from the vehicle in front (Fig. 6).

The shorter the distance from the vehicle in front **C**, the larger the vehicle in the display. The longer the distance from the vehicle in front **C**, the smaller the vehicle in the display.

Symbol	Suitable for	Distance at 120 km/h (75 mph)
	Speedy driving in lines of traffic	approx. 33 m (± 1 sec.)
	Driving in lines of traffic	approx. 47 m (± approx. 1.4 sec.)
	Corresponds to "two seconds time headway"	approx. 60 m (± approx. 1.8 sec.)
	Driving on country roads	approx. 73 m (± approx. 2.2 sec.)
	Driving in sparse traffic	approx. 87 m (± approx. 2.6 sec.)

WARNING

Following too close

Driving too close to the vehicle in front may result in a collision.

- ▶ Always maintain the specified distance that applies in each country.

Overriding speed and distance control temporarily

Speed and distance control can be overridden temporarily by pressing the accelerator pedal. This is useful while overtaking, for example.

✓ ACC is active.

1. Press the accelerator.
The system is **passive** while the accelerator pedal is pressed (operating status **temporarily passive**).
2. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.
The system is **active**.

Interrupting and resuming cruise control and distance control

Interrupting speed and distance control

- ▶ Press the brake pedal.
– or –
Press the control stalk on the steering wheel down (position **4, CANCEL**).
The system is **passive**. The desired speed and distance settings remain stored.
The status display **B** changes from green to grey.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Information

When the vehicle is stationary, the speed and distance control can only be cancelled using the control stalk.

Resuming speed and distance control

- ▶ Push the control stalk on the steering wheel up (setting **3, RESUME**).
The system is **active**. The desired speed and distance settings are applied again.
The status display **B** changes from grey to green.

Information

ACC can be activated even while the vehicle is stationary by tilting the control stalk upwards.

Information

If speed and distance control was interrupted by moving the control stalk to position **4 (CANCEL)**, it can only be resumed again when no stationary objects are detected in front.

Automatic braking to a stop

If the vehicle in front stops, your vehicle will slow down and come to a stop within the control limits of the system if Adaptive Cruise Control is active.

The indicator light **HOLD** on the instrument cluster comes on.

The vehicle is actively held stationary. For information on the HOLD function:

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "HOLD function" on page 119.

Information

Depending on the traffic situation, e.g. slow moving traffic, stopping is initiated by a slow creeping phase, which brings the vehicle to a standstill.

Information

When adaptive cruise control is operating normally or when the HOLD function is active, the brake pedal may feel different and you may hear hydraulic noises. This behaviour is normal for the system. There is no fault.

Driving off again

The vehicle can be driven off again after being stopped and speed and distance control will be resumed, depending on the operating state of the Adaptive Cruise Control system.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) active

- ▶ Press the control stalk on the steering wheel up (position **3, RESUME**).
– or –
Press the accelerator pedal briefly.
The vehicle resumes driving automatically.
Automatic driving off again in stop-and-go traffic within a few seconds.

Information

Depending on the situation, Adaptive Cruise Control supports automatic moving off again in stop-and-go traffic. This enables comfortable control in slow-moving traffic.

The message **ACC ready** on the instrument cluster informs the driver that the vehicle is ready to move off.

WARNING

Risk of collision

The vehicle may drive off again in stop-and-go traffic, even if there is an obstacle between your vehicle and the vehicle in front.

- ▶ Brake immediately.

Information

Your vehicle will not drive off if the vehicle detected in front is stationary.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) ready

The automatic cruise control and distance control can be resumed when the vehicle is at a standstill or moving, provided no stationary obstacles are detected in front.

- ▶ Press the control stalk on the steering wheel up (position **3, RESUME**).
– or –
Set the desired speed.

Responding to warning message

Take-over request when adaptive cruise control is active (ACC active)

If adaptive cruise control detects that braking assistance is required on the part of the driver, a warning signal sounds and a warning symbol appears on the instrument cluster.

For information on adaptive cruise control (ACC) warning messages:

- ▷ Please refer to chapter "Warning and Information Messages" on page 255.

WARNING

Inadequate braking power during automatic braking by the adaptive cruise control

In this case, the braking power of the adaptive cruise control is not sufficient to prevent a collision.

- ▶ Brake immediately.

Exceptions for Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Adaptive cruise control is not available because adaptive cruise control (ACC) was switched off.

- If the ignition is switched off.
- When the driver's door is open or the seat belt is not fastened on the driver's side.
- When the electric parking brake is activated.
- If the selector lever is in position **N**, **R** and **P**.
- On steep upward or downward slopes.

Airbag Systems

DANGER

Incorrect seat position or incorrectly stowed load

Airbag systems can perform their safety function only if all occupants are wearing seat belts and are sitting in the correct position. Objects and luggage must be stowed safely.

- ▶ **Always fasten the seat belts.**
- ▶ Make sure that there are no persons, animals or objects between the driver or passengers and the area into which the airbag inflates.
- ▶ Always hold the steering wheel by the outer rim.
- ▶ For airbags to give effective protection, they must be a certain distance from the driver or passengers. Select a seat position that is not unnecessarily close to the airbags.
- ▶ Do not lean against the inside of the doors (airbag inflation area).
- ▶ Objects must not protrude out of the door storage compartments.
- ▶ Do not transport heavy objects on or in front of the seats.
- ▶ Do not place objects on top of the dashboard.
- ▶ Keep the glove box closed while driving.
- ▶ Always keep your feet in the footwell when driving. Do not put feet on the dashboard or the seat cushion.
- ▶ Share all the information in this section with your passengers.

Function of the airbag system

In conjunction with the seat belts, the airbags are a safety system designed to provide the vehicle occupants with maximum protection from injury in an accident.

Airbags protect the head, pelvis and upper body, while simultaneously damping the motion of the driver and passengers in the impact direction in the event of frontal impact or side impact.

The **front airbags** are installed under the padded steering wheel on the driver's side and in the dashboard on the passenger's side.

The **side airbags** on the front seats are located in the side of the seat side bolsters.

The **head airbags** are located in the side roof frame (Coupé models).

The respective airbags could trigger depending on the angle of impact and force of impact.

DANGER

No activation of already triggered airbag systems

Airbag systems can be triggered only once.

- ▶ Have triggered airbag systems replaced immediately.
- ▶ Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

DANGER


Malfunction due to airbags that have been tampered with

Airbag systems that have been tampered with offer no protection. They may either not trigger or be triggered in an uncontrolled manner. An airbag that triggers in an uncontrolled manner can cause serious

injuries.

- ▶ Do not modify the wiring or components of the airbag systems.
- ▶ Do not route any cables of additional electrical equipment in the vicinity of the airbag wiring harnesses.
- ▶ Do not attach any additional trims or stickers in the vicinity of the airbags.
- ▶ Do not use protective seat covers.
- ▶ Do not remove airbag components.

Recognising faults

Faults are indicated by the red airbag warning light  on the instrument cluster.

Consult a qualified specialist workshop in the following cases:

- The warning light does not come on when the ignition is switched on.
or
- The warning light does not go out when the ignition is on.
or
- The warning light comes on while driving.

Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Switching off the passenger airbag



Fig. 8: PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF/ON indicator

DANGER

Passenger airbag switched off

The passenger airbag will not be triggered in an accident if it is switched off.

- ▶ Only switch off the passenger airbag if a child restraint system is fitted on the passenger seat.
- ▶ Switch the passenger airbag back on once the child restraint system has been removed.

DANGER

Failure or malfunction of the passenger airbag

If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** indicator does not light up when the ignition is switched on and the passenger airbag is switched off, there may be a fault in the system.

- ▶ Do not install a child restraint system on the passenger seat.
- ▶ Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.



Fig. 9: Switching off the passenger airbag

The passenger airbag can be switched off using a key switch in the glove box, which is operated with the emergency key.

- ▶ Only switch off the passenger airbag if a child restraint system is fitted on the passenger seat.
- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Child Restraint Systems (Child Seats)" on page 73.

Alarm System

The alarm system monitors the following alarm contacts:

- Alarm contacts in doors, front lid, engine compartment lid, convertible top.
- Interior surveillance: Movement in the interior when the vehicle is locked, e.g. attempted theft after breaking a window.
- Inclination sensor: Tilting of the vehicle (e.g. attempt to tow the vehicle).
- Diagnostic socket.

If one of these alarm contacts is triggered, the alarm horn sounds for approx. 25 seconds and the hazard warning lights flash for approx. 300 seconds.

After a 5-second pause, the acoustic alarm is triggered again. This cycle is repeated up to 10 times (depending on the country).

Switching the alarm system on and off

- ▶ The alarm system is activated after approx. 30 seconds when the vehicle is locked.
- ▶ The alarm system is deactivated when the vehicle is unlocked.

Information

If you unlock the vehicle with the emergency key in the door lock, you must switch the ignition on within 15 seconds of opening the door in order to prevent the alarm system from being triggered.

The time it takes to trigger the alarm system differs from country to country.

Switching off the alarm system if it is triggered

- ▶ Unlock the vehicle.
– or –
- ▶ Switch on ignition.

Switching off interior surveillance and inclination sensor

If people or animals are remaining in the vehicle, the passenger compartment monitoring system and inclination sensor, together with SAFELOCK when locking the vehicle, can be deactivated (country-dependent).

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Central locking" on page 67.

Alarm system function indication

The locking condition is indicated by the indicator lights in the doors flashing at different frequencies.

Alarm system is activated

The indicator lights flash rapidly when the vehicle is being locked, then flash in normal mode.

Alarm system is activated, interior surveillance and inclination sensor are switched off

The indicator lights flash rapidly while you are locking the vehicle, go out for 28 seconds and then flash in normal mode.

Faults in the central locking system and alarm system

During locking of the vehicle, the indicator lights flash rapidly, light up continuously for 28 seconds and then flash in normal mode.

Anti-theft protection

Before leaving the vehicle, always:

- ▶ Close the windows, roof system and convertible top. This will also prevent a false alarm by the interior surveillance system.
- ▶ Activate the parking lock **P** and the electric parking brake.
- ▶ Switch off ignition.
- ▶ Close the glove box.
- ▶ Close all storage compartments.
- ▶ Remove valuables, car papers, phone and house keys from the vehicle.
- ▶ Close the doors and luggage compartment lid.
- ▶ Close the engine cover.
- ▶ Lock the vehicle.

Immobiliser

In every driver's key, there is a transponder (electronic component) with a stored code.

Only with an authorised driver's key can the immobiliser be deactivated and the engine started.

Unlocking and locking steering wheel (country-dependent)

Unlocking the steering wheel automatically

- ▶ Enter the vehicle and close the driver's door (driver's key must be located in the passenger compartment).
– or –
- ▶ Switch on ignition.

Locking the steering wheel automatically

- ▶ Open the driver's door (with the ignition off).
– or –
- ▶ Lock the vehicle.

Apple CarPlay


Opening Apple CarPlay in the PCM



Fig. 10: USB port in armrest

- ✓ iPhone 7 or later, iOS 12.2 or higher.
- ✓ Siri and Apple CarPlay enabled in the settings of the iPhone you are using.
- ✓ Use undamaged original cables from Apple without a USB adapter to ensure trouble-free use.

1. Connect your iPhone to the USB port **A** in the armrest.
2. Confirm that Apple CarPlay is being used. Available apps are displayed. Apple CarPlay is opened.

- ▶ To switch from another menu item to Apple CarPlay, select **Apple CarPlay** .

Information



- We recommend that you install the latest iOS version.
- Only those apps in the iPhone that are supported by Apple CarPlay are displayed. For information on supported apps, go to www.apple.com/ios/carplay.
- The displayed content and features of the Apple CarPlay function are provided solely by the connected iPhone.
- When Apple CarPlay is used, any active Bluetooth® connections (e.g. for telephony, media playback or news) are automatically disconnected. An inserted external SIM card cannot be used for making calls while this app is in use.
- Some apps require an active data connection. You may incur additional charges, depending on your mobile phone tariff, and particularly if using abroad. The use of a flat-rate data plan is recommended.



For information on operating Porsche Communication Management (PCM):

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Porsche Communication Management (PCM)" on page 175.

Operating Apple CarPlay with PCM

All available apps can be operated via the touch display, the rotary push button and the Back button of the PCM.

- ▶ In order to call up the main menu in **Apple CarPlay** , select the Home button  on the touch display of the PCM.

- ▶ To change to the main functions of the PCM, select **Apple CarPlay**  ▶ **Porsche**.
– or –
Select any function (e.g. **MEDIA** ).

Operating Apple CarPlay using Siri speech recognition

Starting Siri

- ✓ Siri has been enabled in the settings of the iPhone you are using.
- ✓ The ignition and PCM switched on.
- ✓ No phone call active.
- ✓ ParkAssist not active.
- ✓ PCM Voice control not active.

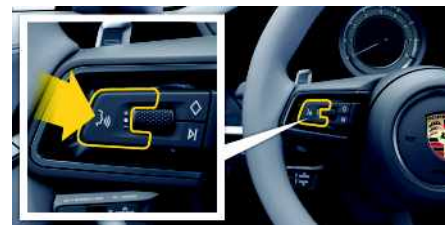




Fig. 11: Voice control button on the steering wheel

1. Press and hold the  button on the steering wheel.
2. Say your desired voice command.

Ending Siri

- ✓ Siri active and waiting for a voice command.
- ▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel. A fading acoustic signal sounds.

For information on voice control:




- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Voice Control" on page 248.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

A

Switching between Apple CarPlay and using the iPhone as an iPod

If the connected iPhone is connected as an iPod, Apple CarPlay is not available. You can switch between using the iPhone as an iPod and Apple CarPlay using the Device Manager.

1. To call up the Device Manager, select  or  in the header (depending on the connection status).
2. Select the **Link**  of the iPhone you are using.

B

C

D

E

F

G

H

I





J

K

Call up wireless Apple CarPlay (available depending on equipment and country)


Wireless CarPlay enables the use of Apple CarPlay without a cable. Wireless CarPlay supports only one active mobile phone at a time.

- ✓ Bluetooth® function of the mobile phone is activated and is visible to other devices.
- ✓ WiFi enabled on the mobile phone.




1. In the headline  or  (depending on the connection status) in the menu under Connection Assist ► select **Apple CarPlay**  or **Link** .
2. Select the device from the list.
3. Confirm that Apple CarPlay is being used. Apple CarPlay is opened. Available apps are displayed.

If your iPhone has been connected once, Apple CarPlay will start automatically when you enter the vehicle. The mobile phone can thus remain in your bag,

trouser pocket, or similar. (Bluetooth® and WiFi functions must be activated).

- To switch from another menu item to Apple CarPlay, select **Apple CarPlay** .

Remove saved iPhone from device list

1. Select  or  in the header (depending on the connection status) ► Options .
2. Select the desired device.

Apps

Various apps are available for your vehicle, depending on the country (download from Apple App Store or GOOGLE® Play Store).

DANGER Setting and operating while driving

Setting and operating apps while driving may distract you from the traffic situation. You may lose control of the vehicle.

- ▶ Only use and manage apps when the vehicle is stationary.

Information

More information about Porsche Connect (help videos, Porsche Connect operating instructions and questions & answers) can be found at www.porsche.com/connect and in the "Good to know" app (availability dependent on country).

Porsche Connect App

Porsche Connect App provides for the networking of vehicle and mobile phone. Personal POIs (Points of Interest), destinations from the address book or calendar entries can be transferred to the PCM from the mobile phone. Depending on the country, music tracks can be accessed using the music streaming function if the necessary apps have been installed and an account created.

Connecting Porsche Connect App to the PCM via WiFi and opening in the PCM

- ✓ Porsche Connect App is installed on your mobile phone (download from Apple App Store or GOOGLE® Play Store).
- ✓ Porsche Connect App started.

- ✓ WiFi enabled on the mobile phone.
- ✓ WiFi function enabled on the PCM.



Fig. 12: Opening the Device Manager

1. Display the WiFi access data of the PCM and establish a WiFi connection between your mobile phone and the PCM.
 - a. Select or in the header (depending on the connection status) ▶ Options ▶ **Vehicle hotspot**. **Hotspot name** and **password** of the PCM are displayed.
 - b. Enter the WiFi access data of the PCM into the WiFi settings on the mobile phone.
2. Select **Apps** . Available content of the Porsche Connect App is displayed.

Communication between vehicle and Porsche Connect App can be disabled.

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Private mode" on page 184.

Information

As the Porsche Connect App app can be used to access vehicle-specific data and other functions, we recommend that you protect this data to prevent unauthorised access by third parties. Use of the app may incur additional costs with your service provider since the data is transmitted via mobile communications networks.

Porsche Track Precision App

The Porsche Track Precision App, which is available in some countries, can be used to connect to the vehicle via a wireless local network (WiFi). This enables driving data to be displayed, recorded and analysed directly on a mobile phone. You do not necessarily need a SIM card/data connection for using the Porsche Track Precision App. For information on establishing a WiFi connection in the PCM:

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Porsche Connect" on page 182.

Detailed information on installation and on the functions of Porsche Track Precision App can be found in the app itself and at www.porsche.com or from your Porsche partner.

DANGER Loss of control over the vehicle

- Driving at excessive speeds and risky manoeuvres may lead to loss of control over the vehicle.
- ▶ Adapt your driving style and manoeuvres to your personal ability, the road and weather conditions, as well as the traffic situation.
 - ▶ Only use the Porsche Track Precision App on tracks that are closed to the public.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

A

Information

B

C

Since vehicle-specific data can be accessed using the app, it is recommended to protect this data from unauthorised access by third parties.

D

E

Porsche Road Trip app

F

G

The Porsche Road Trip app can be used to plan and book complete trips with all stopovers (for example, the best viewing points, restaurants and hotels along the route as part of the individually created itinerary).

H

I

Further information at: www.porsche.com/connect

J

K

L

M

N

O

P

Q

R

S

T

U

V

W

X

Y

Z

Automatically Controlled 2-Zone Air Conditioning

Brief overview

This brief overview does not replace the comprehensive information provided under "Automatically Controlled 2-Zone Air Conditioning". Safety messages and warnings, in particular, are not replaced by this brief overview.

The air conditioning system can be adjusted both via the buttons in the centre console and the PCM.

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Porsche Communication Management (PCM)" on page 175.

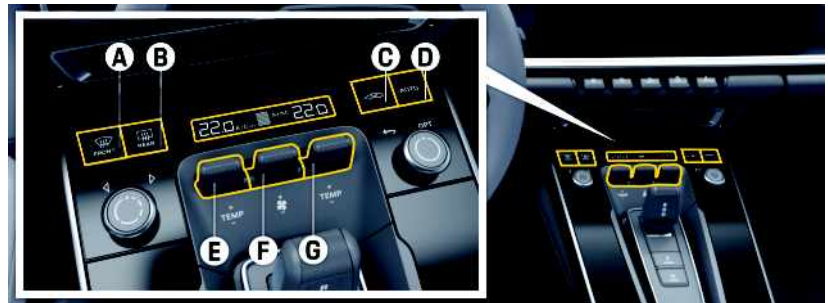












Fig. 13: Brief overview – air conditioning

What do I want to do?	What do I have to do?	Where?
Defrost the windscreen	▶ Press button A .	▶ p. 48
Switch on heated rear window and exterior mirror heating	▶ Press button B .	▶ p. 48
Switch air-recirculation mode on manually	<p>Depending on the country, air-recirculation mode can be switched on using the button in the centre console or using the PCM touch display.</p> <p>▶ Press button C.</p> <p>– or –</p> <p>▶ CLIMATE ▶ AIR ▶ </p>	▶ p. 47
Switch on A/C MAX mode (maximum air conditioning)	<p>Depending on the country, A/C MAX mode can be switched on using the button in the centre console or using the PCM touch display.</p> <p>▶ Press button C.</p> <p>– or –</p>	▶ p. 45

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

A	What do I want to do?	What do I have to do?	Where?
B		▶ CLIMATE  ▶ AIR  ▶ A/C MAX	
C			
D	Switch on automatic mode	▶ Press button D .	▶ p. 45
E	Set the temperature	▶ Press button E for the left side or button G for the right side up (warmer) or down (colder).	▶ p. 45
F	Set air quantity manually	▶ Press button F up (more) or down (less).	▶ p. 46
G	Set the strength of the air flow in automatic mode	▶ CLIMATE  ▶ AIR  ▶ Style	▶ p. 47
H			
I	Set air distribution manually	▶ CLIMATE  ▶ AIR  ▶ Air distribution	▶ p. 46
J			
K	Set the footwell temperature	▶ CLIMATE  ▶ AIR  ▶ Footwell	▶ p. 47
L			
M	Adjust the upper ventilation panel	▶ CLIMATE  ▶ AIR  ▶ Centre	▶ p. 46
N			
O			
P			

Depending on factors such as passenger compartment temperature, sunlight and air quality, the air-conditioning system adjusts the temperature, air distribution and air quantity fully automatically in automatic mode.

Automatic mode is deactivated as soon as the settings for the relevant function selected are adjusted manually. In this case, automatic climate control still regulates the functions that have not been modified manually.

The air conditioning system can be operated both using the buttons in the centre console, as well as using the PCM touch display.

The air conditioning system operates most effectively with the windows closed.

If heat accumulates in the passenger compartment:

- ▶ briefly air the interior by opening the windows. Depending on the outside temperature and humidity, condensation can escape under the vehicle. This is system-dependent and is not a defect.

If the battery voltage is too low, the air conditioning functions are initially restricted and then switched off.

The cooling function may switch off briefly to ensure sufficient engine cooling if the engine is operating under extreme load. It switches off automatically at temperatures below approx. 2 °C and cannot be switched on, even manually.

Setting the temperature temporarily to a lower or higher value does not cool or heat the passenger

compartment to the desired temperature more quickly.

2-zone climate control

The temperature can be set individually for the **left** and **right** air-conditioned areas. The air distribution, type of climate control and footwell temperature can be set for the entire passenger compartment.

Switching air conditioning on and off

The air conditioning can be switched off and on for the entire vehicle.

▶ CLIMATE  ▶ AIR  ▶ Ventilation

The display **A/C OFF** appears on the air-conditioning display in the front centre console, the outside-air supply is interrupted and the air-conditioning system is switched off.

Switching on automatic mode

The air-conditioned areas can be switched to automatic mode.

- ▶ Press button **AUTO** on the air-conditioning control panel.

The **AUTO** symbol in the button lights up. Temperature, air quantity and distribution are automatically controlled.

If necessary, the automatic system can be controlled manually via a different function button. The manual setting is retained until the appropriate function button is pressed again or until button **AUTO** is pressed.

Switching the cooling function on and off

The cooling function cools and dries the air.

In automatic mode, the cooling function is always activated. The cooling output is automatically controlled.

- ▶ **CLIMATE**  ▶ **AIR**  ▶ **A/C**

The cooling function is switched on or off.

Switching maximum cooling output on and off - A/C MAX mode

In A/C MAX mode, the passenger compartment is cooled at maximum power.



In some countries, A/C MAX mode can be switched on and off using the button in the centre console or using the PCM touch display.



Fig. 14: Maximum cooling output

- ▶ Press button **A/C MAX** on the air-conditioning control panel.

The button **A/C MAX** lights up red or goes out. A/C MAX mode is switched on or off.
– or –

- ▶ **CLIMATE**  ▶ **AIR**  ▶ **A/C MAX**
- A/C MAX mode is switched on or off.

Setting temperature

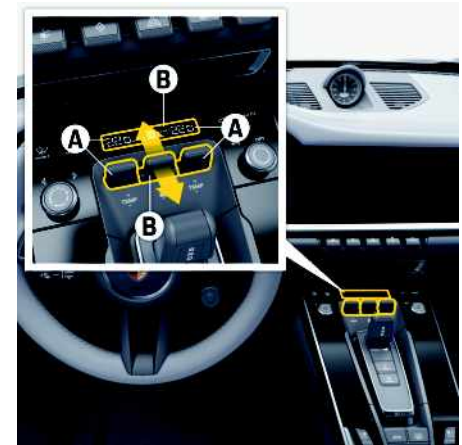


Fig. 15: Setting the temperature and air quantity

- A** Adjust the temperature for the relevant climate zone indicator on the air-conditioning display
- B** Set the air flow and indicator on the air-conditioning display

The temperature of each climate zone can be adjusted individually between 16.5 °C and 29 °C. Recommendation: 22 °C with cooling function switched on (A/C).

The selected temperature is indicated in the air-conditioning display in the centre console.

Increasing and decreasing temperature


- ▶ Press button **A TEMP** for the relevant climate zone up or down.

If **LO** or **HI** appears on the air-conditioning display in the centre console, the system is operating at maximum cooling or heating power. Button **AUTO** stays lit, fan is controlled.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Using air conditioning settings for entire vehicle – SYNC mode" on page 47.

Setting air flow

The selected air flow is shown in a bar display in the air conditioning display in the centre console above button . The more bars that are displayed, the more air flows into the passenger compartment.

Increasing and decreasing air flow

- ▶ Push button  up or down.


Pressing button **AUTO** switches back to automatic mode.

If the air quantity was reduced so much that **OFF** appears on the air-conditioning display, the outside-air supply is interrupted and the air-conditioning system is switched off.

WARNING

Impaired vision with air flow OFF

The windows can mist up if the air flow setting is **OFF**.

- ▶ In order to increase the air flow again, push button  up or switch on automatic mode again.

Adjusting air vents



Fig. 16: Adjusting air vents

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the air vents.

- ▶ Do not fasten any objects (e.g. mobile phone cradles, plug-in air fresheners) to the air vents.

Opening and closing air vents

- ▶ Turn thumbwheel on the air vent up or down.

Changing air flow direction




- ▶ Swivel vent vanes in the desired direction.

Adjusting air distribution

Adjusting front air distribution

1. CLIMATE  ▶ AIR 

2. Selecting air distribution:

-  The air flows to the windscreen and the side windows.
-  The air flows to the windscreen and the side windows.
-  The air flows out from the centre vent and the side vents.

Adjusting upper ventilation panel



Fig. 17: Adjusting the upper ventilation panel

The ventilation panel on top of the dashboard can be activated or deactivated separately. The direction of the air flow can be manually adjusted in the horizontal plane. The air-conditioning system adjusts the air flow automatically.

Switching air flow on or off

1. CLIMATE ► AIR ►
2. Ventilation field selection.

Changing air flow direction

- Swivel vent vanes in the desired direction.

Setting type of climate control

The air flow can be adjusted in three stages for the entire passenger compartment in automatic mode.

1. CLIMATE ► AIR ► Style
2. Select the desired type of climate control.

Setting the footwell temperature

The footwell temperature can be set cooler than overall passenger compartment temperature.

1. CLIMATE ► AIR ► Footwell
2. Select desired footwell temperature.

Switching automatic air-recirculation on and off

In automatic air-recirculation mode, the outside-air supply is automatically controlled depending on the air quality. At outside temperatures below approx. 5 °C, air-recirculation mode is deactivated automatically to prevent the windows from misting.

- CLIMATE ► AIR ► Auto air circ.

Switching air-recirculation mode on and off manually

WARNING

Impaired vision in manual air-recirculation mode

In extended manual air recirculation mode, the windows may mist up. As no fresh air is supplied, the driver can get tired and become less attentive.

- Do not switch on manual air-recirculation mode for an extended period.

In some countries, air-recirculation mode can be switched on and off using the button in the centre console or using the PCM touch display.

Switching air-recirculation mode on manually



Fig. 18: Switching air-recirculation mode on and off

- Press button

When air-recirculation mode is switched on, the button lights up red.

– or –

- CLIMATE ► AIR ►

Switching air-recirculation mode off manually

- Press button .
- or –
- Press button **AUTO**.
- or –

- CLIMATE ► AIR ►

Switching the ioniser on and off

✓ Vehicles with ioniser (depending on equipment).
In regions with poor air quality – e.g. in large cities – ionisation can help achieve better air quality in the passenger compartment.
Ionisation itself does not produce any odour.

- Open centre vent.
- CLIMATE ► AIR QUALITY ► Ioniser

Using air conditioning settings for entire vehicle – SYNC mode

- CLIMATE ► AIR ► SYNC
- SYNC mode is switched on or off. When SYNC mode is activated, the displayed values for the passenger's side change to the driver's values.

Recommended air-conditioning settings for lone drivers

- Switch on SYNC mode in PCM for maximum passenger compartment comfort.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Storing air-conditioning settings

The selected air conditioning setting is automatically stored via the relevant driver profile on the driver's key.

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Personal Settings" on page 169.

Defrosting windscreen



Fig. 19: Defrosting windscreen

Switching defrost mode on

- ▶ Press button . The button lights up orange. The air flows to the windscreen and the front side windows. The windscreen is demisted or defrosted as quickly as possible.

Switching defrost mode off

- ▶ Press button . The orange lighting on the button goes out.

Switching the heated rear window and exterior mirror heating on and off



Fig. 20: Heated rear window/exterior mirror heating button

Switching on heated rear window and exterior mirror heating

- ✓ Engine is running.
- ▶ Press button . The button lights up orange.

Depending on the outside temperature, rear window and exterior mirror heating switches off automatically after approx. 5 to 20 minutes.

Switching off heated rear window and exterior mirror heating

- ▶ Press button . The orange lighting on the button goes out.

Information

Cabriolet only: Repeatedly switching on rear window and exterior mirror heating with the convertible top open risks damage to rubber seals.

- ▶ Once the heating function has switched off automatically, do not switch on the rear window and exterior mirror heating repeatedly for a period of 5 to 20 minutes.

Auto Start Stop function

The engine stops automatically when the vehicle is stopped, e.g. at traffic lights or in a traffic jam, if all preconditions for stopping the engine automatically are met. The engine can also stop automatically when the vehicle stops while travelling at walking pace. The Auto Start Stop function thus helps to save fuel.

The ignition stays on even when the engine switches off automatically. All safety functions are still available.

Preconditions for stopping the engine automatically

- ✓ Auto Start Stop function switched on.
- ✓ Engine, transmission and air conditioning are at operating temperature.
- ✓ Vehicle has been driven at least at walking pace since the last Auto Stop.

Vehicles with PDK

- ✓ Brake pedal pressed
- ✓ Operating mode **D**, **M**, **N** or **P** selected.
- ✓ Driver's seat belt fastened or driver's door closed.

Vehicles with manual transmission

- ✓ Driver's door closed.
- ✓ Gear lever in neutral position and clutch pedal not pressed.

Vehicles with manual transmission¹: Engine stop and engine start

Engine stop

1. Brake the vehicle with the footbrake.
2. Put the gearshift lever in neutral.
3. Release the clutch pedal.
The engine stops.

Engine start

- ▶ Press clutch pedal.
You can drive off normally.

Information

The engine will start automatically in certain situations, e.g. to ensure passenger comfort via air conditioning. The gearshift lever must be in neutral. In some cases, a message prompting you to press the brake pedal will be displayed on the instrument cluster.

Reaction after leaving the vehicle

If the driver's door is opened during an automatic engine stop, the engine will **not start automatically**. An automatic engine start can still be performed by pressing the clutch pedal down fully. Auto Start Stop mode is resumed if one of the following requirements is detected:

- The brake pedal is pressed, the driver's door is closed and the driver's seat belt is fastened.
- **or** –

The driver's door is closed and the driver's seat belt is then fastened.

– **or** –

The accelerator pedal is pressed with the driver's door closed and the driver's seat belt fastened.

If the driver leaves the vehicle while the engine has stopped automatically (driver's door open and pedals released), the requirements specified above must be detected within 30 seconds in order for the engine to start and Auto Start Stop mode to be resumed.

Switching off the Auto Start Stop function within 30 seconds after leaving the vehicle results in an engine start only after the driver's door has been closed and the driver's seat belt has been fastened. If none of these requirements are met, the engine has to be started **manually** 30 seconds after leaving the vehicle. A message prompting you to start the engine manually appears on the instrument cluster.

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Starting and Stopping the Engine" on page 216.

Vehicles with PDK: Auto Stop and Auto Start

Stopping the engine

1. Brake the vehicle with the brake pedal.
2. Keep the brake pedal pressed.
– **or** –
- ▶ Press the **P** button on the selector lever when the vehicle is stationary.

1. Equipment may be available for use only at a later time or may only be available in certain markets.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Information

Flooring the pressed brake pedal while the vehicle is stationary activates the HOLD function. This keeps Auto Stop activated on the vehicle without having to keep the brake pedal pressed.

The engine starts automatically when the accelerator is pressed or when an engine start is required.

Information

When adaptive cruise control (ACC) is switched on, the engine stops automatically when the vehicle is stationary if the vehicle in front also has also come to a standstill.

The vehicle is held by the HOLD function.

Engine start

- ✓ Operating mode **D**, **M**, **N** or **P** selected.
 - ▶ Release the brake pedal (not in operating mode **P**).
 - or –
 - ▶ Press the accelerator.
 - or –
 - ▶ Move the steering wheel.
 - or –
 - ▶ Select operating mode **R**.
- You can drive off normally.

Information

The engine will start automatically in certain situations, e.g. to ensure passenger comfort via air conditioning. In some cases, a message prompting you to press the brake pedal will also be displayed on the instrument cluster.

Information

If adaptive cruise control (ACC) is active, the engine starts automatically if the vehicle in front drives off.

Reaction after leaving the vehicle

After leaving the vehicle when the engine has stopped automatically (driver's seat belt unfastened, driver's door open and brake pedal released), the engine will **not start automatically**. Additionally, in operating modes **D**, **R** or **M**:

- The electric parking brake is engaged.
- The transmission parking lock **P** is engaged.

The vehicle can still be moved with the driver's door open and the driver's seat belt unfastened by releasing the electric parking brake manually. In this case, the parking brake remains released and the selected transmission range is still engaged.

If the parking brake is released in operating mode **D**, **R** or **M**, or if operating mode **D**, **R** or **M** is selected while the brake pedal is pressed, the engine starts again.

Auto Start Stop mode is resumed if one of the following conditions is detected within 30 seconds of leaving the vehicle:

- The brake pedal is pressed and either the driver's door is additionally closed or the driver's seat belt fastened.
 - or –
- The driver's door is closed and the driver's seat belt is then fastened.
 - or –
- The accelerator pedal is pressed with the driver's door closed and the driver's seat belt fastened.

Switching off the Auto Start Stop function within 30 seconds after leaving the vehicle results in an engine start only after the driver's door has been closed and the seat belt has been fastened. If none of these

requirements are met, the engine has to be started **manually** 30 seconds after leaving the vehicle. A message prompting you to start the engine manually appears on the instrument cluster.

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Starting and Stopping the Engine" on page 216.
- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Seat Belts" on page 200.

Exceptions for the Auto Start Stop function

The Auto Start Stop function is not available in the following situations:

- SPORT/SPORT PLUS driving programmes active.
- PSM switched off or in Sport mode.
- Front axle lift system active.
- "Maximum cooling output" function active.
- "Windscreen defrost" function active.
- At high altitudes.

The Auto Start Stop function is available to a limited extent in the following situations:

- Air conditioning or passenger compartment heating on a high setting.
- Low battery charge.
- On upward or downward slopes.
- In the case of internal vehicle test procedures, e.g. automatic engine checks.
- At very low or very high outside or battery temperatures.

Information

If one of these situations arises after an Auto Stop, the engine can be restarted automatically.

Switching Auto Start Stop Function On and Off

Switching off



The engine's Auto Stop function is disabled.

Switching on



The engine stops automatically when the vehicle stops.

Auto Start Stop function display



Stopping the engine automatically and restart readiness

If the engine was stopped automatically by the Auto Start Stop function and Auto Start is possible, the indicator light on the instrument cluster lights up green.



No engine stop or restart readiness

If Auto Stop is not possible or the engine cannot be restarted after an Auto Stop, the indicator light on the instrument cluster lights up yellow when the vehicle is stationary.

The Auto Start Stop system has detected that:

- At least one precondition for stopping the engine automatically is not met.
 - or –
 - There is at least one exception for the Auto Start Stop function.
- ▷ Please refer to chapter "Preconditions for stopping the engine automatically" on page 49.
 - ▷ Please refer to chapter "Exceptions for the Auto Start Stop function" on page 50.

Responding to warning message

In the event of a fault, a message stating that Start Stop is deactivated appears on the instrument cluster.

- ▶ Have the fault corrected at a specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Battery

Depending on the model, country and equipment, the vehicle is equipped with a lead battery with AGM (Absorbent Glass Mat) technology or a 12-volt lithium battery (LiFePO₄).

In vehicles with a lithium battery, the battery is labelled with a sticker.

- ▶ Under no circumstances remove, deface or render illegible the sticker.

Lead battery

WARNING

Electric shock, short circuit or fire

Contact with live parts of the vehicle may result in an electric shock. Working on the vehicle's electrical system can cause a short circuit. Such short circuits can cause fires.

- ▶ Disconnect the negative terminal on the battery during all work on the electrical system.
- ▶ Ensure that tools or conductive jewellery (rings, necklaces, watch straps) do not come into contact with live parts of the vehicle.

WARNING

Fire or explosion

Many automotive fluids are highly flammable, e.g. fuel, engine or transmission oil. Fuel vapours can combust. When lead batteries are charging, a highly

explosive gas mixture can form.

- ▶ Disconnect the negative terminal on the battery during all work on the electrical system.
- ▶ Avoid wiping the battery with a dry cloth in order to avoid static charging.
- ▶ Before touching the battery, discharge any static electricity by touching the vehicle.
- ▶ Do not smoke in the vicinity of the battery and do not use a naked flame. Also beware of sparks, e.g. as a result of cable contact.
- ▶ Only work on the vehicle in the open or in well-ventilated spaces.

CAUTION

Corrosive electrolyte

Lead batteries contain highly caustic battery acid that can cause damage to the skin and clothing in the event of contact.

- ▶ Wear safety gloves and eye protection.
- ▶ If the eyes or skin come into contact with battery acid: rinse the affected area with cold water for several minutes.

NOTICE

Risk of short circuit, fire and damage to the generator and electronic control units and components.

- ▶ Have the battery removed and installed only by a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.
- ▶ Disconnect the negative terminal on the battery during all work on the electrical system.



Fig. 21: Lead battery

The lead battery is located under the plastic cover in the luggage compartment. For information on removing the plastic cover:

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Luggage compartment" on page 146.
- ▶ When jump-lead starting, never connect the black negative cable directly to the battery. Always connect the black negative cable to the - ground point.
- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Jump-lead Starting" on page 129.

Safety symbols on the lead battery



Read instructions



Wear eye protection



Keep children away



Danger of explosion

While the battery is being charged, a highly explosive gas mixture is formed, therefore:



Fire, sparks, naked flames and smoking are prohibited

Avoid causing sparks and short circuits when handling cables and electrical devices. In the case of batteries with central venting, there is a greater concentration of explosive gas at the hose opening. The gas-venting hose must not be kinked or blocked with dirt.



Danger of caustic burns

Battery acid is highly caustic, so: Wear safety gloves and eye protection. Do not tilt the battery, or acid may escape from the venting aperture.

First aid

If electrolyte fluid splashes into your eye, rinse immediately for a few minutes with clean water. Immediately seek medical attention from a doctor. If acid splashes onto your skin or clothing, neutralise immediately with soapsuds and rinse with plenty of water. If you accidentally drink acid, consult a doctor immediately.

Disposal

Hand in the old battery at a battery collection point.

Never dispose of an old battery with domestic waste.



Lead battery care

Information

Keep the battery fully charged to prevent it from freezing. A discharged battery can freeze even at 0 °C but a fully charged one only freezes at -40 °C.

What do I want to do?	What do I have to do?
Avoid running down the battery	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Switch off unneeded electrical loads on short trips. ▶ Switch off the ignition when leaving the vehicle. ▶ Avoid using the PCM when the engine is not running.
Battery care	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Keep battery surface clean and dry. ▶ Make sure that terminal clamps are firmly secured.
Prepare for winter driving	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the battery checked before the start of winter.
Charge the battery	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Never attempt to charge a frozen or damaged battery.

Charging the lead battery



Fig. 22: Lead battery terminals

- + Positive terminal
- Ground point

WARNING

Charging a frozen or damaged battery

If a frozen or damaged battery is charged, there is a danger of explosion and chemical burns.

- ▶ **Never** attempt to charge a frozen or damaged battery.
 - ▶ Observe the instructions of the charger manufacturer.
 - ▶ Ensure adequate ventilation when charging the battery.
1. Open the luggage compartment.
 - ▶ Please refer to chapter "Luggage Compartment Lid" on page 149.
 2. Remove cover in luggage compartment.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Luggage compartment" on page 146.
- 3. Connect the red positive cable of the charger to the positive terminal for jump-lead starting +.
- 4. Connect the black **negative cable** of the charger onto the – ground point.
- 5. Switch on the charger.
- 6. After charging the battery, first switch off the charger and then disconnect it.
 - ▶ For recommendations on a suitable charger: Contact your Porsche partner.

Replacing the lead battery

The details on the battery case cannot be used to identify a comparable battery that meets all the specific requirements of Porsche.

- ▶ Always have the battery replaced by a qualified specialist workshop.
- ▶ Only replace the lead battery with an AGM (Absorbent **Glass Mat**) battery that meets the specific requirements of the vehicle. Porsche recommends that you use a genuine Porsche battery.
- ▶ A new battery must be registered in the control unit after installation. Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.
- ▶ Observe the disposal instructions for batteries.

Power interruption

Following a temporary power interruption, some equipment has to be reinitialised.

1. Store the end position for the power windows.
 - ▶ Please refer to chapter "Windows" on page 273.
2. Teach in wheels and tyres in Tyre Pressure Monitoring (TPM).

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Tyres and Wheels" on page 238.
- 3. Store end positions on vehicles with a slide/tilt roof.
 - ▶ Please refer to chapter "Slide/Tilt Roof" on page 206.

Lithium battery

WARNING

Electric shock, short circuit, fire or explosion

Touching conductive parts of the vehicle can give you an electric shock. You can cause a short circuit when working on the vehicle's electrical system. Short circuits can cause fires. Many automotive fluids are highly flammable, e.g. fuel, engine or transmission oil. Fuel vapours can combust.

- ▶ The battery should only be removed and installed at a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

WARNING

Escaping electrolyte fluid and toxic gases

Risk of electrolyte fluid and toxic gases escaping in exceptional cases if the battery is damaged or handled incorrectly.

- ▶ Avoid any inhalation of the vapours and any skin contact with the electrolyte fluid.
- ▶ Keep people away and stay on the side facing into the wind.
- ▶ Only charge lithium batteries in well-ventilated rooms.

NOTICE

Risk of short circuit, fire and damage to the generator and electronic control units and components.

- ▶ The battery should only be removed and installed at a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.



Fig. 23: Lithium battery

The 12-volt lithium battery is located under the plastic cover in the luggage compartment. For information on removing the plastic cover:

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Luggage compartment" on page 146.

The 12-volt lithium battery is automatically disconnected from the vehicle electrical system if the battery charge condition is low. The electrical system is deactivated temporarily. When the battery is charged (for at least 10 minutes) or when jump-lead

starting or connection to an external power supply take place, the electrical system is automatically re-activated. The 12-volt lithium battery is automatically reconnected to the vehicle electrical system.

- ▷ Please refer to chapter "Jump-lead Starting" on page 129.
- ▶ Never connect jump leads directly to the battery.

Safety symbols on the lithium battery



Read instructions



Wear eye protection



Danger of explosion



Fire, sparks, naked flames and smoking are prohibited

Avoid causing sparks and short circuits when handling cables and electrical devices.



Danger of caustic burns

Electrolyte fluid is highly corrosive: wear safety gloves and eye protection.

First aid

If electrolyte fluid splashes into your eye, rinse immediately for a few minutes with clean water. Immediately seek medical attention from a doctor. If electrolyte fluid splashes onto your skin or clothing, neutralise immediately with soapsuds and rinse with plenty of water. If you accidentally drink electrolyte fluid, consult a doctor immediately.



Keep children away



Disposal

Hand in the old battery at a battery collection point.



Never dispose of an old battery with domestic waste.

Always have maintenance work carried out by qualified technicians

Never attempt to replace the battery yourself. Only have the lithium battery of this vehicle replaced with a lithium battery explicitly intended by Porsche for this vehicle. The use of other lithium or lead-acid batteries results in significant malfunctions including total failure of the electrical system.

Always have the battery replaced by a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Lithium battery care

What do I want to do?	What do I have to do?
Avoid running down the battery	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Switch off unneeded electrical loads on short trips. ▶ Switch off the ignition when leaving the vehicle.
Prepare for winter driving	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the battery checked before the start of winter.

What do I want to do?	What do I have to do?
Charge the battery	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Never charge a damaged battery.
Lay up the vehicle	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ If the vehicle is left for long periods in the garage or workshop, the doors and lids of the vehicle should be closed. ▶ Switch off ignition.

Information

The battery still discharges even while your vehicle is not in use.

- ▶ To maintain its function, charge the battery approximately every 6 weeks or connect it to a trickle charger suitable for lithium batteries with CC/CV or pure CV characteristic. Porsche recommends Porsche Tequipment chargers and trickle chargers.

A
B
 C
 D
 E
 F
 G
 H
 I
 J
 K
 L
 M
 N
 O
 P
 Q
 R
 S
 T
 U
 V
 W
 X
 Y
 Z

Charging the lithium battery

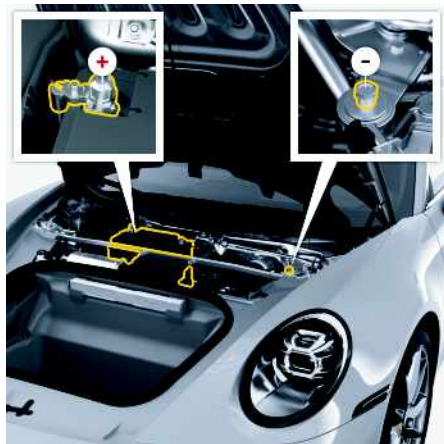


Fig. 24: Lithium battery terminals

CAUTION

Escaping irritating gases due to a damaged battery

The use of non-approved chargers or boosters can result in the battery being charged with too high charging voltage and too high charging current. This can damage the battery and irritating gases can escape. This can cause considerable damage to the vehicle and burns.

- ▶ Only use chargers or boosters that have been approved by the equipment manufacturer for LiFePO₄ batteries with integrated electronic protection circuits.
- ▶ The following maximum values must never be exceeded:

- Max. charging voltage: 14.8 V (even in the event of a fault with battery disconnected; no voltage peaks permitted)
- Max. charging current: 90 A

▶ If in doubt, contact your Porsche partner.

- ▶ Observe the instructions of the charger manufacturer.
- ▶ Ensure adequate ventilation when charging the battery.

1. Open the luggage compartment.
 - ▷ Please refer to chapter "Luggage compartment" on page 146.
2. Fold open the cap on the positive terminal for jump-lead starting +.
3. Connect the red positive cable of the charger to the positive terminal for jump-lead starting +.
4. Connect the black **negative cable** of the charger to the ground point –.
5. Switch on the charger.
6. After charging the battery, first switch off the charger and then disconnect it.
7. Close the cap on the positive terminal for jump-lead starting +.

For recommendations on a suitable charger:

- ▶ Contact your Porsche partner.

Replacing the lithium battery

WARNING

Danger of fire due to unsuitable lithium battery

In addition to significant malfunctions of the vehicle electrical system, use of an unsuitable lithium battery or its incorrect installation may, in exceptional cases cause a fire (e.g. during charging).

- ▶ Never attempt to replace the battery yourself. Only have the lithium battery of this vehicle replaced with a lithium battery explicitly intended

by Porsche for this vehicle. The use of other lithium or lead-acid batteries results in significant malfunctions including total failure of the electrical system.

- ▶ Always have the battery replaced by a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.
- ▶ Observe the disposal instructions for lithium batteries.

Power interruption

Following a temporary power interruption, some equipment has to be reinitialised.


1. Store the end position for the power windows.
 - ▷ Please refer to chapter "Windows" on page 273.
2. Teaching in wheels and tyres in Tyre Pressure Monitoring (TPM).
 - ▷ Please refer to chapter "Tyres and Wheels" on page 238.

Brake Fluid



Fig. 25: Brake fluid reservoir

Responding to warning message

If the brake fluid level is too low, the warning light  appears in the instrument cluster and a warning is displayed. If the warning light comes on and the pedal travel is greater, this may also indicate a fault in the brake system.

- ▶ Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and do not continue driving.
- ▶ Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.
- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Warning and Information Messages" on page 255.

Checking the brake fluid level

- ▶ Read off the brake fluid level on the brake fluid reservoir. The fluid level must always be between the **MIN** and **MAX** markings.
- ▶ Have the brake fluid topped up if the brake fluid level is below the **MIN** marking: Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Changing brake fluid

Regular checking and changing the brake fluid are part of servicing.

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Driving on race circuits" on page 15.

Brakes

Electric parking brake

The electric parking brake acts on the rear wheels and serves to secure the stationary vehicle.



Fig. 26: Electric parking brake button

Applying the parking brake

- ▶ Pull switch (P).

The indicator light on switch (P) and the brake warning light (E) light up.

For information on warning and indicator lights:

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Instrument Cluster" on page 120.

Releasing the parking brake manually

- ✓ Ignition switched on.
- 1. Press the brake pedal.
- 2. Press button (P).

The brake warning light (E) goes out.

Releasing the parking brake automatically

It is still possible to drive off normally even though the parking brake is on.

- ✓ Engine is running.
- ✓ Driver's door closed.
- ✓ Driver's seat belt fastened or operating mode **D**, **R** or **M** selected.

The electric parking brake detects the driver's intention to drive off and releases automatically.

If one of these prerequisites is not satisfied, the electric parking brake will not be released automatically when the driver attempts to drive off.

A message appears on the instrument cluster. The brake warning light (E) and the indicator light on switch (P) flash.

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Warning and Information Messages" on page 255.

Automatic engagement of the parking brake

- ✓ Vehicles with PDK.
- ✓ The vehicle is stationary.
- ✓ Operating mode **D**, **R** or **M** selected.
- ✓ Driver's door is opened.
- ✓ Driver's seat belt is unfastened.

The electric parking brake engages automatically.

The indicator light on switch (P) and the brake warning light (E) in the instrument panel light up.

For information on warning and indicator lights:

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Instrument Cluster" on page 120.

Information

Automatic engagement of the parking brake can be overridden manually:

- ▶ Press button (P).

The parking brake remains released.

If engagement of the electric parking brake is overridden, the function is only available after the door has been opened again.

Activating the emergency braking function

If the vehicle cannot be stopped by conventional braking, you can decelerate sharply and stop the vehicle using the electric parking brake.

- ▶ Pull and hold switch (P).

The brake warning light (E) and the indicator light on switch (P) flash.

To deactivate the emergency braking function:

- ▶ Release switch (P).

WARNING

Severe deceleration

Emergency braking takes place with very high braking power. The following traffic may be endangered and control over the vehicle may be lost.

- ▶ Only use the emergency braking function in an emergency situation.
- ▶ Do not use the emergency braking function to stop the vehicle when driving normally.

Responding to warning message

If the electric parking brake could not be applied fully on the stationary vehicle, the indicator light on switch (P) and the brake warning light (E) flash.

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Warning and Information Messages" on page 255.

Footbrake

WARNING

Blocked pedals

Unsuitable or improperly secured floor mats can restrict pedal travel or interfere with pedal operation. The accelerator pedal may be inadvertently actuated or the brake pedal blocked. This can result in an unexpected increase in speed or make braking more difficult.

- ▶ Only use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle.
- ▶ Secure floor mats properly and do not place them loosely on the floor.
- ▶ Do not lay several floor mats on top of each other.
- ▶ Ensure that the floor mats are securely fitted again after they have been removed, such as for cleaning.

WARNING

No brake force boosting

The brake booster is ready for operation only while the engine is running. For this reason, much greater force has to be applied to the pedal when braking while the engine is switched off or if there is a defect in the brake booster.

- ▶ Vehicles with defective brakes must not be towed.

WARNING

Water film on brake discs

In heavy rain, when driving through water or after leaving a car wash, the braking action may be

delayed and increased foot pressure may be required.

- ▶ Check the brakes after washing the vehicle.
- ▶ For this reason, keep further back from the vehicle in front and "dry" the brakes by applying them at intervals. Make sure that the traffic behind you is not affected.

WARNING

Reduced braking action

After a long drive over salted or gritted roads, a coating may form on the brake discs and pads that significantly reduces friction and therefore the braking effect as well.

The brake discs will unavoidably start to corrode if your vehicle is parked for an extended period. The brakes will tend to "judder" as a result.

- ▶ If braking comfort is noticeably impaired:

Go to a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

- ▶ To relieve the brake system on steep slopes, remember to shift to a lower gear in good time (engine braking effect). If the engine braking effect on slopes is not sufficient, use the footbrake at intervals. Continuous braking can cause the brakes to overheat, impairing their effectiveness.

For information on brake fluid and checking the brake fluid level:

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Brake Fluid" on page 57.
- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Towing" on page 228.

Brake pads and brake discs

Wear on the brake pads and brake discs depends to a great extent on the driving style and the conditions

of use and therefore cannot be expressed in actual miles on the road.

The high performance brake system is designed to ensure the best possible braking effect at all speeds and temperatures.

Certain speeds, braking forces and ambient conditions (e.g. temperature and humidity) can therefore cause the brakes to squeal.

Responding to warning message

If the wear limit of the brake pads is reached, a warning symbol is displayed.

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Warning and Information Messages" on page 255.
- ▶ Have brake pads replaced immediately. Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Porsche Ceramic Composite Brake (PCCB)

The high performance brake system is designed to ensure the best possible braking effect at all speeds and temperatures.

Certain speeds, braking forces and ambient conditions (e.g. temperature and humidity) can therefore cause the brakes to squeal.

Wear on different components of the brake system, e.g. brake pads or brake discs, depends to a great extent on the individual driving style and the conditions of use and therefore cannot be expressed in actual miles on the road.

The values communicated by Porsche are based on normal operation adapted to the traffic situation. Wear increases considerably when the vehicle is driven on race tracks or as a result of aggressive driving.

- A
- B**
- C
- D
- E
- F
- G
- H
- I
- J
- K
- L
- M
- N
- O
- P
- Q
- R
- S
- T
- U
- V
- W
- X
- Y
- Z

► Before driving your vehicle in this way, ask your Porsche partner about currently applicable guidelines.

Car Care

General care instructions

WARNING

Water film on brake discs

In heavy rain, when driving through water or after leaving a car wash, the braking action may be delayed and increased foot pressure may be required.

- ▶ Check the brakes after washing the vehicle.
- ▶ For this reason, keep further back from the vehicle in front and "dry" the brakes by applying them at intervals. Make sure that the traffic behind you is not affected.

Regular and expert care helps to maintain the value of your Porsche and can be a precondition for the upholding of claims under the vehicle warranty.

Porsche recommends car care products from Porsche Tequipment.

- ▶ Follow the instructions for use on the packaging of care products.
- ▶ Keep care products out of reach of children.
- ▶ Dispose of care products in accordance with regulations.

To ensure that the vehicle's condition is expertly checked and that the guarantee remains valid for the full period: Contact your Porsche partner. The dealer will prepare a condition report and will certify the level of care of the vehicle.

NOTICE

High-pressure cleaners and steam cleaners can damage the following components:

- Convertible top
- Tyres
- Logos, emblems, decorative foils and protective

films for paintwork

- Painted surfaces
- Generator
- Electrical components and plug connections in the engine compartment
- ParkAssist sensors
- (Radar) sensors of the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and other assistance systems
- Reversing camera
- Windscreen wipers

No vehicle or convertible top is absolutely leak-proof. Water may leak into the passenger compartment during cleaning.

- ▶ Always read the operating instructions provided by the equipment manufacturer.
- ▶ Do not use high-pressure cleaners or steam cleaners to clean decorative films.
- ▶ When cleaning protective films for paintwork, do not point the high-pressure cleaner at the edges of the film.
- ▶ Always observe a minimum distance of 50 cm when cleaning.
- ▶ Never use high-pressure cleaners or steam cleaners with a round-jet nozzle. A high-pressure cleaner or steam cleaner fitted with a round-jet nozzle will damage your vehicle. The tyres are particularly susceptible to damage.
- ▶ Do not point the cleaning jet directly at any of the above-mentioned components.
- ▶ Before working in the engine compartment, always switch the engine off and let it cool sufficiently.
- ▶ Never point the cleaning jet directly in openings, e.g. spark plug shafts and air cleaner housing or at the air filter. Cover the openings before washing.

Washing the vehicle

The best protection for the vehicle against the damaging effects of the environment is frequent washing and preservation. The longer road salt, road dust, industrial dust, insect remains, bird excrement and tree exudations (e.g. resin, pollen) etc. are allowed to remain on the vehicle, the more harmful their effect. No vehicle or convertible top is absolutely leak-proof. Water may leak into the passenger compartment during cleaning.

Observe the following points in order to ensure that the vehicle is washed thoroughly without damaging the paintwork:

- ▶ The vehicle underbody should be washed thoroughly at the end of the gritting season at the latest.
- ▶ Wash the vehicle only at washing areas provided for this purpose to prevent soot, grease, oil and heavy metals from entering the environment.
- ▶ Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight or when the body is hot.
- ▶ If washing by hand, use a car shampoo, plenty of water and a soft sponge or washing brush.
- ▶ To start washing the vehicle, wet the paintwork thoroughly and rinse off heavy dirt.
- ▶ After washing the vehicle, rinse it thoroughly with water and rub it dry with chamois-leather. Do not use the same chamois for rubbing dry as you use for cleaning the windscreen and windows.

Cleaning in car washes

NOTICE

Car washes may damage optional add-on parts or parts that project beyond the contours of the

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

- vehicle.
- ▶ Please consult the car wash operator before using automatic car washes.
 - ▶ Retract all spoilers before using automatic car washes.

Risk	What do you need to remember?
Damage to the convertible-top material (Cabriolet)	▶ No hot wax treatment.
Water gets into the passenger compartment through a lowered window (Cabriolet)	▶ Do not switch off the ignition. – or – Lock the vehicle.
Windscreen wipers can start moving and become damaged in the car wash.	▶ Switch windscreen wipers off. ▶ Do not operate headlight cleaning system in car washes.
Damage to external parts	▶ Fold in exterior mirrors. ▶ Remove roof transport system completely. ▶ Lock the vehicle.

Risk	What do you need to remember?
Damage to wheels	▶ Check the dimensions of the car wash guide rail. The wider the rim and the lower the tyre height, the greater the risk of damage.
Scratches on high-gloss or silk-gloss wheels	▶ Do not clean with the wheel-cleaning brushes in the car wash.

Cleaning the convertible top (Cabriolet)

NOTICE

The convertible top may be damaged by the cleaning jet of the high-pressure cleaner, unsuitable car washes or by the hot wax treatment.

- ▶ Do not clean the convertible top with high-pressure cleaning equipment.
- ▶ Use car washes with a wash programme for cabriolet vehicles.
- ▶ No hot wax treatment.

To ensure proper cleaning and care of your vehicle, please observe the following:

- ▶ Do not wash the convertible top every time you wash the vehicle. Normally, rinsing the convertible top with clean water is sufficient.
- ▶ Never remove snow and ice with sharp-edged objects.
- ▶ Brush dust off the convertible top in the direction of the weave using a soft brush.
- ▶ Only if there is heavy dirt, moisten the convertible top with lukewarm water and a washing shampoo & convertible-top cleaner and rub gently using a sponge or soft brush.
- ▶ Rinse the washing shampoo & convertible-top cleaner thoroughly off the convertible top with clean water. Porsche recommends car care products from Porsche Tequipment.
- ▶ After washing, treat the convertible-top covering at least once a year with a convertible-top care product. Do not allow the convertible-top care product to come into contact with paint or glass. If it does come into contact with paint, remove it immediately.
- ▶ If there is leakage in the convertible-top cover or at its seams and folds, a special convertible-top care product can be used. Please note the information on the containers. Porsche recommends car care products from Porsche Tequipment.
- ▶ Remove bird excrement immediately. The acid this contains makes the rubber swell, and the convertible top will start to leak.
- ▶ Open the convertible top and convertible-top element only when completely dry to prevent stains and abrasion damage.
- ▶ Remove spots from the convertible-top covering by rubbing carefully with a soft rubber sponge.

Caring for paintwork

NOTICE

Dust particles on painted surfaces can damage the paintwork if not properly dealt with.

- ▶ Do not rub dust with a dry cloth.

NOTICE

The matt effect of bodywork sections may be lost if not looked after properly.

- ▶ Do **not** use preservatives or polishes on components with a matt effect paint finish.

Preserving paintwork

The paint surface will dull over time due to weathering and should therefore be regularly protected with a paint preservative after washing the vehicle. This keeps the paint shiny and elastic, and prevents dirt from adhering to the paint surface and industrial dust from penetrating the paint.

Polishing paintwork

Paint polish should only be used to clean the paintwork when the original shine can no longer be obtained using preservatives.

Removing marks

Remove tar splatters, traces of oil, insects, etc. as soon as possible using an insect remover and wash the area carefully afterwards as they discolour the paint if left to work on it over time.

Repairing minor paint damage

Have minor paint damage (cracks, scratches or stone damage) repaired immediately before

corrosion begins. Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

If traces of corrosion have already formed, these must be thoroughly removed. An anti-corrosion primer must then be applied to these spots, followed by top-coat paint.

Caring for wiper blades

NOTICE

The graphite coating on the wiper blades can be damaged if they are not cleaned properly.

- ▶ Ensure that the cleaning jet does not hit the wiper blades.
- ▶ Do not clean wiper blades with a cloth or sponge.
- ▶ Clean wiper blades with clear water only.

Windscreen wiper blades that are in perfect condition are vital for a clear view.

- ▶ Clean the windscreen with window cleaner at regular intervals, especially after washing the vehicle in a car wash.
- ▶ If extremely dirty (e.g. due to insect residues), clean the windscreen using a sponge or cloth.

The wiper blades should be replaced twice a year (before and after the cold season) or if wiper performance deteriorates or the blades are damaged.

Cleaning windows

The front side windows have a water-repellent (hydrophobic) coating, which reduces soiling of the windows. This coating is subject to natural wear and can be renewed.

- ▶ Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have

trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

To ensure proper cleaning of your vehicle, please observe the following:

- ▶ Clean all windows regularly, inside and out, using a window cleaning agent.
- ▶ Do not dry the windows with the same chamois leather you use for the painted surface. Residue from preservatives could impair visibility.
- ▶ Remove insect residues with insect remover.

Repairing the underbody protection

WARNING

Combustible materials close to the exhaust system

Additional rust protection agent or undersealing in the area of the exhaust system can become too hot when driving and catch fire.

- ▶ Do not apply additional underbody protection or rust protection agent on or near the exhaust manifolds, exhaust pipes, catalytic converters or heat shields.

The vehicle underbody is lastingly protected against chemical and mechanical effects. Damage to the protective coating while driving cannot be ruled out.

- ▶ Porsche recommends that you have the vehicle inspected at regular intervals by a qualified specialist workshop and the protective coating restored as necessary. Contact your Porsche partner.

Cleaning decorative films

NOTICE

Risk of damage through detachment of the decorative films during cleaning.

- ▶ Do not use polish or hot wax.
- ▶ Do not use high-pressure cleaning equipment or steam cleaners.
- ▶ Use a soft sponge, pH-neutral soap and plenty of water.

Care instructions for protective films

NOTICE

Risk of damage due to incorrect care of protective films.

- ▶ Follow the care instructions provided by the protective film manufacturer.
- ▶ After applying the film, wait at least 48 hours before washing the vehicle.
- ▶ Do not wash the vehicle in a car wash.
- ▶ Do not aim high-pressure cleaning equipment directly at the edges of the films.
- ▶ Remove dirt, e.g. insects, as quickly as possible.
- ▶ Remove stubborn dirt using a 99 percent isopropanol solution.
- ▶ Apply hot wax evenly and make sure it is smooth and consistent.

Cleaning headlights, lights, plastic components and surfaces, sensors and cameras

NOTICE

Cleaning agents can seep into the controls or switches, for example, and damage them. Unsuitable cleaning agents can damage the plastic surfaces.

- ▶ Do not spray water and interior window cleaner directly onto the plastic components in the passenger compartment.
- ▶ Only use clean water and a little washing-up liquid or interior window cleaner to clean headlights, lights, plastic components and surfaces, radar sensors for adaptive cruise control and vehicle cameras. Use a soft sponge or a soft, lint-free cloth to do this.
- ▶ Only clean the centre console with touch-sensitive buttons using a microfibre cloth.
- ▶ Never use other chemical cleaners or solvents.

Care of wheels

WARNING

Cleaning agent film on brake discs

If cleaning agent (e.g. wheel cleaning agents) comes into contact with the brake discs, the film that forms on the brake discs may impair braking performance.

- ▶ Make sure that no cleaning agent comes into contact with the brake discs.
- ▶ If cleaning agent has come into contact with the brake discs, clean the brake discs thoroughly with a strong jet of water.
- ▶ Paying attention to any road users behind you, dry the brake discs by applying the brakes.

Metal particles (e.g. brass or copper in brake dust) must not remain too long on alloy wheels. Contact corrosion can cause pitting.

Cleaners with an oxide-removing effect or wrong pH value, as are commonly used for other metals, as well as mechanical tools and products, will damage the surface and are therefore unsuitable.

- ▶ Use only acid-free cleaners for alloy wheels (pH value between 4 and 10). Products with the wrong pH value can destroy the surface of the wheels.
- ▶ If possible, wash the wheels every two weeks with a sponge or washing brush. If the wheels are exposed to road salt, grit or industrial dust, weekly cleaning is necessary.

Cleaning door, roof, lid and window seals

NOTICE

Unsuitable cleaning and care products can damage the lubricant coating on the inner door seals.

- ▶ Do not use any chemical cleaning agents or solvents.
- ▶ Do not use any preservative agents.

To ensure proper cleaning of your vehicle, please observe the following:

- ▶ Wash dirt (e.g. abrasion, dust, road salt and grit) from all seals regularly using warm soapy water.
- ▶ If there is a risk of frost, protect the outer door seals and the lid and flap seals from freezing using a suitable care product.

Caring for leather

NOTICE

The leather may become damaged by the use of unsuitable cleaning agents and care products, and by inappropriate treatment.

- ▶ Do not use aggressive cleaners or hard cleaning objects.
- ▶ Ensure that perforated leather does not get wet on the reverse side.
- ▶ Remove water drops from the leather immediately.

To ensure proper cleaning and care of your vehicle, please observe the following:

- ▶ Clean all types of leather regularly to remove fine dust using a soft, damp, white woollen cloth or a commercially available microfibre cloth.
- ▶ Remove heavy soiling (**not** water or moisture stains) with a leather cleaning agent. Read the instructions for use on the containers. Porsche recommends car care products from Porsche Tequipment.
- ▶ Treat cleaned leather only with a leather care product.

Cleaning seats with seat ventilation

Stains resulting from rainwater or moisture may occur on the perforated leather of the seats.

Removing water and moisture stains

- ✓ Seat heating and seat ventilation is switched off.
 - ✓ No direct sunlight.
1. Dab the entire seat and backrest surface using a clean, fine-pored sponge and distilled water.

Make sure that the perforated leather does not get wet on its reverse side.

2. Allow the seat cover to dry completely at room temperature out of direct sunlight. Do not switch on seat heating and seat ventilation.
3. Once dry, wipe the seat cover with a dry, lint-free cloth.

Cleaning carpet, floor mats

WARNING

Blocked pedals

Unsuitable or improperly secured floor mats can restrict pedal travel or interfere with pedal operation. The accelerator pedal may be inadvertently actuated or the brake pedal blocked. This can result in an unexpected increase in speed or make braking more difficult.

- ▶ Only use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle.
- ▶ Secure floor mats properly and do not place them loosely on the floor.
- ▶ Do not lay several floor mats on top of each other.
- ▶ Ensure that the floor mats are securely fitted again after they have been removed, such as for cleaning.

To ensure proper cleaning of your vehicle, please observe the following:

- ▶ Clean using a vacuum cleaner or a brush that is not too soft.
- ▶ Remove heavy dirt and stains using a stain remover. Porsche recommends car care products from Porsche Tequipment.

To protect carpets, the Porsche range of accessories includes floor mats in the correct size and with the appropriate fastening.

Cleaning airbag covers

DANGER

Improper cleaning

Unsuitable cleaning and care agents can penetrate into the airbag system. Improper handling can damage the airbag system. In the event of an accident, the airbag systems may not be triggered.

- ▶ Do not make any adjustments to individual components such as the steering wheel covers, the dashboard, the front seats and the door and ceiling panels.
- ▶ Do not use cleaning agents or other liquids in the area of the airbags.

Cleaning fabric linings

Fabric linings on pillars, roofliner, and sun blinds, etc. must only be cleaned using suitable cleaning agents, suitable dry foam and a soft brush.

Alcantara®/Race-TEX care

Do not use leather care products to clean **microfibre covers** made of Alcantara®/Race-TEX. For regular care, it is sufficient to clean the cover with a soft brush. Strong abrasion or rubbing when cleaning will create a lasting change to the surface.

- ▶ When lightly soiled, dampen a soft cloth with water or a pH-neutral soap solution and wipe off the dirt.
- ▶ When heavily soiled, dampen a soft cloth with lukewarm water or thinned white spirit and dab off the dirt from the outside in.

Steering wheels with Alcantara®/Race-Tex microfibre covers can become more soiled due to permanent skin contact.

- ▶ When lightly soiled, dampen a soft cloth with water or a pH-neutral soap solution and use to wipe off the steering wheel rim.
- ▶ A heavily soiled steering wheel rim can be cleaned with a soft cloth and commercially available upholstery foam cleaner using a gentle rubbing/dabbing action according to the instructions of the foam manufacturer.

Cleaning seat belts

To ensure proper cleaning of your vehicle, please observe the following:

- ▶ Use mild detergent for soiled seat belts.
- ▶ When drying, avoid direct sunlight.
- ▶ Only use suitable cleaning agents.
- ▶ Do not dye or bleach seat belts. The belt fabric could be weakened, thus affecting safety.

Cleaning screens and touch displays

NOTICE

Unsuitable cleaning and care agents and incorrect treatment can damage screens and touch displays.

- ▶ Do not use solvents such as methylated spirits, thinner, petrol, acetone, alcohol (ethanol, methanol or isopropyl alcohol) or even scouring agents to clean the PCM.
- ▶ Do not spray cleaning agents or other liquids directly onto screens and touch displays. The electronics can be damaged irreparably if water leaks in. Instead dampen a cloth and wipe the

screen carefully.

To ensure proper cleaning of your vehicle, please observe the following:

- ▶ Screens and touch displays are susceptible to scratching. From time to time, clean the screens and touch displays carefully with a dry, clean and soft cloth (microfibre cloth). Do not exert too much pressure on the surface while cleaning.
- ▶ Remove finger prints with a slightly damp cloth or a mild cleaning agent.

Laying up a vehicle

If the vehicle is to be laid up for an extended period of time: Contact your Porsche partner. They will be glad to give you information and advice about the necessary measures, e.g. corrosion prevention, care, maintenance and storage.

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Towing" on page 228. For information on locking the vehicle when the battery is disconnected:
- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Central locking" on page 67.

Central locking

Brief overview – opening and locking doors from outside



This brief overview does not replace the complete information provided under "Central locking system". Safety messages and warnings, in particular, are not replaced by this brief overview.





Fig. 27: Driver's key



Fig. 28: Comfort Access

What do I want to do?	What do I have to do?	What happens?	Where?
Unlock	With driver's key: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Press the  button on the driver's key. With Comfort Access: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Grasp into the handle recess of the door handle. 	The hazard warning lights flash once. The door handles extend. The doors can be opened.	▶ p. 69
Lock	With driver's key: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Press the  button on the driver's key. With Comfort Access: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Touch proximity sensor A on the door handle. 	The hazard warning lights flash twice. The door handles retract. The doors are locked and cannot be opened from inside by pulling the door opener (SAFELOCK). The alarm system is triggered in the event of an attempt to open from the inside.	▶ p. 70

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

What do I want to do?	What do I have to do?	What happens?	Where?
Lock if persons/animals are remaining in vehicle ▶ Switch off SAFELOCK and the alarm system's interior surveillance .	With driver's key: ▶ Press the  button on the driver's key twice (within approx. 2 seconds). With Comfort Access: ▶ Press proximity sensor A on the door handle twice (within approx. 2 seconds).	The hazard warning lights flash slowly once. The door handles retract. The doors are locked and can be opened from the inside by pulling the door opener.	▶ p. 70
Switch off the alarm system's alarm sound	▶ Press the  button on the driver's key. – or – Switch on ignition.	The alarm sound is switched off.	▶ p. 38

Using the central locking system

Information


- ▶ Only use the driver's key when the vehicle is in your sight.

Depending on equipment, the vehicle can be unlocked and locked either with the driver's key or without a key using Comfort Access.

You can set whether only the driver's door and filler flap or also the passenger's door is to be unlocked when unlocking the vehicle.

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Vehicle Settings" on page 246.

Both doors can be unlocked irrespective of the selected setting:

- ▶ Press button  on the driver's key twice within 5 seconds.

Information

The factory settings of the vehicle are described in this section.

Comfort Access¹



Vehicles with Comfort Access can be unlocked and locked without using the driver's key. However, the driver's key must always be carried, e.g. in your trouser pocket.

If the door handles are extremely dirty, the Comfort Access function may be impaired.

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Car Care" on page 61.

Deactivating Comfort Access using the driver's key

To ensure that the vehicle cannot be unlocked and started by unauthorised third parties, the Comfort Access functions can be deactivated temporarily using the driver's key.

- ▶ Press button  and button  simultaneously and keep them pressed until the indicator light on the driver's key lights up continuously. Deactivation at the driver's key is confirmed when the indicator light on the driver's key lights up continuously.

The Comfort Access function is activated automatically when you press the buttons on the driver's key.

- ▶ Do not expose the driver's key to a high level of electromagnetic radiation. Comfort Access may be impaired.

1. The Comfort Access system is state-of-the-art. We cannot, however, entirely rule out the possibility of the key codes for the radio keys being intercepted and used to open the vehicle and steal it.

Unlocking doors

Information

If the vehicle is unlocked and if a door or the rear lid is not opened within 12 seconds, the vehicle is locked again automatically.

Information

In the event of an accident in which the airbag is triggered, the entire vehicle is unlocked automatically in order to enable helpers gain access to the vehicle. The hazard warning lights are also activated automatically.

Unlocking the doors with the driver's key



Fig. 29: Unlocking the doors with the driver's key

1. Press button .
The hazard warning lights flash once.

The vehicle unlocks depending on the setting and the door handle extends.

2. Pull the door handle.

Unlocking doors with proximity sensor in door handle



Fig. 30: Unlocking door with Comfort Access

- ✓ Vehicles with Comfort Access
 - ✓ Function activated.
 - ▷ Please refer to chapter "Vehicle Settings" on page 246.
 - ✓ Carry the driver's key with you, e.g. in your trouser pocket.
 - ✓ The doors can be unlocked on the side of the vehicle where the driver's key is located.
1. Grasp into the handle recess of the door handle. Do **not** touch the proximity sensor on the front of the door handle in the process.
The hazard warning lights flash once.

The vehicle unlocks depending on the setting and the door handle extends.

2. Pull the door handle.

Information

To save the battery, unnecessary comfort functions are progressively switched off. The vehicle can then be unlocked using the driver's key.

Unlocking the doors on approaching the vehicle

- ✓ Vehicles with Comfort Access.
- ✓ Function activated.
- ✓ Carry the driver's key with you, e.g. in your trouser pocket.


The central locking can be configured such that the doors are automatically unlocked when you approach the vehicle (from a distance of approx. 2 m). The prerequisite for this is that the driver's key was at least approx. 6 m away from the vehicle after the last locking operation.

1. Approach the vehicle.
The hazard warning lights flash once.
The vehicle unlocks depending on the setting and the door handle extends.
2. Grasp into the handle recess of the door handle. Do **not** touch the proximity sensor on the front of the door handle in the process.
3. Pull the door handle.

Unlocking doors from inside



Fig. 31: Central locking button in the door panel

- ▶ Press button  in the door panel.
– or –
Pull door opener.
All doors are unlocked. The door handles extend.
The indicator light on the button goes out.

Information

The doors cannot be opened from inside if the vehicle was locked with SAFELOCK activated or using the emergency key.

Information

If the vehicle is de-energised, e.g. the battery is flat, or if the door opener is pulled too quickly, the door opener may have to be activated twice.

- ▶ Release the door opener and pull again.

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Warning and Information Messages" on page 255.

Unlocking the vehicle automatically

The vehicle is unlocked automatically when the driver's door is opened.

Unlocking with battery disconnected

After the battery has been disconnected, a door which was previously unlocked cannot be opened from the outside.

- ▶ Open the window before disconnecting the battery.
The door can be opened from the inside and the outside after actuating the inside door handle twice. Pull the inner door handle fully from the rest position to the end stop for this purpose.

Locking doors

Using SAFELOCK

WARNING

Locking the doors from outside

When you lock the doors from outside, ensure that no persons or animals are still in the vehicle as the doors and windows cannot be opened from inside (SAFELOCK). Locked doors make it more difficult for helpers to access the inside of the vehicle in the case


of an emergency.

- ▶ Make sure that no persons or animals are inside the vehicle when locking it.


SAFELOCK (country-dependent) is a component of the interior surveillance and disables the door openers and central locking button on the locked vehicle in order to make attempted break-ins more difficult. SAFELOCK activated: **Doors cannot be opened** from inside by pulling the door opener. The alarm system is triggered in the event of an attempt to open from the inside.

If persons or animals are remaining in the vehicle, deactivate SAFELOCK if the vehicle is locked.

Locking doors with the driver's key

- ✓ Operating mode **P** selected.
- ✓ All doors are closed.
- ▶ Press the  button once.
The hazard warning lights flash twice.
The door handles retract.

Deactivating SAFELOCK when the vehicle is locked

- ▶ Press the  button twice within 2 seconds.
The hazard warning lights flash slowly once.
The door handles retract.
The doors are locked, but can be opened from inside by pulling the door opener.
- ▶ Inform any persons remaining in the vehicle that the alarm system will be triggered if the door is opened.

Information

The vehicle cannot be completely locked if the doors or rear lid are not fully closed. A warning tone sounds and the hazard warning lights do not flash.

Information

If the key is inside the vehicle when you lock it, the vehicle is unlocked again. Several warning tones sound and the vehicle flashes 4 times. The vehicle is only locked if no door or the rear lid is opened within approx. 45 seconds and can only be unlocked using a second key.

- ▶ Make sure that the driver's key is not left inside the vehicle when locking it.

Locking doors with proximity sensor in door handle

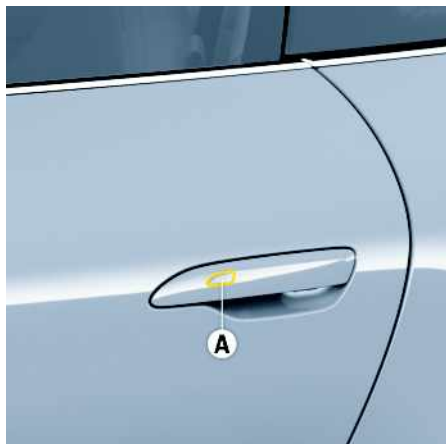


Fig. 32: Locking doors with Comfort Access

- ✓ Vehicles with Comfort Access
- ✓ Operating mode **P** selected.
- ✓ Carry the driver's key with you, e.g. in your trouser pocket.
- ✓ All doors are closed.
- ▶ Touch proximity sensor **A** on the door handle.

The hazard warning lights flash twice.
The door handles retract.

Deactivating SAFELOCK when the vehicle is locked

- ▶ Touch proximity sensor **A** on the door handle twice within 2 seconds.
The hazard warning lights flash slowly once.
The door handles retract.
The doors are locked, but can be opened from inside by pulling the door opener.
- ▶ Inform any persons remaining in the vehicle that the alarm system will be triggered if the door is opened.

Information

- The vehicle cannot be completely locked if the doors or rear lid are not fully closed. A warning tone sounds and the hazard warning lights do not flash.
- The driver's key must be outside the vehicle when locking the vehicle doors, otherwise the vehicle doors cannot be locked.

Locking doors from inside

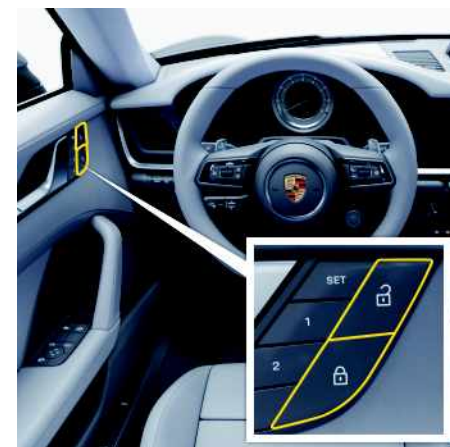



Fig. 33: Central locking button in the door panel

- ✓ Doors closed.
- ▶ Press button  in the door panel.
All doors are locked. The filler flap is not locked.
The door handles retract.
The indicator light on the button comes on.
The doors can only be opened from inside by pulling the door opener.

Automatic locking (Auto Lock)

- ✓ Function activated.
The vehicle is locked automatically from a speed of approx. 9 mph (15 km/h).
- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Vehicle Settings" on page 246.

NOTICE

Extended door handles can be damaged in car washes.

- ▶ Lock the vehicle before starting the car wash.

Emergency unlocking and emergency locking of doors

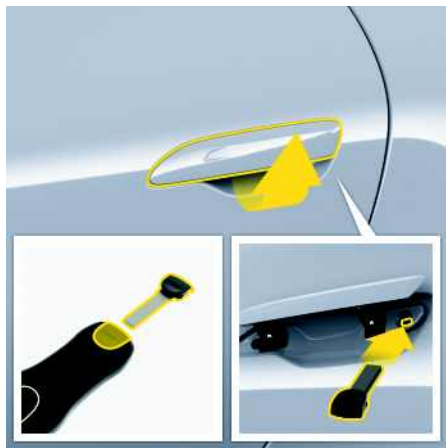



Fig. 34: Emergency unlocking/emergency locking

If the driver's key remote control does not work, the doors can also be unlocked and locked without the remote control.

Performing emergency door unlocking

- ▶ Hold the driver's key at the centre of the windscreen at the top and press the  button at the same time.

If the vehicle still cannot be unlocked:

1. Remove the emergency key from the driver's key.
 - ▶ Please refer to chapter "Using the emergency key" on page 97.
2. Pull and hold the door handle.
3. Insert the emergency key with the round edge upwards into the door lock (right-hand drive: with the round edge facing downwards).
4. Turn the emergency key anti-clockwise until you feel initial resistance and then firmly turn it further as far as it will go.
5. Turn the emergency key back to its initial position again and remove it.
6. Switch on the ignition within 15 seconds in order to prevent triggering of the alarm system.

Information

The time it takes to trigger the alarm system differs depending on the country.

Performing emergency door locking

Information

Only emergency lock the doors when the engine has been switched off.

- ▶ Unlock the doors before starting to drive.

1. Remove the emergency key from the driver's key.
 - ▶ Please refer to chapter "Using the emergency key" on page 97.
2. Pull and hold the door handle.
3. Insert the emergency key with the round edge upwards into the door lock (right-hand drive: with the round edge facing downwards).
4. With the door open, turn the emergency key

clockwise until you feel initial resistance and then firmly turn it further as far as it will go.

5. Turn the emergency key back to its initial position again and remove it.
6. Close the door.
7. Check that the vehicle is locked.
8. For emergency locking of the passenger's door, insert the emergency key in the door lock of the driver's door again, turn it 90° against the direction of travel and remove the emergency key again. The passenger's door is locked.

Information

In the event of a central locking fault, all functional locks in the central locking system can be locked via the lock in the driver's door.

- ▶ Have faults in the central locking system repaired.
- ▶ Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Child Restraint Systems (Child Seats)

DANGER

Improper use of child restraint systems

Risk of serious or fatal injury resulting from the improper use of child restraint systems.

Child restraint systems that are not suitable for the vehicle type or that are not properly installed in the vehicle do not provide adequate protection in the event of an accident.

- ▶ Always refer to the separate installation instructions for your child restraint systems.
- ▶ When using a child restraint system, always comply with the legal regulations that apply in your country.
- ▶ Use only child restraint systems recommended by Porsche. These restraint systems have been tested and adjusted to suit the interior of Porsche vehicles and the appropriate child weight classes. Other systems have not been tested and could increase the risk of injury.
- ▶ Switch off the passenger airbag if a child restraint system is installed on the passenger's seat.

Porsche recommends Porsche Equipment child restraint systems. For information on installation options:

- ▶ Contact your Porsche partner.
- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Use the correct fitting position for child restraint systems" on page 76.

DANGER

Child restraint system on passenger's seat

The passenger airbag offers protection only for persons of a certain minimum size and minimum weight. If a child restraint system is fitted on the

passenger seat or if the seated passenger is a small or light person, there is a risk of serious or fatal injury from the passenger airbag triggering.

- ▶ Always check whether the passenger airbag needs to be switched off before installing child restraint systems on the passenger seat.
 - ▶ Adjust the backrest angle of the passenger seat so that there is solid contact between the passenger seat and child restraint system.
-
- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Overview of installation of child restraint systems on the passenger seat" on page 77.
 - ▶ Please refer to chapter "Switching passenger airbag on and off" on page 78.
 - ▶ Always switch off the seat heating if child restraint systems are installed.



Fig. 35: Airbag warning sticker



Fig. 36: Airbag warning sticker on the sun visor

- ▶ Never remove, deface or render illegible airbag warning stickers **A** or warning signs.

Using child restraint systems correctly

1. Use a child restraint system of the correct weight and size category.
 - ▶ Please refer to chapter "Using child restraint systems of the correct weight and size class" on page 74.
2. Use the correct fitting position for child restraint systems.
 - ▶ Please refer to chapter "Use the correct fitting position for child restraint systems" on page 76.
3. Install the child restraint system securely.
 - ▶ Please refer to chapter "Installing child restraint systems" on page 78.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Using child restraint systems of the correct weight and size class

- ▶ In addition the suitable weight and size class, also check the correct installation position.
- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Use the correct fitting position for child restraint systems" on page 76.

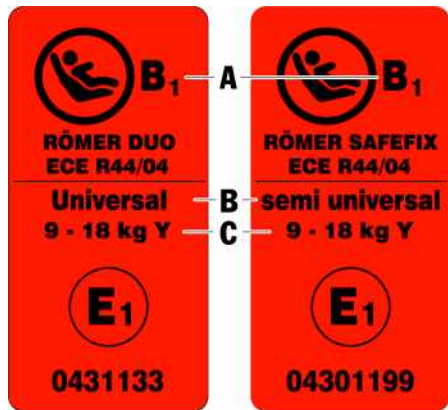


Fig. 37: Example of ECE child restraint system sticker

- A Size category
- B "Universal" or "semi universal" marking
- C Weight class

- ▶ In the case of child restraint systems with semi universal approval, please refer to the vehicle type list provided with the relevant child restraint system or available on the Internet.

Classification of child restraint systems into weight classes

Children in group 0 and 0+: up to 13 kg (secured with ISOFIX system and vehicle seat belt)

Children in this group are carried in child restraint systems **facing backward**.

Children in group I: 9 to 18 kg (secured with ISOFIX system or vehicle seat belt)

Children in this group must be carried in child restraint systems **facing forward**. In exceptional cases, children in this weight group can also be carried in special child restraint systems that are facing backward. Whenever possible, these child restraint systems should be installed on the rear seats.

Children in group II: 15 to 25 kg (secured with the vehicle seat belt)

Children in this group must be carried in child restraint systems **facing forward**. Whenever possible, these child restraint systems should be installed on the rear seats.

Children in group III: 22 to 36 kg (secured with the vehicle seat belt)

Children in this group must be carried in child restraint systems **facing forward**. Whenever possible, these child restraint systems should be installed on the rear seats.

Classification of child restraint systems by size classes

- A ISO/F3: front-facing, full-height child restraint system
- B ISO/F2: front-facing, reduced-height child restraint system
- B1 ISO/F2X: front-facing, reduced-height child restraint system
- C ISO/R3: rear-facing, full-size child restraint system
- D ISO/R2: rear-facing, reduced-size child restraint system

- E ISO/R1: rear-facing, child restraint system for infants
- F ISO/L1: left side-facing child restraint system (baby carrier)
- G ISO/L2: right side-facing child restraint system (baby carrier)

- ▶ Observe the scope of application of the child restraint system as well as the manufacturer's installation and operating instructions for the child restraint system being used.

Weight class	Size category	Child restraint system
Group 0: 0 to 10 kg	F	ISO/L1
	G	ISO/L2
	E	ISO/R1
Group 0+: 0 to 13 kg	C	ISO/R3
	D	ISO/R2
	E	ISO/R1
Group I: 9 to 18 kg	A	ISO/F3
	B	ISO/F2
	B1	ISO/F2X
	C	ISO/R3
	D	ISO/R2

Recommended child restraint systems

Weight class	Manufacturer	Secured with the vehicle seat belt			Secured with ISOFIX system		
		Type	Authorisation number	Porsche part number	Type	Authorisation number	Porsche part number
Group 0 and 0+: to 13 kg ► Only suitable for installation on passenger seat. Never fit on the back seats.	Britax-Römer	Porsche Baby Seat G0+	E1 04301146	955.044.805.84	Porsche Baby-seat ISOFIX G0+ only in conjunction with: Base ISOFIX	E1 04301146	955.044.805.84 only in conjunction with: 955.044.805.97
Group I: 9 to 18 kg	Britax-Römer	Porsche Junior Seat ISOFIX G1	E1 04301199	955.044.806.09	Porsche Junior Seat ISOFIX G1	E1 04301199	955.044.806.09
Group II: 15 to 25 kg	Britax-Römer	Porsche Junior Plus G2 + G3	E1 04301169	955.044.806.19	Porsche Junior Plus ISOFIT G2 + G3	E1 04301198	955.044.806.18
Group III: 22 to 36 kg	Britax-Römer	Porsche Junior Plus G2 + G3	E1 04301169	955.044.806.19	Porsche Junior Plus ISOFIT G2 + G3	E1 04301198	955.044.806.18

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Use the correct fitting position for child restraint systems

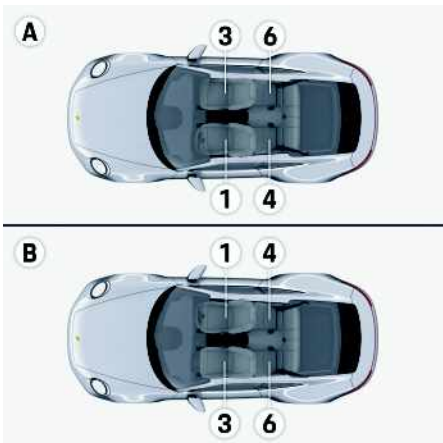


Fig. 38: Seat numbering for installation of child restraint systems

- a Left-hand drive vehicle
- b Right-hand drive vehicle

Overview of how child restraint systems can be used in accordance with standard ECE-R 16.

	Secured with the vehicle seat belt	Secured with ISOFIX system
Permissible installation positions according to seat numbering	3, 4 and 6	3, 4 and 6

Seat numbering for installation of child restraint systems	1	3 ¹	4 ^{2 3}	6 ^{2 3}
Secured with the vehicle seat belt	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
ISOFIX installation position	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Sideward-facing child restraint systems	No	No	No	No
Largest suitable rear-facing child restraint system	No	R2	This seat is only suitable for child restraint systems recommended by Porsche. ▷ Please refer to chapter "Recommended child restraint systems" on page 75.	
Largest suitable forward-facing child restraint system	No	F3		

No: Seat is **not** suitable for installation of a child restraint system of this group.

Overview of installation of child restraint systems on the passenger seat

When installing child restraint systems of the Universal (U) or "semi universal" (L) approval categories on the passenger seat, check whether the passenger airbag needs to be switched off using the table below.

For information on the approval category, please refer to the orange certification mark on the child restraint system.

- X: Seat is not suitable for child restraint systems of this group.
- U / L: Suitable for forward-facing child restraint systems in the "Universal" or "semi universal" approval categories, which are secured with the seat belt for adults and are approved for use with this group.

Group	Passenger airbag switched on	Passenger airbag switched off
Group 0: 0 to 10 kg	X	U / L
Group 0+:	X	U / L

- Always check whether the passenger airbag needs to be switched off.
- This installation position is **not** suitable for child restraint systems with support leg.
- The passenger seat must be adjusted so that there is sufficient distance between the passenger seat and a child, child seat, or passenger sitting behind it.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

	Group	Passenger airbag switched on	Passenger airbag switched off
A			
B	0 to 13 kg		
C			
D	Group I: 9 to 18 kg Backward-facing	X	U / L
E			
F	Group I: 9 to 18 kg Forward-facing	U / L	U / L
G			
H			
I	Group II: 15 to 25 kg	U / L	U / L
J			
K	Group III: 22 to 36 kg	U / L	U / L
L			

Installing child restraint systems

Baby carriers

Left or right-facing child restraint systems from size categories F and G (e.g. baby carriers) should not generally be used on any of the seat versions.

Porsche recommends Porsche Tequipment child restraint systems (e.g. Porsche Babyseat ISOFIX GO+).

Switching passenger airbag on and off

DANGER

Passenger airbag switched off

The passenger airbag will not be triggered in an accident if it is switched off.

- ▶ Only switch off the passenger airbag if a child restraint systems is fitted on the passenger seat.
- ▶ Switch the passenger airbag back on once the child restraint system has been removed.



Fig. 39: Switching off the passenger airbag

✓ Ignition switched off.

1. Open the glove box.
2. Remove the emergency key from the driver's key.
 - ▶ Please refer to chapter "Driver's Key" on page 97.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the key switch and airbag system

- ▶ Only turn the emergency key if it is inserted as far as it will go in the key switch. It must be possible to turn the key switch without exerting excessive force.
- ▶ Only switch the passenger air bag on or off when the ignition is switched off.

3. Insert the emergency key as far as it will go in the key switch.
4. Using the emergency key, switch the passenger airbag off (switch position **OFF**) or on (switch position **ON**).

DANGER

Risk of serious or fatal injury due to the passenger airbag triggering inadvertently.

If the emergency key is left in the key switch during driving, it may inadvertently turn in the key switch due to vibration, possibly triggering the airbag.

- ▶ Never leave the emergency key in the key switch when driving.

5. Remove the emergency key from the key switch.
6. Close the glove box.

PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF/ON indicator



Fig. 40: PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF/ON indicator

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF/ON** indicator is located on the overhead console.

OFF **Lamp check**

Once the ignition has been switched on, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF/ON** indicator comes on for approx. 5 seconds for a lamp check.

OFF **Passenger airbag switched off**

When the airbag on the passenger's side is switched off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** indicator is continuously lit when the ignition is switched on/the engine is running.

ON **Passenger airbag switched on**

When the passenger airbag is switched on, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG ON** indicator comes on for approx. 1 minute when the ignition is switched on and then goes out.

DANGER

Failure or malfunction of the passenger airbag

If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** indicator does not light up when the ignition is switched on and the passenger airbag is switched off, there may be a fault in the system.

- ▶ Do not install a child restraint system on the passenger seat.
- ▶ Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Installing child restraint system with vehicle seat belt

Installing child restraint system on rear seats with vehicle seat belt

1. Adjust the backrest angle of the passenger seat so that there is solid contact between the passenger seat and child restraint system.
2. Adjust the passenger seat to the rearmost upper position.
 - ▶ Please refer to chapter "Adjusting the seat" on page 203.
3. Ensure a comfortable distance between the front passenger seat and a passenger sitting behind it.

Installing child restraint system on rear seats with vehicle seat belt

- ▶ Make sure that there is solid contact between the rear seat and child restraint system.
- ▶ In the case of booster seats without backrest, ensure that the booster seat contacts the rear seat backrest.

Installation of child restraint system with ISOFIX system

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Using child restraint systems of the correct weight and size class" on page 74.
- ▶ Always refer to the separate installation instructions for your child restraint system.

Installing child restraint system on the passenger seat



Fig. 41: ISOFIX anchorage system on passenger seat

The retaining lugs **A** of the ISOFIX child restraint system anchorage points are located between the backrest and seat surface of the passenger seat.

1. Deactivate the passenger airbag with the emergency key in the glove box **OFF**.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** warning light on the overhead console must come on.

2. Adjust the passenger seat to the rearmost upper position.
 - ▷ Please refer to chapter "Adjusting the seat" on page 203.
3. Secure the child restraint system to retaining lugs **A** as described in the instruction manual for the child restraint system.
4. Pull the child restraint system to check that both anchorage points are properly engaged.
5. Adjust the backrest angle of the passenger seat so that there is solid contact between the passenger seat and child restraint system.
6. If the rear seat is occupied, make sure that there is sufficient clearance between the child or child seat or passenger and the front seat. Adjust the front seat in front of the child or child seat or passenger as far forward and as high as possible, and the seat backrest as steeply as possible.

Installing child restraint system with support leg on passenger seat

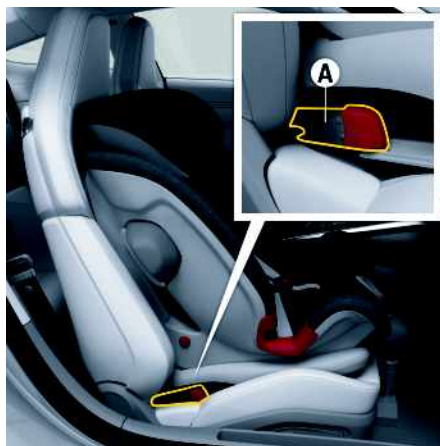


Fig. 42: Installing child restraint system with support leg

1. Install the child restraint system with ISOFIX anchorage system correctly with the retaining lug **A**.
 - ▷ Please refer to chapter "ISOFIX anchorage system on passenger seat" on page 79.
2. Position the support leg in accordance with the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions.
3. Ensure that the child restraint system is positioned flush against the passenger seat.

Installing child restraint system on the rear seats

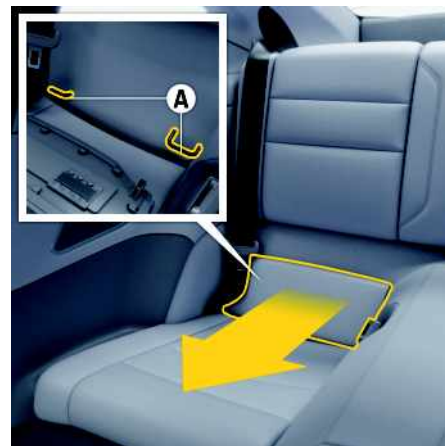


Fig. 43: ISOFIX anchorage system on rear seats

The retaining lugs **A** of the ISOFIX anchorage system for the child restraint system are located behind the backrest lower sections.

1. First detach the backrest lower section at the top centre (Velcro strap), disengage from the retaining lugs **A** and remove.
2. Secure the child restraint system to retaining lugs **A** as described in the instruction manual for the child restraint system.
3. Pull the child restraint system to check that both anchorage points are properly engaged.
4. Make sure that there is solid contact between the rear seat and child restraint system.
5. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance between the child or child seat and the front seat. Adjust the front seat in front of the child or child seat as far forward and as high as possible, and the seat backrest as steeply as possible.

Coupé only: Installing child restraint system with top tether

To prevent it from rotating, the child restraint system must be additionally secured with a top tether.

- ▶ When using a child restraint system with top tether, the top tether must be attached at the anchorage points behind the rear seats on the rear shelf.

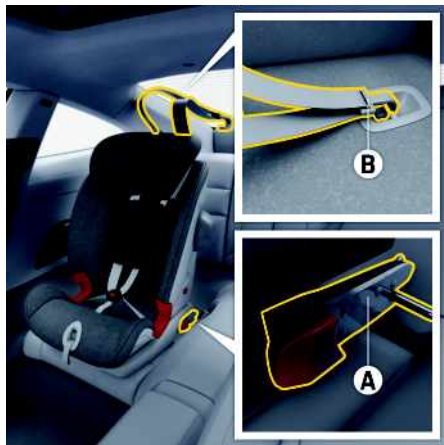


Fig. 44: Installing child restraint system with top tether

1. Install the child restraint system with ISOFIX anchorage system correctly with the retaining lug **A**.
 - ▶ Please refer to chapter "ISOFIX anchorage system on passenger seat" on page 79.
2. In addition, secure the top tether **B** at the anchorage points behind the rear seats on the rear shelf and tighten the top tether.

Convertible top

- ▷ Please refer to chapter "Car Care" on page 61.
- ▷ Please refer to chapter "Warning and Information Messages" on page 255.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to convertible top and convertible-top drive

- ▶ Do not operate convertible top:
 - At temperatures below 0 °C.
 - When one side of the vehicle is on a kerb, a lifting platform or a jack.
 - When items of luggage or other objects (for example, behind the rear seats) hinder the movement of the convertible top.
 - With the roll-over bars extended.
- ▶ Avoid frequent convertible top operation with the engine off so that the vehicle battery does not rapidly discharge.
- ▶ Only drive with the convertible top fully open or closed.
- ▶ When opening or closing the convertible top, ensure that there is sufficient clearance above it (e.g. in the garage).
- ▶ To prevent damp stains and abrasion damage, open the convertible top only when it is in a dry, clean state.
- ▶ Park the vehicle in the shade if possible, since continuous exposure to the sun attacks textiles, rubber and paint.
- ▶ The convertible top may only be operated when driving on a level road surface.
- ▶ Do not operate the convertible top in strong winds or storms.

Opening and closing the convertible top

WARNING

Opening and closing the convertible top

When opening and closing the convertible top, parts of the body can become trapped between the convertible-top mechanism or convertible-top compartment lid and fixed vehicle parts.

- ▶ Make sure that nobody is at risk of injury from the convertible-top mechanism or the convertible-top compartment lid.
- ▶ Do not operate the convertible top with the driver's key if the vehicle is out of your sight.
- ▶ In order to interrupt convertible-top operation in the event of danger, immediately release the button in the vehicle or driver's key button.
- ▶ Keep the covers of the vanity mirrors in the sun visors closed when closing the convertible top.

The front and rear side windows are lowered automatically when the **convertible top is opened**.

The front side windows close automatically if operation of the convertible top is continued after it has reached its end position.

The front and rear side windows are lowered automatically when the **convertible top is closed**. They close automatically if operation of the convertible top is continued after it has reached its end position.

Opening and closing the convertible top using the button in the vehicle interior



Fig. 45: Opening the convertible top with the button



Fig. 46: Closing the convertible top with the button

- ✓ Ignition switched on.
- ✓ Maximum speed of up to approx. 50 km/h (30 mph). The opening/closing operation is interrupted if the maximum speed is exceeded.
- ▶ Pull and hold the relevant switch for opening or closing the convertible top until the convertible top has reached its end position or until the windows are in the desired position.

The corresponding message on the instrument cluster goes out when the end position has been reached.

In the event of danger:

- ▶ Release the button.
Convertible top operation stops.

Opening and closing the convertible top using the driver's key (country-dependent)

1. Unlock the vehicle.
2. Press and hold the driver's key button until the convertible top has reached its end position or until the windows are in the desired position.

In the event of danger:

- ▶ Release the button.
Convertible top operation stops.
3. Lock the vehicle again if necessary.

Raising/lowering the wind deflector

WARNING

Raising the wind deflector

Persons sitting on the rear seats may be trapped when raising the wind deflector.

- ▶ Ensure that nobody can be injured when raising the wind deflector.
- ▶ In case of danger, release the switch immediately.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to wind deflector and seat backrests. At extreme backrest angles, the wind deflector can collide with the seat backrests.

- ▶ Before raising the wind deflector, always adjust both seat backrests to the upright position.



Fig. 47: Raising/lowering the wind deflector

- ✓ Ignition switched on.
- ✓ Maximum speed is approx. 200 km/h (125 mph) for raising and approx. 120 km/h (75 mph) for lowering. If these speeds are exceeded, raising/lowering of the wind deflector is not possible.
- ▶ Press and hold the switch until the end position of the wind deflector is reached and the relevant message on the instrument cluster goes out.

Emergency operation of the convertible top and wind deflector

WARNING

Moving convertible top parts during emergency operation

- ▶ Always perform emergency operation with the greatest care.
- ▶ During emergency operation, do not operate the convertible top or wind deflector using the switch or driver's key.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to convertible top and convertible-top drive

- ▶ During or after emergency operation, do not operate the convertible top or wind deflector using the switch or driver's key.
- ▶ Drive slowly and carefully.
- ▶ Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Checking the convertible top system

Before implementing the emergency operation, check:

- During wind deflector and convertible top operation, was the ignition switched on using the switch in the passenger compartment?
- Are the fuses defective?
- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Fuses" on page 114.
- ▶ Switch off the ignition so that the wind deflector and convertible top are not activated unintentionally.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Removing the rear-wall lining

1. Take the screw driver out of the tool kit in the luggage compartment.
 - ▷ Please refer to chapter "Luggage compartment" on page 146.

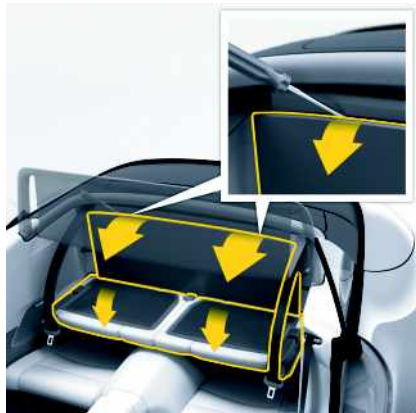


Fig. 48: Folding the rear seat backrests and rear-wall lining forwards

2. Fold the rear seat backrests forward
3. Carefully lever out the rear-wall lining from the locking points using the screwdriver and fold forwards
 - or –
 - Depending on the equipment, pull out the rear-wall lining at both straps and fold forwards.



Fig. 49: Removing the emergency operation key

4. Remove the emergency operation key **A** from the rear-wall lining.

Performing emergency operation of the wind deflector

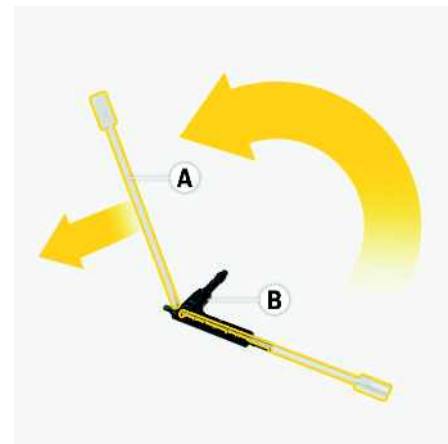


Fig. 50: Emergency operation key

1. Remove plastic attachment **B** from the emergency operation key **A**.
2. Swivel the metal insert approx. 90° upwards out of the plastic attachment **B** and remove it by pulling forward.

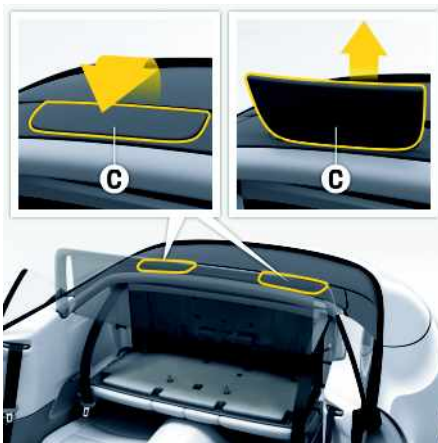


Fig. 51: Removing cover of roll-over protection

3. Fold both roll-over protection covers **C** forwards and detach by pulling upwards.

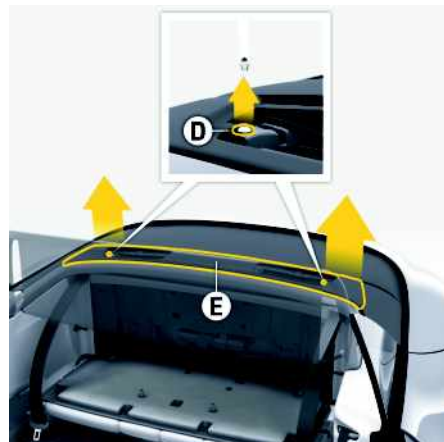


Fig. 52: Removing cover of roll-over protection

4. Unscrew both screws **D** on the roll-over protection cover using the screwdriver.
5. Pull roll-over protection cover **E** upwards to release it from the locking points.

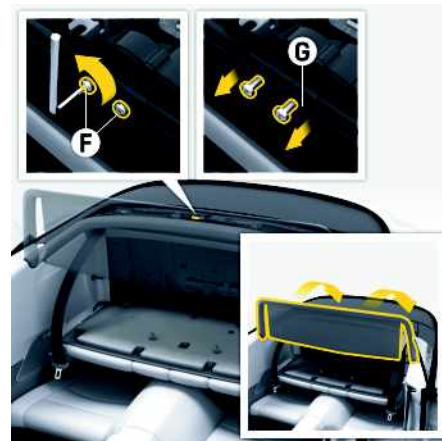


Fig. 53: Retracting the wind deflector

6. Unscrew screws **F** on the wind deflector motor using the metal insert **A** (TORX®) of the emergency operation key.
7. Pull retaining bracket **G** forward (lever out using the screwdriver if necessary) until the gears no longer engage.
8. Remove retaining bracket.
9. Retract the wind deflector manually.

Releasing convertible-top drive

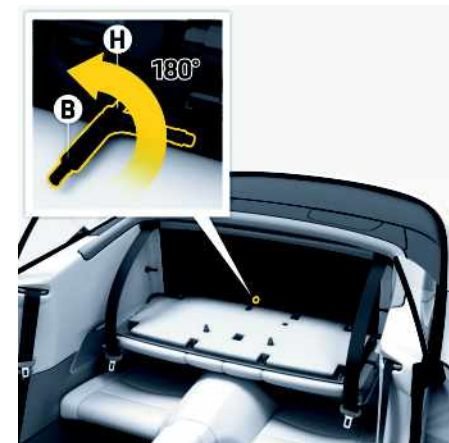


Fig. 54: Releasing convertible-top drive

- ▶ Using the hexagon on the plastic attachment **B**, turn the emergency hand screw **H** approx. 180° anti-clockwise.

NOTICE

- ▶ Only loosen emergency hand screw **H**, do not unscrew it completely.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Opening the convertible-top compartment lid



Fig. 55: Insert the emergency operation key.

1. Reassemble plastic attachment **B** and metal insert **A**.
2. Insert the metal end of the emergency operation key between the convertible-top compartment lid and convertible top. Ensure that the bend of the plastic attachment **B** is pointing towards the rear of the vehicle.
3. Guide the emergency operation key forwards along the plastic trim until it slides into opening **K** up to marking **1** on the plastic attachment **B**.



Fig. 56: Unlocking the convertible-top compartment lid (step 1)

4. Turn the emergency operation key approx. 90° in the direction of travel so that the plastic attachment **B** is facing upwards.

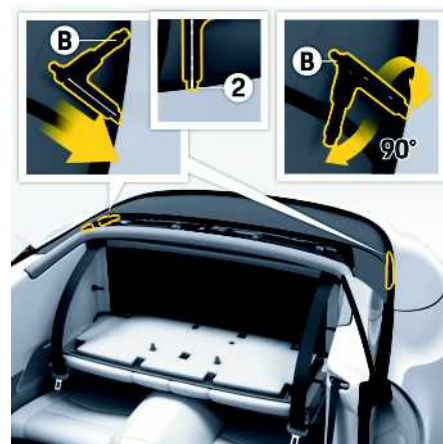


Fig. 57: Unlocking the convertible-top compartment lid (step 2)

5. Insert the emergency operation key up to marking **2** on the plastic attachment **B** and turn a further 90° in the direction of travel until a noticeable resistance is overcome.
6. Turn the emergency operation key approx. 90° against the direction of travel and remove it.
7. Repeat the procedure (steps 2 to 6) on the opposite side.



Fig. 58: Raising the convertible-top compartment lid

8. Using both hands on the driver's and passenger's side, firmly pull the convertible-top compartment lid upwards.
9. Grasp the convertible-top compartment lid in the centre from the rear and set to the upright position.

Emergency operation of rear side trim panel flaps



Fig. 59: Detaching connectors L.

1. Detach both connectors L.

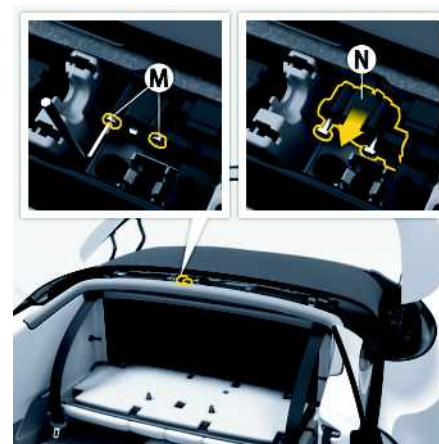


Fig. 60: Loosening screws and pulling motor/gear unit forward

2. Loosen both screws M on the motor/gear unit using the metal insert A (TORX®) of the emergency operation key.
3. Pull motor/gear unit N forwards (lever it out using the screwdriver if necessary) until the gears no longer engage.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z



Fig. 61: Pushing the rear side flaps downwards

4. Press both rear side flaps downwards until the end position is reached.

Closing the convertible top



Fig. 62: Pulling convertible top out of storage compartment

1. From the passenger compartment, pull the convertible top centrally out of the storage compartment until it is approximately half closed.

CAUTION

Risk of injury due to crushing during closing

If body parts are located within the range of movement of the convertible top or in the area of the convertible top lock during closing, there is a risk of pinching or crushing.

- ▶ Pay attention to the following:
 - That no persons are within the range of movement of the convertible top during closing.
 - Keep your hands away from the range of movement of the convertible top during closing.



Fig. 63: Removing the plug

2. Remove plug **O** at the access point for convertible-top lock emergency operation.

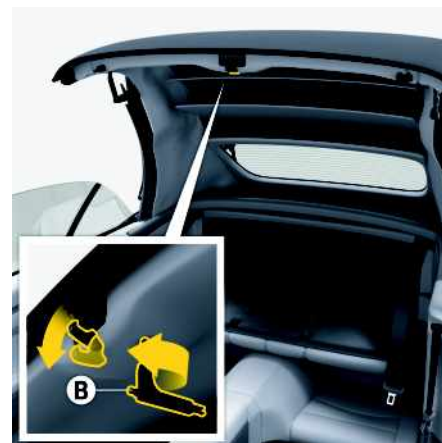


Fig. 64: Extending the convertible top latching hook

3. Remove plastic attachment **B** from the emergency operation key.
4. Swivel metal insert **A** approx. 90° upwards out of plastic attachment **B** and remove it by pulling forwards.
5. Insert plastic attachment **B** into the access point for convertible-top lock emergency operation and turn it to the left or right until it engages.
6. Turn plastic attachment **B** anti-clockwise until the latching hook is fully extended (noticeable resistance).

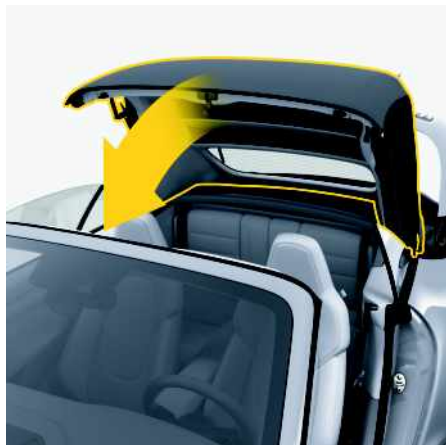


Fig. 65: Closing the convertible top

7. Pull the convertible top to the windscreen frame.
8. To fully close the convertible top, turn plastic attachment **B** clockwise until the latching hook fully engages in the catch (noticeable resistance).

Closing the convertible-top compartment lid

WARNING

Closing of the convertible-top compartment lid

Parts of the body may become trapped between the convertible-top compartment lid and fixed vehicle parts when closing the convertible-top compartment lid.

- ▶ Place your hands on top of the convertible-top compartment lid when pushing.



Fig. 66: Closing the convertible-top compartment lid

1. Stand behind the vehicle:
2. Grasp the convertible-top compartment lid above the brake light and push forwards against noticeable resistance until it is completely closed.
3. Push the convertible-top compartment lid into the end position.

The convertible-top compartment lid is not locked.

4. Hand-tighten emergency hand screw **H** in the passenger compartment clockwise.

Coolant

WARNING

Engine compartment blowers and other moving parts in the area of the engine

Hands, fingers, items of clothing, necklaces or long hair can be drawn in by moving parts, e.g. the engine-compartment blowers or drive belt, when working in the engine compartment. The engine-compartment blowers are installed under the bonnet. After the engine is stopped, the engine compartment temperature continues to be monitored. The engine-compartment blowers may continue to run or start to run.

- ▶ Carry out work in this area only with the engine stopped while exercising extreme caution and take great care to ensure that parts of the body, articles of clothing or jewellery cannot be caught in the radiator fan, engine-compartment blower, drive belt or other moving parts.

WARNING

Hot engine parts and hot coolant

The engine and adjacent components, the exhaust system and the coolant become very hot when the engine is running.

The coolant tank is pressurised. Hot coolant can spray out suddenly if the coolant tank is not opened

with care.

- ▶ Take care when working near hot vehicle parts, particularly the engine and the exhaust system.
- ▶ Before working in the engine compartment, always switch the engine off and let it cool sufficiently.
- ▶ Exercise extreme caution when working in the engine compartment.
- ▶ Top up coolant only with the engine stopped and ignition switched off.
- ▶ Do **not** open the cap on the coolant reservoir when the engine is hot. Wait until the coolant temperature gauge displays a temperature below 60 °C.

NOTICE

If the vehicle continues to move after the warning symbol is displayed, there is a risk of engine damage.

- ▶ Switch off engine and allow to cool.
 - ▶ Do not continue driving if the warning persists even when the engine coolant level is correct.
 - ▶ Have the fault corrected. Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.
- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Warning and Information Messages" on page 255.

The coolant provides year-round protection from corrosion and freezing down to -37 °C.

Regular checking of the coolant level is part of servicing.

- ▶ Use only antifreeze authorised by Porsche. Porsche recommends Glysantin® G40® (alternatively: antifreeze in accordance with G12++/VW TL 774 G).

Checking the coolant level and adding coolant

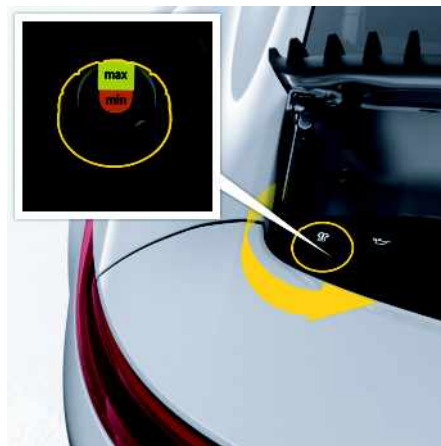


Fig. 67: Coolant reservoir display

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Instrument Cluster" on page 120.
 - ✓ Vehicle is horizontal.
 - ✓ Engine cold and coolant temperature gauge below 60 °C.
1. Read off the engine coolant level. The coolant level must always be between the **min** and **max** markings.
 2. If the coolant level is below the **min** marking, add coolant.
 3. Open cap on the coolant reservoir carefully and allow any overpressure to escape.
 4. Then unscrew the cap completely.
 5. Refill coolant. Only add a mixture of antifreeze

and distilled water in equal parts. Do not exceed the **max** marking.

6. Screw the cap on the coolant reservoir closed until it engages securely.
7. A significant loss of coolant indicates leaks in or overfilling of the cooling system. Check the cooling system and have the cause of the coolant loss rectified immediately. Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Information

If pure water is added in an emergency, the mixing ratio will have to be corrected. A significant loss of coolant indicates leaks in or overfilling of the cooling system.

- ▶ Have the cause remedied without delay. Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.
-

Cruise control (CC)

WARNING

Unsafe traffic situation and unfavourable road conditions

Use of the cruise control may cause an accident if the current traffic situation does not permit driving safely at an adequate distance from the vehicle in front and at a constant speed.

- ▶ Do not use cruise control in heavy traffic, on twisting roads or in unfavourable road conditions (e.g. wintry or wet conditions, varying road surfaces).

Information

- Vehicles with PDK: Active downshifting and braking intervention are carried out automatically to help maintain the pre-selected speed (especially when driving downhill).
- Vehicles with manual transmission: Cruise control is not interrupted when the clutch pedal is pressed while changing gear.

Operating principle

Cruise control (CC) maintains the selected speed between approx. 30 and 240 km/h (20 and 150 mph) without the user having to press the accelerator.

Controls



Fig. 68: Control stalk for driver assistance systems




- R** Switch driver assistance systems on/off and open options menu
- S** Open options menu (when driver assistance system is switched on)
- 1** Set/increase the desired speed
- 2** Reduce the desired speed
- 3** RESUME: Resume control
- 4** CANCEL: Interrupt control

Information

Button **S** on the control stalk and the options menu are available depending on equipment.

Display elements

Status display symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Cruise control is passive.
	Cruise control is passive. Control is interrupted and the desired speed is still displayed.
	Cruise control is active at the set desired speed.

Switching on cruise control readiness

The driver assistance system that was selected last is always switched on. The driver assistance system is initially in passive mode when switched on. Cruise control must first be activated before the control function starts working.

Switching on cruise control

- ✓ Vehicles **without** button **S** on the control stalk.
 - ▶ Press button **R** on the control stalk.
 - Cruise control is switched on and **passive**.
 - The operating status appears grey in the status display. There is no speed stored.
 - or –
 - ✓ Vehicles **with** button **S** on the control stalk.
 - ✓ A driver assistance system is not yet switched on.
- 1. Press button **R** on the control stalk.

The options menu for the driver assistance systems appears on the instrument cluster.

- If cruise control is not already selected, select **CC** using the rotary push button on the steering wheel and press to confirm.

Cruise control is switched on and **passive**.

The operating status appears grey in the status display. There is no speed stored.

Switching from an already activated driver assistance system to cruise control

- ✓ Vehicles **with** button **S** on the control stalk.

- Press button **S** on the control stalk.
The options menu for the driver assistance systems appears on the instrument cluster.
- Select **CC** using the rotary push button on the steering wheel and press to confirm.
Cruise control is switched on and **passive**.
The operating status appears grey in the status display. There is no speed stored.

Information

The last selected driver assistance system is retained even after switching it off and operational readiness is restored.

Switching cruise control off

- ▶ Press button **R** on the control stalk.
The memory is cleared and the readiness symbol disappears.

Activating cruise control

- ✓ Cruise control switched on.
- ✓ Speed is higher than 30 km/h (20 mph).

- Accelerate or decelerate to the desired speed using the accelerator pedal.
- Briefly press the control stalk forward (position **1**) and release the accelerator pedal.
Cruise control is **active**.
The current driving speed appears green in the status display and is maintained automatically.

Changing the desired speed

The desired speed can be increased or decreased by pressing the control stalk.

- ✓ Cruise control active.

Increasing the speed

- ▶ Press the control stalk forward (position **1**):
 - Brief press = 1 km/h (1 mph) increments
 - Press and hold = 10 km/h (6 mph) increments

Reduce speed

- ▶ Pull the control stalk (position **2**):
 - Brief pull = 1 km/h (1 mph) increments
 - Pull and hold = 10 km/h (6 mph) increments

The new desired speed is displayed on the instrument cluster.

Information

The speed can be increased using the accelerator pedal as usual. This does not change the stored value; it is resumed after the accelerator pedal is released.

Cancel cruise control operation – CANCEL

Following deactivation, cruise control switches to standby mode and remains in standby until it is activated manually again.

- ▶ Press the control stalk downwards (position **4**, **CANCEL**).
– or –
- ▶ Press brake pedal
– or –
- ▶ Press the clutch pedal for longer than approx. 7 seconds (vehicles with manual transmission).
– or –
- ▶ Move selector lever to operating mode **N** (vehicles with PDK).
Cruise control is passive. The set value for the desired speed remains stored. The status display changes from green to grey.

Cruise control operation is interrupted automatically in the following situations:

- The vehicle speed is above or below the set speed for a certain time.
- Porsche Stability Management (PSM) is active.

Resuming the stored speed – RESUME

- ▶ Press the control stalk upwards (position **3**, **RESUME**).
Cruise control accelerates or brakes the vehicle to the stored speed.

Cupholders

Using cupholders

WARNING

Objects in the centre console

If the storage compartment or cupholder is not inserted in the centre console, objects can block or activate the parking brake button. This can lead to unwanted braking.

- ▶ When storing objects in the centre console, always use the supplied storage compartment.
- ▶ Only use the cupholder for the storage of drinks as intended.
- ▶ Never store items in the cupholder.
- ▶ Never operate the vehicle without an inserted cupholder or inserted storage compartment.

CAUTION

Spilled hot drinks

Hot drinks can cause scalding if spilt.

- ▶ Only use containers that fit.
- ▶ Never put overfull containers in the cupholder.
- ▶ Do not use for hot drinks.
- ▶ The cupholder on the passenger must be kept closed during driving.

NOTICE

Risk of damage from spilled drinks.

- ▶ Only use containers that fit.
- ▶ Never put overfull containers in the cupholder.

There is a cupholder in the centre console and one below the outer air vent on the passenger side.

Inserting the cupholder in the centre console



Fig. 69: Inserting the cupholder in the centre console

- ▶ Insert the cupholder and press downwards until it clicks into place.
The cupholder can be used.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, an ashtray is available, which can be inserted into the cupholder.

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Smoker's Package" on page 210.

Removing the cupholder from the centre console



Fig. 70: Removing the cupholder from the centre console

- ▶ Press the button and remove the cupholder upwards.

Using the cupholder on the passenger side



Fig. 71: Cupholder

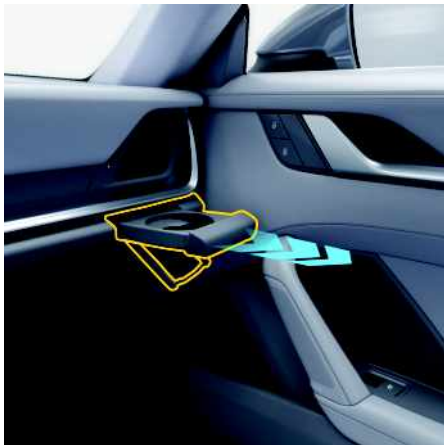




Fig. 72: Opening cupholder

- ▶ To open, press on the panel below the outer air vent on the passenger side.
The cupholder opens automatically.
- ▶ To close, insert the cupholder until it clicks into place.

Device Manager

Opening the Device Manager

The Device Manager provides an overview of the available devices and of their connection status.






- ▶ Select  or  in the footer (depending on the connection status).

Displaying connection status



Colours and meanings of the symbols

- Green symbol: Connection is active.
- White symbol: Connection is possible, not yet active.
- No symbol: Connection is not possible.

Available functions

-  **Phone:** Mobile phones connected via Bluetooth®. Please refer to chapter "Telephone" on page 222.
-  **Music:** External media sources connected via Bluetooth®. Please refer to chapter "Media" on page 152.
-  **Data:** Data connection established via the access point. Please refer to chapter "Porsche Connect" on page 182.
-  **App:** Porsche Connect App connected by WiFi. Please refer to chapter "Apps" on page 41. For further information on the Porsche Connect App: Visit www.porsche.com/connect.
-  **Link:** iPhone connected via USB port with access to Apple CarPlay. Please refer to chapter "Apple CarPlay" on page 39.




Pairing a new device via Bluetooth®

1. Select  or  in the footer (depending on the connection status) ▶ **Search for new device.**
2. Select the device from the list.
A 6-digit Bluetooth® code is generated and displayed in the PCM and on the device.
3. Compare the Bluetooth® code in the PCM and on the device.
4. If the Bluetooth® code in the PCM and on the device match, confirm.
If the mobile phone has been successfully connected, it appears in the device overview.

For information on operating Porsche Communication Management (PCM):

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Porsche Communication Management (PCM)" on page 175.

Device Manager settings

- ▶ Select  or  in the header (depending on the connection status) ▶ Options 

- **Telephone:** Please refer to chapter "Telephone" on page 222.
- **Bluetooth:**
 - Switch **Bluetooth** on or off.
 - Allow **access to SIM card**.
 - Edit **Bluetooth name** of PCM.
- **WiFi:**
 - Switch **WiFi** on or off.
 - **Configure WiFi hotspot in PCM:** Display and configure PCM WiFi access data. This data is required to be able to connect a device (e.g.

mobile phone) to the PCM via WiFi and to use a WiFi hotspot.

- **Connected WiFi devices:** List of all WiFi devices which have been registered.
- **Search for WiFi hotspot:** Search for a new WiFi hotspot and enter access data of external WiFi hotspot (user name and password). When entering the data, pay attention to upper and lower case.
- **Mobile data:**
 - Switch **mobile data** on or off.
 - **Share data connection:** Enable data connection for WiFi devices.
 - **Roaming:** Allow or block data connections in external networks.
- **Vehicle hotspot:** Display PCM WiFi access data.
- **Delete paired devices**

Driver's Key

Using the driver's key

Information

- ▶ Only use the driver's key when the vehicle is in your sight.

The Porsche Crest on the driver's key lights up when the buttons are pressed. The Crest may also light up when driving without any of the buttons being pressed.

Data of relevance for servicing and maintenance is stored on the driver's key while driving. The Porsche Crest on the driver's key may therefore light up without actuation. For further information on storing and reading out the data on the driver's key:

- ▶ Contact your Porsche partner.

The remote control may not work for the following reasons:

- The transmission is disturbed by radio waves (also the radio contact between vehicle key and vehicle, e.g. on vehicles with comfort access).
- The remote control is malfunctioning due to a fault.
- The battery in the driver's key is flat.
- ▶ Ensure that you do not store the driver's key together with electronic devices which are switched on (e.g. mobile phone, notebook, charging cable). Store the driver's key somewhere else if necessary.

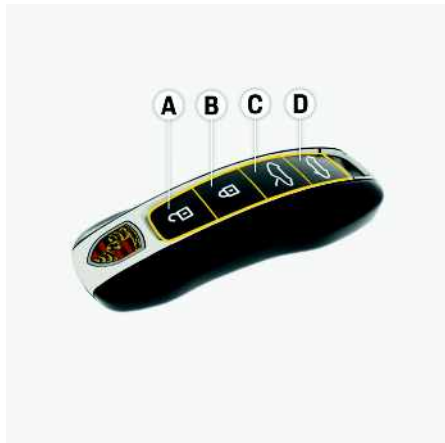


Fig. 73: Driver's key

- A** Unlock vehicle
- B** Lock vehicle
- C** Unlock luggage compartment lid
- D** Open and close the convertible roof (Cabriolet)

There is an emergency key integrated in every driver's key. The driver's keys can be used to operate all of the vehicle locks.

- ▶ Take care of your driver's keys: do not part with them except under exceptional circumstances.
- ▶ Never leave the driver's key in the vehicle.

Using the emergency key

Removing the emergency key



Fig. 74: Removing emergency key

- ▶ Push the emergency key out of the driver's key upwards.

Inserting the emergency key

- ▶ Push the emergency key into the driver's key until the release button engages audibly.

Replacing battery in driver's key

WARNING

Risk of internal burns or death from swallowing the lithium coin cell (button battery)

The driver's key contains a lithium coin cell (battery).

Swallowing the battery can cause internal burns within two hours and this can result in death.

- ▶ Keep removed or new batteries out of children's reach.
- ▶ Keep driver's keys out of children's reach. Children could open the driver's key and remove the battery.
- ▶ If the battery is swallowed or inserted into a body orifice, seek medical attention from a doctor immediately.

Information

- ▶ Observe the disposal instructions for batteries.

If the battery in the driver's key needs to be replaced, a message appears on the instrument cluster. The Porsche Crest on the driver's key no longer lights up when buttons are pressed.

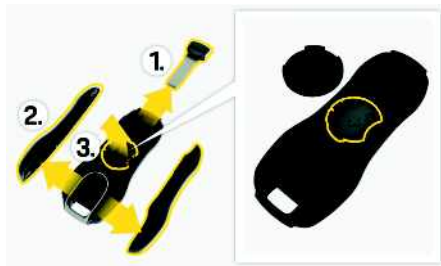


Fig. 75: Changing battery

Changing the battery (CR 2032, 3 V)

1. Remove the emergency key.
2. Unclip the two-part driver's key housing to the right and left.
3. Unscrew the battery cover anti-clockwise and remove.
4. Change the battery (checking polarity).
5. Re-fit the battery cover and screw it back on firmly clockwise.
 - Ensure that the emergency key can be pushed in.
6. Push the driver's key housing upwards from below and clip into place.
7. Insert the emergency key.

Starting vehicle when driver's key battery is flat or there is radio interference

Malfunctions of wireless communication between the vehicle and the driver's key, or a discharged driver's key battery can disable detection of the driver's key.

To start the vehicle in this case, observe the following:

1. Open the storage compartment in the centre console armrest.
 - ▶ Please refer to chapter "Opening the storage compartment in the armrest" on page 220.
2. Hold the driver's key at the centre console – in the area between the control panel and the storage compartment in the armrest.
3. Turn the control unit to ignition lock position **2** and then back to position **0**.
4. Turn the control unit to ignition lock position **2** again.
 - ▶ Please refer to chapter "Starting and Stopping the Engine" on page 216.

Ordering and storing replacement keys

Driver's keys can only be ordered from a Porsche partner. This can take a long time.

- ▶ Always have a replacement key available.
- ▶ Keep the replacement key in a safe place, but under no circumstances in or on the vehicle.

To teach new driver's keys for the vehicle:

- ▶ Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.
- ▶ Teach all driver's keys belonging to the vehicle again.

Information

A total of eight driver's keys can be taught.

Information

- ▶ If a driver's key is lost or stolen, have a Porsche partner disable this driver's key in the vehicle and change the mechanical locks if necessary.
- ▶ You should notify your insurance company of the loss or theft of driver's keys or of the production of additional or replacement keys.

Driving Data Display (Trip Information)

An array of driving data such as the journey time, distance driven, average speed and average fuel consumption can be displayed on the PCM and on the instrument cluster.

For information on operation of the PCM and instrument cluster:

- ▷ Please refer to chapter "Operating the instrument cluster" on page 122.
- ▷ Please refer to chapter "Operating the touch display" on page 178.

Driving data display on the instrument cluster

Displaying driving data in the "Car & Info" display



1. Select the **Trip** menu.
2. Select a display from the list.

Resetting driving data




1. **Trip** ▶ **Reset**
2. Select a display from the list.

Driving data display in the PCM

Displaying driving data

1. **CAR**  ▶ **Trip** 
2. Scroll to the required display.

Personally configuring Trip

1. **CAR**  ▶ **Trip**  ▶ **Options**  ▶ **Customise trip**
2. Four fields can be filled with driving data via drag & drop. One item of driving data cannot be assigned to several fields.

Resetting driving data

- ▶ **CAR**  ▶ **Trip**  ▶  ▶ **Reset trip data**

Driving programmes

Depending on equipment, the vehicle offers driving programmes for driving with a sportier overall setup and a WET driving programme with an overall setup for driving on wet and slippery roads.

For information on vehicle setup in the driving programmes:

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Overview of vehicle setup in the selected driving programme" on page 101.



Selecting driving programme

Information

If no driving programme is activated, the vehicle is automatically in the NORMAL driving programme.

After the ignition is switched off, the selected driving programme automatically switches back to the NORMAL driving programme.

Selecting driving programme in PCM

1. Select **CAR**  ▶ **DRIVE** .
2. Select the desired driving programme in the PCM.

Selecting driving programme in the switch panel

- ✓ Vehicles without Sport Chrono package



Fig. 76: Buttons for driving programme (e.g. SPORT)

- ▶ Press the button for the desired driving programme.

The relevant button lights up red. The selected driving programme is displayed on the instrument cluster.

Selecting driving programme using the mode switch

- ✓ Vehicles with Sport Chrono package





Fig. 77: Driving programme at the steering wheel

- ▶ Turn the mode switch to the left or to the right to the desired driving programme.

The selected driving programme (WET, NORMAL, SPORT, SPORT PLUS or INDIVIDUAL) is displayed on the instrument cluster.

Porsche WET Mode

Porsche WET Mode can detect significant road wetness and set the driving systems to a more stable handling characteristic.

If sufficient moisture is detected, the system automatically regulates the chassis systems within the system limits. Depending on the outside temperature, the wetness symbol  or  appears in the instrument cluster along with a notice prompting the driver to activate the WET driving programme. If the driver activates the WET driving programme, the chassis systems are controlled more closely and, in addition, the drive, spoiler position and cooling air flap position are regulated within the system limits. The SPORT Response mode and Sport suspension setting are not available when the WET driving programme is activated. PSM is switched on and cannot be deactivated. The adaptive cruise control (ACC) distance that was set is changed to the medium setting ("half speedometer distance") if the set distance was previously lower.

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Displaying the distance from the vehicle in front" on page 33.

System limits

If the moisture sensor in the wheel arch is blocked due to snow, system functionality may be restricted. Automatic control and the warning messages on the instrument cluster are available up to a speed of 250 km/h (156 mph).

Detection of sufficient road surface wetness depends on the speed travelled and on the road surface.

Porsche WET Mode can neither detect nor prevent aquaplaning.

The system does not give any indication of rainy weather and does not turn on any wipers.

The messages relating to detected wetness can be deactivated.




- ▶ **ASSIST**  ▶ **Rain detection**

Configuring INDIVIDUAL driving mode

✓ Vehicles with Sport Chrono package

In the INDIVIDUAL driving programme, the settings for the chassis, vehicle level, sport exhaust system, rear spoiler and Auto Start Stop function can be combined on the basis of the NORMAL, SPORT or SPORT PLUS driving programmes. The saved combination can be retrieved by turning the mode switch to INDIVIDUAL or via the PCM.

Selecting and storing settings under INDIVIDUAL

1. Select **CAR**  ► **DRIVE** .
2. Select the desired settings in the PCM.
3. Select  in the header in order to save the settings.

Using the SPORT Response mode

✓ Vehicles with Sport Chrono package

Overview of vehicle setup in the selected driving programme

The table below shows only some of the available driving settings for the relevant driving programmes.

- Please refer to the relevant section for further information on the individual vehicle functions.

Driving programme	WET	NORMAL	SPORT	SPORT PLUS
Idle speed increase	Not active	Not active	Active	Active
Intermediate throttle application for downshifts	Active	Not active	Active	Active
Optimised engine sound in the passenger compartment	Not active	Not active	Active	Active
Backfire	Not active	Not active	Active	Not active



Fig. 78: SPORT Response display timer

In SPORT Response mode, the engine and transmission are set to maximum response with timer-control.

Activating SPORT Response mode



Fig. 79: SPORT Response button on the steering wheel

- Press the **SPORT Response** button on the mode switch again.

The timer in the Car & Info display of the instrument cluster indicates how long the function is still available. Subsequently, the previously selected driving programme is reactivated.

Deactivating SPORT Response mode

- ✓ SPORT Response mode active
 - Press the **SPORT Response** button on the mode switch again.
- The previously selected driving programme is reactivated.

Driving programme	WET	NORMAL	SPORT	SPORT PLUS
Launch Control	Cannot be activated	Cannot be activated	Cannot be activated	Activatable
Auto Start Stop	Active	Active	Not active	Not active
SPORT Response	Cannot be activated	Activatable	Activatable	Activatable
Sports exhaust system	Can be activated	Can be activated	Active	Active

Wet

The control systems are optimised for a wet and smooth surface.

Normal

During everyday driving, the control systems function in a balance between comfort and fuel economy.

Sport

Adjusts the control systems more toward emotionality and dynamism during everyday driving.

SPORT PLUS

Maximum performance for racetrack-like operation.

Switching the sports exhaust system on and off

The sports exhaust system can be switched to a sound-optimised mode.

Selecting sports exhaust system in the switch panel

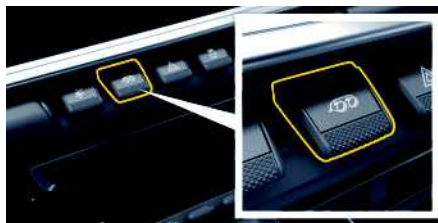




Fig. 80: Button for sports exhaust system

- ▶ Press the button for sports exhaust system. When the sports exhaust system is switched on, the button lights up red.

Switching the sports exhaust system on and off via the PCM

1. Select **CAR**  ► **DRIVE** .
2. Select Exhaust system.

Emergency Call System

Different emergency call systems may be used depending on model, country and equipment. Help can be requested via the emergency call system in an emergency or in dangerous situations.

Despite activated private mode, location information for the vehicle can be transmitted in the event of a breakdown or emergency call as well as theft.

Legal emergency call

- ✓ Legal emergency call system (for example EU eCall).
- ✓ Mobile phone network available.
- ✓ Emergency call system is ready for operation (approx. 20 seconds after switching on the ignition).

Information

The emergency call system does **not** require a mobile phone logged on in the vehicle as it features an independent mobile communications module.

The emergency call system is activated by default upon vehicle delivery.

Under unfavourable conditions, an emergency call to an emergency call centre cannot be ensured (e.g. no mobile phone network available). Due to technical or organisational restrictions that lie outside the area of influence of Porsche (e.g. vehicle outside of the country coverage of the legal emergency calls system or no public emergency call infrastructure available), it may be that **no** emergency call to the emergency call centre available can be established under certain circumstances. In countries outside the area of applicability of the legal emergency call system, an attempt is made in this case to place an emergency call to an alternative public emergency call centre. This public emergency call centre **cannot**

process the data transmitted by the emergency call system for determination of the necessary rescue measures (for example, the current position of the vehicle is **not** automatically communicated).

If the vehicle battery is disconnected or defective, an integral battery ensures that the emergency call system remains available for at least one hour for queries from the emergency call centre.

Information

When the cover flap is open, the SOS button can be pressed accidentally, thereby activating an emergency call unintentionally.

- ▶ The cover flap for the SOS button must be kept closed during driving.
- ▶ Only press the SOS button in an emergency.

Triggering an emergency call via SOS button



Fig. 81: SOS button and indicator light

- A SOS button
- B Indicator light

Information

An emergency call **cannot** be activated when the ignition is switched off.

1. Open the cover plate by pressing on it.
2. Press SOS button **A** for at least 1 second. If the SOS button is pressed again for at least 1 second within 6 seconds, the emergency call is cancelled.
Indicator light **B** flashes green while the call to the emergency call centre is being established.
3. If the circumstances allow, wait in the vehicle until the connection to the emergency call centre has been established.

Indicator light **B** flashes green when the call to the emergency call centre has been established. If queries from the emergency call centre remain unanswered, rescue measures can be initiated automatically.

Information

If the indicator light flashes, but the emergency call centre cannot be heard via the loudspeaker, the loudspeaker may be defective, for example. You can, however, still be heard by the emergency call centre.

Indicator light status display

Indicator light	Status
Off	Emergency call system is off
Lights up green	Emergency call system is ready for operation
Lights up or flashes red	Error – emergency call not or only restrictedly possible ¹

Flashes green

Active emergency call – emergency call is established and data transmission to emergency call centre

Lights up orange

Active automatic emergency call – emergency call is established and data transmission to emergency call centre

Automatic emergency call

Information

No automatic emergency call is possible when the ignition is switched off.

A connection to the emergency call centre is established automatically immediately after triggering of the airbags. The automatic emergency call cannot be prevented by pressing SOS button **A**. If queries from the emergency call centre remain unanswered, rescue measures can be initiated.

Data transmission

During an emergency call, person and vehicle-related data for determination of the necessary rescue measures is transmitted to the emergency call centre, provided that this is available.

Collection and transmission of the data to emergency service control centres is solely for the purpose of using the emergency call system within the specified emergency situations and in the context of

the applicable legal provisions, particular Art. 6 (1) (d) of the GDPR. The emergency call system is not traceable and there is no permanent tracking of the vehicle. Any data collected is deleted immediately after the data transmission.

The following data is transmitted:

- Vehicle identification number
- Vehicle type
- Vehicle drive type
- Vehicle GPS position data
- GPS position data of the route shortly before the emergency call is triggered
- Log file of automatic activation of the emergency call system
- Time of the triggered emergency call
- Manually or automatically activated emergency call
- Number of persons in the vehicle
- Direction of travel

Emergency call

- ✓ Mobile phone network available.
- ✓ Emergency call system is ready for operation (approx. 20 seconds after switching on the ignition).

Information

The emergency call system does **not** require a mobile phone logged on in the vehicle as it features an independent mobile communications module.

Under unfavourable conditions, an emergency call to an emergency call centre cannot be ensured (e.g. no mobile phone network available).

1. Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Due to technical or organisational restrictions that lie outside the area of influence of Porsche (e.g. vehicle outside of the emergency call country coverage), it may be that **no** emergency call to the designated emergency call centre can be established under certain circumstances. In this case, if legally permissible an emergency call to an alternative public emergency call centre is established. A public emergency call centre **may not** be able to process the data transmitted by the emergency call system for determination of the necessary rescue measures (for example, the current position of the vehicle is **not** automatically communicated).

If the vehicle battery is disconnected or defective, an integral battery ensures that the emergency call system remains available for at least one hour for queries from the emergency call centre.

Information

When the cover flap is open, the SOS button can be pressed accidentally, thereby activating an emergency call unintentionally.

- ▶ The cover flap for the SOS button must be kept closed during driving.
- ▶ Only press the SOS button in an emergency.

Triggering an emergency call via SOS button



Fig. 82: SOS button and indicator light

- A SOS button
- B Indicator light

Information

An emergency call **cannot** be activated when the ignition is switched off.

1. Open the cover plate by pressing on it.
2. Press SOS button **A** for at least 1 second. If the SOS button is pressed again for at least 1 second within 6 seconds, the emergency call is cancelled.

- Indicator light **B** flashes green while the call to the emergency call centre is being established.
3. If the circumstances allow, wait in the vehicle until the connection to the emergency call centre has been established.

Indicator light **B** flashes green when the call to the emergency call centre has been established. If queries from the emergency call centre remain unanswered, rescue measures are initiated automatically.

Information

If the indicator light flashes, but the emergency call centre cannot be heard via the loudspeaker, the loudspeaker may be defective, for example. You can, however, still be heard by the emergency call centre.

Indicator light status display

Indicator light	Status
Off	Emergency call system is off
Lights up green	Emergency call system is ready for operation
Lights up or flashes red	Error – emergency call not or only restrictedly possible ¹

1. Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

- A
- B
- C
- D
- E
- F
- G
- H
- I
- J
- K
- L
- M
- N
- O
- P
- Q
- R
- S
- T
- U
- V
- W
- X
- Y
- Z

A	Flashes green	Active emergency call
B		– emergency call is established and data transmission to emergency call centre
C		
D		
E	Lights up orange	Active automatic emergency call – emergency call is established and data transmission to emergency call centre
F		
G		
H		
I		

Automatic emergency call

Information

No automatic emergency call is possible when the ignition is switched off.

A connection to the emergency call centre is established automatically immediately after triggering of the airbags. The automatic emergency call cannot be prevented by pressing SOS button **A**.

If queries from the emergency call centre remain unanswered, rescue measures are initiated automatically.

Data transmission

When an emergency call is made, any available data is transmitted to the emergency call centre to determine the rescue measures required. This can include:

- Current vehicle location
- Position data of the route immediately before the emergency call is triggered
- Vehicle identification number
- Vehicle type

- Severity of the accident
- Orientation of vehicle during the accident
- Vehicle menu language

Breakdown call

Help can be requested via the breakdown call in the case of breakdowns or accidents.

- ✓ Mobile phone network available.
- ✓ Breakdown call system ready for operation (approx. 20 seconds after switching on the ignition).
- ✓ Private mode is deactivated.
 - ▷ Please refer to chapter "Porsche Connect" on page 182.

Information

The breakdown call system does **not** require a mobile phone registered in the vehicle as it has its own mobile phone module.

Due to technical or organisational restrictions outside of Porsche control (e.g. no roaming or no active data connection), it may not be possible to establish a breakdown call to Porsche Assistance.

Data transmission

During a breakdown call, data for determination of the required measures can be transmitted to Porsche Assistance, provided that this is available. This can include:

- Current vehicle location
- Vehicle identification number
- Vehicle type
- Fault codes and other data for localising the fault

Triggering a breakdown call

- ✓ **PHONE**  ► **KEYPAD**  is selected.

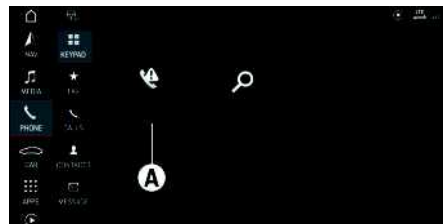



Fig. 83: Breakdown call button

1. Select breakdown call **A**.
To end the test emergency call, select  in the footer or the phone menu.
2. If conditions permit, wait in the vehicle until the connection to the call centre is established.

Engine Compartment Lid

Opening and closing engine compartment lid

Opening engine compartment lid

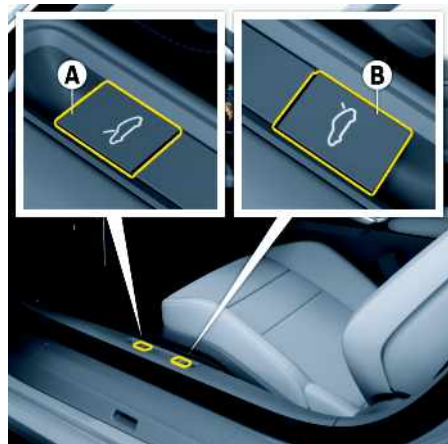


Fig. 84: Opening engine compartment lid

A Luggage compartment lid button

B Engine compartment lid button

- ▶ Pull button **B**.

Coupé: Engine compartment lid is unlocked and can be raised.

Cabriolet: Engine compartment lid (convertible-top compartment lid) opens automatically to service position.

Closing engine compartment lid

Coupé:

1. Lower the engine compartment lid and let it fall into the lock. Close the engine compartment lid

by pressing on the lock area with the palm of your hand.

2. Check that the engine compartment lid has engaged correctly in the lock.

If the engine compartment lid is not closed properly, a message appears on the instrument cluster when the vehicle is moving.

Cabriolet:

- ▶ Pull button **B**.

Engine compartment lid (convertible-top compartment lid) closes automatically.

Engine oil

Checking engine-oil level

Depending on the driving style and the operating conditions the oil consumption may be up to 0.8 litres/1000 km. The oil level should be checked regularly (e.g. every time vehicle is refuelled).

Responding to oil level warning

If the oil level is too low, a symbol appears on the instrument cluster indicating that the engine must be topped up with oil immediately.

Measuring and displaying engine oil level

NOTICE

Risk of engine damage.

If the oil level is below the minimum mark on the oil level indicator, the engine will not be sufficiently lubricated.

- ▶ Check the oil level regularly.
- ▶ Do not allow the oil level to fall below the minimum mark.

Information

Under certain circumstances, the oil level cannot be measured. Causes of this include:

- Engine is cold
- Vehicle parked following full-throttle operation at high engine speeds
- Engine oil temperature too high

- ✓ Vehicle is horizontal.
- ✓ Engine at operating temperature and stopped for at least one minute.

▶ Vehicle ▶ Oil level

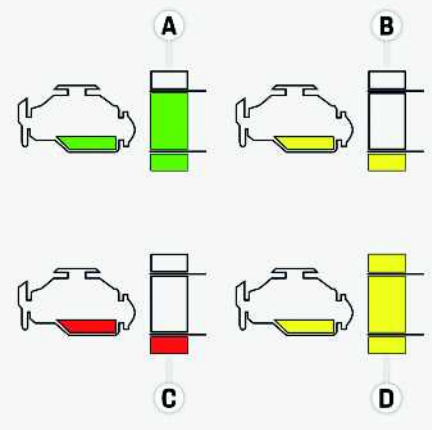


Fig. 85: Oil-level indicator

- A** Oil level sufficient - maximum reached
- B** Oil level minimum reached
- C** Oil level below minimum
- D** Oil level above maximum

If the display is green **A**, the oil level has reached the maximum mark and is sufficient.

If the bottom segment of the display is yellow **B**, the oil level has reached the minimum mark.

- ▶ Add the quantity of engine oil shown on the instrument cluster at the next opportunity. **Never** add more than the indicated quantity of engine oil. The difference between the minimum and maximum mark is approx. 1.3 litres.

If the bottom segment is red **C**, the oil level has dropped below the minimum mark.

1. Stop in a suitable place.
2. Add the quantity of engine oil shown on the instrument cluster immediately.

Never add more than the indicated quantity of engine oil. The difference between the minimum and maximum mark is approx. 1.3 litres.

If the display is yellow up to the top edge **D**, the maximum permitted engine filling capacity has been exceeded. This can cause damage to the vehicle. Have the oil level corrected at the next opportunity.

- ▶ Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Selecting and topping up engine oil

WARNING

Engine compartment blowers and other moving parts in the area of the engine

Hands, fingers, items of clothing, necklaces or long hair can be drawn in by moving parts, e.g. the engine-compartment blowers or drive belt, when working in the engine compartment. The engine-compartment blowers are installed under the engine cover. After the engine is stopped, the engine-compartment temperature continues to be monitored. The engine-compartment blowers may continue to run or start to run.

- ▶ Carry out work in this area only with the engine stopped while exercising extreme caution and take great care to ensure that parts of the body, articles of clothing or jewellery cannot be caught in the radiator fan, engine-compartment blower, drive belt or other moving parts.

WARNING

Burning engine oil

Engine oil can ignite if it comes into contact with hot engine parts. Engine oil stored in non-ventilated areas or thrown-away cloths with engine oil residues can self-combust and result in a fire.

- ▶ Wipe up spilled engine oil with a cloth.
- ▶ Cloths soaked with engine oil must be stored in a well-ventilated area until disposal.
- ▶ Allow the engine to cool down before topping up engine oil.

WARNING

Hot engine parts

The engine, adjacent components and the exhaust system become very hot when the engine is running.

- ▶ Touching poses an acute risk of burns.
- ▶ Take care when working near hot vehicle parts, particularly the engine and the exhaust system.
- ▶ Before working in the engine compartment, always switch the engine off and let it cool sufficiently.
- ▶ Exercise extreme caution when working in the engine compartment.
- ▶ Top up engine oil only with the engine stopped and ignition switched off.

NOTICE

Not enough or too much engine oil will damage the engine. Too much engine oil can result in blue smoke formation and cause damage to the emission control

1. For all temperature ranges.
 2. For the temperature range above -25 °C.

system in the long term.

- ▶ Do not allow the oil level to fall below the minimum mark.
- ▶ Only add engine oil up to the maximum mark. If the oil reservoir is overfilled, correct this at the earliest opportunity. Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Always observe the following points:

- Only use engine oils approved by Porsche. Observe the service intervals.
- Oils approved by Porsche can be mixed.
- Do not use oil additives.
- If an engine oil leak is suspected, have the engine checked immediately.

Selecting engine oil

Porsche recommends **Mobil 1**.

If there is a sticker in the engine compartment indicating an approved engine oil designation, this information has priority over the information in this Manual.

If in doubt and in order to find out the current approval status, please contact a Porsche partner.

Vehicle	Approval	SAE viscosity class
All	Porsche C40, alternatively: VW 511 00	SAE 0W-40 ¹ SAE 5W-40 ²

Topping up engine oil



Fig. 86: Oil filler opening

1. Read the engine-oil level in the instrument cluster.
2. Open the engine compartment lid.
3. Unscrew cap of the oil filler opening.
4. Add the quantity of engine oil shown on the instrument cluster.
 Never add more than the indicated quantity of engine oil. The difference between the minimum and maximum mark is approx. 1.3 litres.
5. Carefully close cap on the oil filler opening.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Flat Tyre

Depending on the model and vehicle equipment, the vehicle comes with either a tyre sealant kit or a collapsible spare wheel.

Responding to Tyre Pressure Monitoring warning messages

If the Tyre Pressure Monitoring system has detected a severe pressure loss, a message appears on the instrument cluster. Pressure loss can be an indication of damage to the tyres.

- ▶ Stop in a suitable place and check the indicated tyre for damage.
- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Tyres and Wheels" on page 238.

Parking the vehicle safely

1. Stop the vehicle as far away from the driving lane as possible. The vehicle must be parked on a firm and flat surface that is skid-proof.
2. Switch hazard warning lights on.
3. Activate the electric parking brake.
4. Activate the transmission parking lock using the P button.
5. Straighten the front wheels.
6. Get all passengers to leave the vehicle. Pay attention to the traffic as they do so.
7. Set up the warning triangle at a suitable distance.
8. Secure the vehicle to prevent it from rolling away, e.g. by means of wedges under the wheels on the diagonally opposite side.
 - ▶ Please refer to chapter "Jack and Lifting Platform" on page 128.

Sealing defective tyres

- ✓ Vehicle with tyre sealant.

WARNING

Temporarily repaired tyres

Damaged tyres with tyre sealing compound can burst or lose pressure if the vehicle is driven at an inappropriate speed or under continuous load.

- ▶ Sealing the tyre with tyre sealing compound is only an emergency solution to enable you to drive to the nearest specialist workshop.
- ▶ Use tyre sealing compound only for cuts or punctures no larger than 4 mm.
- ▶ Never use tyre sealing compound if the rim is damaged.
- ▶ Have the tyre replaced by a specialist workshop as soon as possible. Inform the specialist workshop that the tyre contains tyre sealing compound.
- ▶ Tyres **must not** be repaired.
- ▶ Avoid hard acceleration and high cornering speeds.
- ▶ Do not drive faster than the maximum permitted speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).
- ▶ Read and follow the safety and operating instructions, which can be found in the separate operating instructions for the tyre sealing compound and compressor.

In the event of a flat tyre, tyre damage can be temporarily sealed using the tyre sealant provided in the vehicle.

The **tyre sealant kit** is located in the luggage compartment.

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Luggage compartment" on page 146.

Filling in tyre sealant

WARNING

Flammable and harmful sealant

The sealant is highly flammable and harmful to health.

- ▶ Fire, naked flames and smoking are prohibited when handling tyre sealant.
- ▶ Avoid contact with skin, eyes and clothing.
- ▶ Keep tyre sealant away from children.
- ▶ Do not inhale vapours.

CAUTION

In the event of contact with tyre sealing compound:

Irritation or allergic reactions after contact with tyre sealant.

- ▶ Avoid contact with skin, eyes and clothing.
- ▶ If tyre sealing compound gets on your skin or into your eyes, thoroughly rinse the affected part of your body immediately with plenty of water.
- ▶ Change soiled clothing immediately.
- ▶ Consult a doctor immediately in the event of an allergic reaction.
- ▶ If tyre sealant is swallowed, thoroughly rinse out the mouth without delay and drink plenty of water. Do not induce vomiting. Consult a doctor immediately.

WARNING

Failure to detect pressure loss in the tyre

A tyre pressure sensor that is soiled with tyre sealant cannot determine the tyre pressure correctly.

- ▶ When the defective tyre is changed, have the tyre pressure sensor replaced as well.

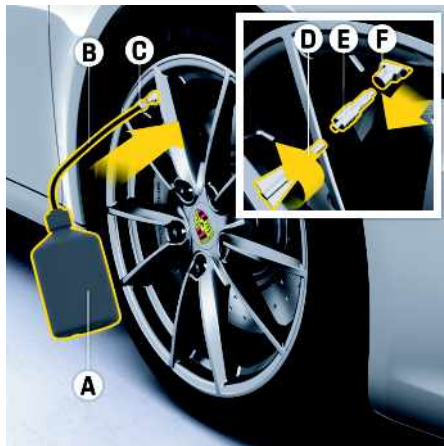


Fig. 87: Filling in tyre sealant

- A Filler bottle
- B Filler hose
- C Filler hose plug
- D Valve turner
- E Valve insert
- F Tyre valve

Preparing to fill

1. Leave the object that caused the puncture in the tyre.
2. Remove tyre sealant and the enclosed sticker from the luggage compartment. The tyre sealant can be found in the right-hand box in the luggage compartment. The compressor is located under the cover in the luggage compartment.
 - ▷ Please refer to chapter "Luggage compartment" on page 146.
3. Affix the sticker in the driver's field of vision.

Filling in tyre sealant

- ▷ Follow the separate operating instructions for using the tyre sealant.

1. Shake filler bottle **A**.
2. Screw filler hose **B** onto the filler bottle. The filler bottle is open.
3. Unscrew valve cap from the tyre valve **F**.
4. Remove valve insert **E** from the tyre valve with valve turner **D**.
If a replacement valve insert is not available, keep the valve insert in a clean, dry place.
5. Remove plug **C** from the filler hose **B**.
6. Push the filler hose onto the tyre valve.
7. Hold the filler bottle higher than the level of the tyre valve and squeeze it forcefully until the bottle is completely emptied into the tyre.
8. Pull the filler hose off the tyre valve.
9. If available, screw the replacement valve insert or alternatively valve insert **E** with valve turner **D** firmly into the tyre valve.

Inflating the tyres

- ▷ Read and follow the operating instructions on the compressor.
 - ▷ Please refer to chapter "Inflating tyres" on page 240.
1. Connect the compressor to a plug socket in the vehicle and inflate the tyre to at least 2.5 bar (36 psi). If this tyre pressure cannot be reached, the tyre is too severely damaged. You must not continue driving with this tyre.
 2. Screw valve cap onto the tyre valve **F**.

Checking pressure

- ▷ Check the tyre pressure after driving for approx. 10 minutes. If the tyre pressure is less than 1.5 bar (22 psi), do not continue driving.
- ▷ Please refer to chapter "Technical Data" on page 280.

Changing tyres

- ▷ Please refer to chapter "Tyres and Wheels" on page 238.

Updating the Tyre Pressure Monitoring tyre settings after changing a wheel

- ▷ Please refer to chapter "Configuring Tyre Pressure Monitoring (TPM) in the PCM" on page 239.

Using the collapsible spare wheel

- ✓ Vehicles with collapsible spare wheel.

WARNING

Changed vehicle handling

The use of a collapsible spare wheel can impair vehicle handling.

- ▶ The collapsible spare wheel must be used only over short distances in cases of emergency. For safety reasons, replace the tyres **before** the wear indicators appear (webs in the tyre grooves, 1.6 mm high).
- ▶ Never deactivate the Porsche Stability Management (PSM) system.
- ▶ Avoid hard acceleration and high cornering speeds.
The permitted maximum speed is **80 km/h** (50 mph) and must not be exceeded due to the changed vehicle characteristics and because of wear.
- ▶ Do not use a collapsible spare wheel from a different vehicle type.
- ▶ Do not fit the collapsible spare wheel from your vehicle on a different vehicle.
- ▶ Only fit one collapsible spare wheel on the vehicle at any time.

The collapsible spare wheel is located in a bag, on a foam rubber insert fastened onto the rear seat.

1. Unfasten retaining strap and guide through the loops.
2. Unfasten Velcro loops and guide seat belt downwards.
3. Remove the bag with the collapsible spare wheel.
4. Unfasten the seat belt and remove the foam rubber insert from the rear seat.
5. Pull the retaining strap upwards on left and right and remove.
6. Fit the collapsible spare wheel to the vehicle before inflating it. Leave the vehicle jacked up.
 - ▷ Please refer to chapter "Tyres and Wheels" on page 238.
7. Inflate the tyre.
 - ▷ Please refer to chapter "Tyres and Wheels" on page 238.

After using the collapsible spare wheel

- ▶ Deflate the collapsible spare wheel. Unscrew the valve cap on the collapsible spare wheel for this purpose.

The tyre will revert to its original shape only after several hours. Only then can it be stowed in the bag provided or in the foam rubber insert for transporting the spare wheel.

1. Guide the retaining strap behind the rear seat backrest from the top left and right and pull downwards.
2. Position the foam rubber insert on the rear seat so that recess for the collapsible spare wheel points in the direction of travel.
3. Guide the seat belt around the foam rubber insert, fasten and guide downwards to the seat cushion.
4. Place the bag with the collapsible spare wheel into the recess in the foam rubber insert and

- align so that both loops are pointing in the direction of travel and form a horizontal line.
5. Guide the seat belt upwards through the Velcro loops.
 6. Guide the retaining strap through the loops and tie securely.

If the collapsible spare wheel is defective:

- ▶ Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Front axle lift system

The front axle lift system enables the body to be raised electro-hydraulically at the front by about 40 mm (front edge of front spoiler). This prevents damage to the body, which can occur when driving in underground car parks or over speed bumps, for example.

Operational readiness and behaviour

- The front axle lift system is operational when the engine is running and the vehicle is stationary or up to a maximum speed of approx. 35km/h (22 mph) or approx. 60 km/h (37 mph) in certain countries.
- The vehicle is automatically lowered to the basic level again when a minimum speed of approx. 35 km/h (22 mph) is exceeded (approx. 60 km/h (37 mph) in certain countries).
- When raised, the damping properties of the front axle change and noise may be heard in the area of the front axle coil springs during steering movements.
- At temperatures below approx. - 10 °C, it may take longer to fully raise the front end of the vehicle. The noise level may increase.

Lift system faults

Front axle lift system faults are displayed on the instrument cluster.

- Please refer to chapter "Warning and Information Messages" on page 255.

Raising the front end

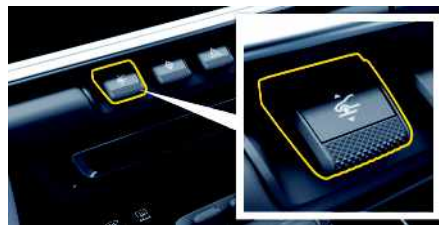



Fig. 88: Button for lift system

- ✓ Engine is running.
- ▶ Press button .
 - The vehicle is raised at the front axle within approx. 5 seconds.
 - The button flashes red and a message appears on the instrument cluster.

When the front end is fully raised:

- The button lights up red.
- A message appears briefly indicating that the front end is raised.


NOTICE

Risk of damage through uncontrolled lowering of the front end when the engine is stopped.

In this particular system, the holding position cannot be maintained at the upper position over an extended period.

- ▶ Always park the vehicle in the lowered position.

Lowering the front end

- ✓ Doors are closed.
- ✓ Engine is running.
- ▶ Press button .

The vehicle is lowered to the basic level. The button flashes red and a message appears on the instrument cluster.

When the front end is fully lowered:

- The red lighting of the button goes out.
- A message appears briefly indicating that the front end is lowered.

Information

If a door is opened during the lowering process, the front end is raised again automatically.

NOTICE

Risk of damage through bottoming of vehicle.

- ▶ Do not lower the vehicle when it is positioned above an obstacle.

Fuses

WARNING

Short-circuit

Working on the vehicle's electrical system can cause a short-circuit. The short circuit can cause a fire.

- ▶ Always detach the negative terminal on the battery when working on the electrical system.

WARNING

Improper intervention and incorrect accessories

Improper intervention in the fuse box and the use of the incorrect accessories can result in damage and malfunctions in electrical and electronic systems.

- ▶ Do not attempt to replace any electrical components except the fuses (e.g. relays) listed here.
- ▶ Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.
- ▶ Only use accessories that have been approved by Porsche. For information on approved accessories: Contact your Porsche partner.

Checking and changing fuses

In order to prevent damage to the electrical system due to short circuits and overloads, the individual circuits are protected by fuses.

Fuse boxes are located in the footwell on the driver's and passenger's side.

Depending on the equipment, further fuse boxes are located at various locations in the vehicle, which are only accessible to a specialist workshop.

Fuse ratings

Colour		Amperage rating
	Light brown	5 A
	Brown	7.5 A
	Red	10 A
	Blue	15 A
	Yellow	20 A
	White / clear	25 A
	Green	30 A
	Blue-green	35 A
	Orange	40 A

Checking and changing fuses

The numbering of the fuse slots is printed or embossed on the inside of the cover of or on the fuse carrier.

Unassigned fuse slots are not listed in the following overviews.

1. Switch off the load with the defective fuse if possible.
2. Open the relevant fuse box cover.
3. If necessary, carefully remove the purple plastic strip over the fuses.
4. Remove the fuse from its slot using the yellow

plastic gripper in order to check it. A blown fuse can be identified by the melted metal strip.

5. Insert the new fuse. Only use fuses with the same rating as the fuse you are replacing.
6. Fit the purple plastic strip back into place.

If the same fuse blows repeatedly, the cause of the fault must be corrected immediately.

- ▶ Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Opening the fuse box in the driver's footwell



Fig. 89: Opening the fuse box in the driver's footwell

Row A

No.	Load
1	Ignition switch, light buttons, switch strip in the centre console
3	Steering control unit
4	Steering wheel heating control unit
5	Alarm system
9	Parking brake, PSM control unit
10	ParkAssist control unit
11	ParkAssist control unit
12	PVTS control unit
13	Diagnostic socket
14	BCM control unit
15	Socket supply
16	Seat adjustment, front left

Row B

No.	Load
2	BCM control unit
3	Horn
4	Seat belt, front left
5	Seat heating

No.	Load
7	Air-conditioning system
8	Interior lighting
9	Subwoofer
10	Electric steering column adjustment control unit
11	Right and left door control unit
12	Left headlight electronics

Row C

No.	Load
2	Radiator fan, left
3	Brake booster control unit
4	Seat ventilation, front left
8	BCM control unit
12	PVTS control unit
14	Diagnostic socket

Opening the fuse box in the passenger's footwell

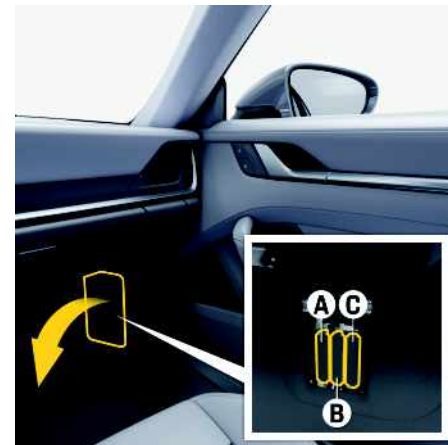


Fig. 90: Fuse box on the passenger's side

Row A

No.	Load
5	Media interfaces
9	Tyre pressure monitoring control unit
11	Airbag control unit
13	Garage door opener
14	BCM control unit
15	BCM control unit
16	Seat adjustment, front right

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z**Row B**

No.	Load
4	Seat belt, front right
6	All-wheel drive control unit
7	Fresh air fan
8	Luggage compartment
9	PCM
10	PCM
11	Driver/passenger door control unit
12	Right headlight electronics

Row C

No.	Load
1	Air quality sensor
2	Radiator fan, right
4	Seat ventilation, front right
5	Adaptive cruise control
6	All-wheel drive control unit
8	Ioniser
9	Brake booster control unit

Garage door opener (HomeLink®)

WARNING

Pinching, crushing or knocking against the operated equipment

Risk of accidents when using or programming the garage door opener if persons or animals are within the range of movement of the equipment that is being operated.

- ▶ When using or programming the HomeLink® system, ensure that no persons, animals or objects are within the range of movement of the equipment that is being operated.
- ▶ Observe the safety notes for the original remote control.

With the HomeLink® system, up to eight items of remote-controlled equipment (e.g. garage door/gate to your property, security systems, house lights) can be operated from the vehicle via profiles in the PCM.

- ▶ Observe the instructions for the original remote control.

Information

For information on the compatibility of your vehicle's HomeLink® system with the original hand transmitter:

- ▶ Contact your Porsche partner.
- ▶ Visit www.homelink.com or call the free HomeLink® hotline (0)0800 046 635 465 or (0) 08000 HOMELINK.

Information

- ▶ Before selling your vehicle, remember to delete the garage door opener signals.

Using the garage door opener

Manually executing the taught HomeLink® profile

- ✓ Ignition switched on.
- ✓ Vehicle is aligned towards the receiver and within range of the receiver (signal is transmitted in direction of travel).

▶ CAR  ▶ CONTROL  ▶ HomeLink®

If the existing HomeLink® profiles are assigned to GPS coordinates, the profiles are filtered on the basis of the current vehicle position.

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Managing taught profiles" on page 117.

HomeLink® Automatically executing profiles

- ✓ Ignition switched on.
 - ✓ Vehicle is aligned towards the receiver and within range of the receiver (signal is transmitted in direction of travel).
 - ✓ GPS coordinates assigned to HomeLink® profile.
- Shortly before reaching a HomeLink® system with assigned GPS coordinates, the relevant profile is displayed automatically and proposed for execution.

Programming garage door opener

- ✓ Ignition is switched on.
- ✓ Engine is not running.
- ✓ Vehicle is aligned towards the receiver and within range of the receiver (signal is transmitted in direction of travel).

Programming a new garage door opener

▶ CAR  ▶ CONTROL  ▶ Vehicle ▶ Garage door opener ▶ Teach new HomeLink® profile

Synchronising systems with changeable code

For systems with a changeable code, synchronisation of the HomeLink® system is required. This starts automatically after teach-in. A second person makes programming easier.

To perform synchronisation manually:

▶ CAR  ▶ CONTROL  ▶ Vehicle ▶ Garage door opener ▶ Synchronise HomeLink® profile

Information



If you have not been able to successfully assign signals to the buttons even though you have carefully followed the instructions in this section and the operating instructions for the original remote control:

- ▶ Contact your Porsche partner.
- ▶ Make sure that the battery in the remote control for the garage door opener is new. If the battery voltage is inadequate, faults may occur in signal transmission. The system in the vehicle then learns an incorrect code, which cannot be reliably recognised.
- ▶ Check the compatibility of the vehicle's HomeLink® system with the original hand transmitter.

Managing taught profiles

Taught profiles can be named, edited or deleted. It is also possible to assign GPS coordinates (e.g. garage location) to each profile.

- A
- B
- C
- D
- E
- F
- G**
- H
- I
- J
- K
- L
- M
- N
- O
- P
- Q
- R
- S
- T
- U
- V
- W
- X
- Y
- Z

▶ CAR  ▶ CONTROL  ▶ Vehicle ▶ Garage Door Opener ▶ Taught HomeLink® profiles

HOLD function

WARNING

Loss of control over the vehicle

Despite the HOLD function, responsibility for stopping and starting on gradients lies with the driver. When stopping and starting on slippery surfaces (e.g., icy or loose substrate) the HOLD function cannot be guaranteed to provide assistance. In this case, the vehicle can slip.

- ▶ Always adjust your driving style to the road surface and the vehicle load; use the footbrake if necessary.
- If the HOLD function is not working, the driver cannot be assisted when driving off on hills:
- ▶ Hold the vehicle with the footbrake.

The HOLD function, assists the driver when stopping and driving off on upward slopes.

The vehicle is automatically prevented from rolling back away from the desired direction of travel.

When the HOLD function is active, the indicator light **HOLD** on the instrument panel comes on.

Driving off with Drive-Off Assistant

- ✓ Vehicles with manual transmission.
- ✓ Engine is running.
- 1. Hold the vehicle securely on the slope with the footbrake.
- 2. Press the clutch pedal fully.
- 3. Engage a gear corresponding to the direction of travel up the slope (1st gear or reverse gear).
- 4. Release the footbrake while keeping the clutch pedal pressed.

The vehicle is held on the slope to facilitate driving off and prevent it from rolling back.
- 5. Drive off in the usual manner.

Information

If the electric parking brake is used to hold the vehicle on the gradient, you can drive off in the usual way.

The electric parking brake detects the start request and is automatically released.

Information

The Drive-Off Assistant will not function in the following cases:

- Clutch not pressed
- Vehicle not stationary
- Engine not running
- Gradients of less than 5 %
- Pressure on brake pedal too low

Driving off with Standstill Management

- ✓ Vehicles with PDK.

The vehicle is stopped and prevented from rolling back away from the desired direction of travel even without pressing the brake.

The HOLD function is only available in operating mode **D** or **R**.

When Adaptive Cruise Control is operating normally, the HOLD function actively holds the vehicle at a standstill following automatic braking.

If the driver seat belt is unfastened and the driver door is opened while the HOLD function is active, the electric parking brake is activated automatically.

WARNING

Slight rolling back on uphill slopes.

If the vehicle comes to a standstill on steep gradients without the driver applying the footbrake, the vehicle can roll back until the HOLD function stops it. In this situation it is possible to reduce the roll-back by applying the footbrake.

- ▶ Assist holding of the vehicle by increasing the braking force with the footbrake.

Information

The HOLD function can be activated, irrespective of the gradient, by quickly flooring the pressed brake pedal while the vehicle is stationary. This prevents the vehicle from moving without having to keep the brake pedal pressed. A gear change affecting the selector-lever position does not deactivate the HOLD function in this case.

Information

When the HOLD function is active, the driver may feel a difference in the brake pedal and hydraulic noises may be heard.

This behaviour is normal for the system. There is no fault.

Instrument Cluster

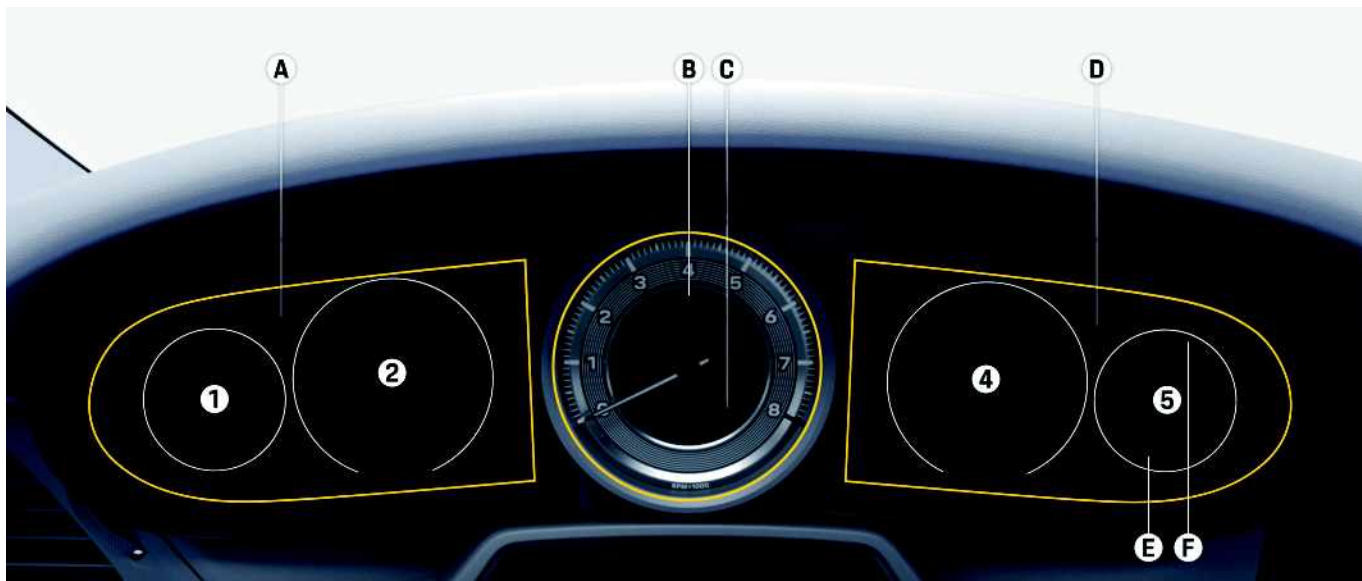


Fig. 91: Instrument cluster

A – Speed & Assist display

Information on the time, outside temperature, speed and assistance systems is shown in tubes **1** and **2**.

For information on the Speed & Assist display settings:

- ▷ Please refer to chapter "Vehicle Settings" on page 246.

B – Tachometer

The start of the red zone on the tachometer scale is a visual warning of the maximum permissible engine speed.

C – Digital speedometer

Information on the speed, selector lever position and engaged gear is displayed in the digital speedometer.

D – Car & Info display

Information on the driving programme, vehicle status and driver assistance is shown in tubes **4** and **5**.

For information on the Car & Info display settings:

- ▷ Please refer to chapter "Vehicle Settings" on page 246.

E – Fuel gauge

NOTICE

A shortage of fuel may damage the emission control system.

- ▶ Never drive the tank dry.
- ▶ If the fuel range warning has appeared, do not take bends at high speed.

If the vehicle's inclination changes (e.g. driving uphill or downhill), minor deviations in the display may occur.

Fuel reserve warning

If the fuel level falls below a model-dependent remaining range, a fuel range warning message is displayed.

- ▶ Refuel at the next opportunity.
 - ▷ Please refer to chapter "Refuelling" on page 191.

Identification for location of filler flap



The arrow points towards the side of the vehicle on which the filler flap is located.

F – Coolant temperature gauge

NOTICE

Excessively high coolant temperature can cause engine damage.

If the coolant temperature is too high, the coolant temperature gauge needle moves to the maximum mark. A warning appears on the instrument cluster.

The warning light  comes on or flashes.

- ▶ If the gauge needle is in the red area, stop immediately in a suitable place and switch off the engine. Do not continue driving.

Bar in left area – engine cold

- ▶ Avoid high engine speeds and heavy engine loading.

Bar in centre area – normal operating temperature

- ▶ The bar may move up to the red area when the engine is heavily loaded and outside temperature is high.

Bar in red area – operating temperature is too high

- ▶ If the coolant level is low, warning messages may appear if the vehicle tilts at an extreme angle (e.g. steep slopes) or generates high lateral acceleration while travelling around long bends (e.g. driving in circles). If the warning messages do not disappear once the vehicle has assumed "normal" operating state, check the coolant level.
 - ▷ Please refer to chapter "Coolant" on page 90.

F – Boost pressure display

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the boost pressure is shown in the display.

Warning and indicator lights

NOTICE



















Faults are indicated by the warning lights. The corresponding warning light only goes out when the cause of the fault has been rectified.













Consult a qualified specialist workshop in the following cases:

- The warning light does **not** come on briefly when the ignition is switched on.

- The warning light comes on or flashes when the engine is running or while driving.

Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

	High beam indicator light
	Dynamic high beam indicator light
	Dipped beam indicator light
	Rear fog light indicator light
	Porsche Dynamic Light System Plus (PDLS Plus) warning light
	Lights warning light
	Coolant temperature warning light
	Engine control system warning light
	Engine control system warning light
	Distance warning warning light
	Tyre pressure warning light
	During the teach-in process for newly fitted wheels or tyre pressure sensors, in the event of pressure loss in a tyre, a fault or a temporary malfunction of the Tyre Pressure Monitoring (TPM) system, the warning light may flash or light up.
	All-wheel warning light
	Assistance systems warning light
	Electric parking brake warning light
	Porsche Active Suspension Management (PASM) warning light
	Anti-lock brake system (ABS) warning light
	Power steering warning light

A		Central warning light
B		Direction indicator, left
C		Direction indicator, right
D		Airbag warning light
E		Seat belt warning light
F		Brake system warning light
G		Brake pad warning light
H		Porsche Stability Management (PSM) warning light
I		Porsche Stability Management (PSM) OFF warning light
J		Night View Assist indicator light
K		HOLD function indicator light
L		Emission control warning light (Check Engine)
M		In the event of malfunctions (e.g. engine misfiring) that could increase pollutant emissions or cause consequential damage the warning light may flash or light up.

If the emission control (Check Engine) warning light flashes or lights up

- ▶ Reduce engine speed and load immediately.
- ▶ If necessary, stop in a suitable safe place. Make sure that combustible materials such as dry grass or leaves cannot come into contact with the hot exhaust system.
- ▶ Initiate measures to resolve the emission control fault.

Operating the instrument cluster

WARNING

Setting and operating while driving

Setting and operating the multi-function steering wheel, infotainment system, etc. while driving may distract you from the traffic situation. You may lose control of the vehicle.

- ▶ Only operate these components while driving if the traffic situation allows you to do so safely.
- ▶ In case of doubt, safely pull out of traffic and only carry out extensive operations and settings while the vehicle is stationary.

The instrument cluster is only active when the ignition is on. For safety reasons, some functions are only available when the vehicle is stationary.

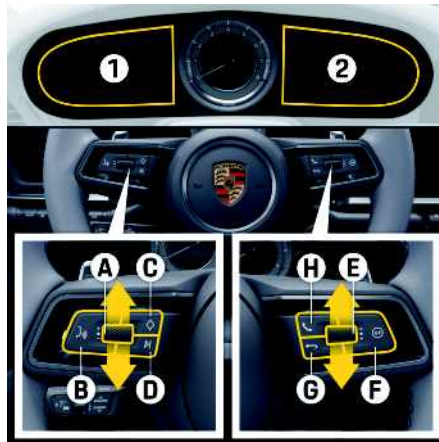


Fig. 92: Operating instrument cluster with multi-function steering wheel

A - Adjust the volume and mute the audio source

- ▶ Adjust volume: Turn rotary knob **A** upwards or downwards.
- ▶ Mute: Press rotary knob **A**.

B - Call up voice control

- ▶ Press button **B**.

C - Call up the stored function

Assign quick access buttons

- ▶ Press button **C**. The button on the steering wheel and in the switch panel can be individually assigned.
 - ▶ Please refer to chapter "Vehicle Settings" on page 246.

D - Play next/previous station/track

- ▶ Press button **D**.

E - Scroll and select menus and functions in the Speed & Assist 1 and Car & Info 2 displays

- ▶ Scrolling: Turn rotary knob **E** upwards or downwards.
- ▶ Select/Enter: Press rotary knob **E**.

F - Switch between the Speed & Assist 1 and Car & Info 2 displays

- ▶ Press button **F**.

G - Go back one or more selection levels in the Car & Info 2 display

- ▶ Press button **G**.

H - Accept a telephone call

- ▶ Press button **H**.

Selecting options and activating functions

A preceding symbol indicates whether an option is selected or a function is activated.

Selecting one of several options



Option is selected.



Option is not selected.

Activating and deactivating function





Function is activated.



Function is not activated.

Adjusting view on the instrument cluster

Four fields can be filled with a variety of vehicle information via drag & drop. One item of vehicle information cannot be assigned to several fields.

▶ **CAR**  ▶ **CONTROL**  ▶ **Displays** ▶ **Display instrument cluster** ▶ **Contents** ▶ **Customised view**

The user-defined view can then be selected in the instrument cluster.

▶ **Vehicle** ▶ **View** ▶ **User-defined**

Instrument cluster display content

Certain displays are only available when the vehicle is stationary.

Not all functions are explained in detail in the Driver's Manual. The examples clearly demonstrate the functional principle and clarify the menu structure.



Fig. 93: Instrument cluster display content

Tube	Display	What can I do?/What is displayed?	Where?
1	▶ Time, outside temperature, date	Display digital or analogue clock, outside temperature and date. The choice of display can be adjusted via the PCM.	▶ p. 246
1	▶ Compass	Display the compass.	
2	▶ Speedometer	Display the speedometer.	
2	▶ Mileage and trip mileage	Display the odometer and trip counter. The trip counter reverts to "0" after exceeding 9,999 kilometres or 6,213 miles. Reset the trip meter ▶ Press and hold the right rotary knob E (Fig. 92) on the multi-function steering wheel. The trip counter flashes. It reverts to "0" after the third flash.	
2	▶ Traffic signs	Display up to 3 current traffic signs.	▶ p. 231
2	▶ Assistance screen	Adjust and display Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC).	▶ p. 29

Tube	Display	What can I do?/What is displayed?	Where?
		Display Lane Change Assist.	▷ p. 132
		Display Lane Keep Assist.	▷ p. 137
		Display cruise control.	▷ p. 92
2	▶ Speed limit	Set and display a personal speed limit with speed warning.	▷ p. 126
2	▶ Navigation	Display navigation information (turning-off messages, etc.).	▷ p. 159
4	▶ Telephone	Use connected phone.	▷ p. 222
4	▶ Vehicle	Display vehicle information (information, messages, service intervals and fill levels).	▷ p. 126
4	▶ Trip	Display and reset driving data (average fuel consumption, range, driving time, etc.).	▷ p. 99
4/5	▶ Map	Show and adapt the map display.	▷ p. 159
4	▶ Sport Chrono	Measure times with the stopwatch.	▷ p. 213
4	▶ G-Force	Display the current and maximum longitudinal and lateral acceleration forces in the form of a circular diagram.	
4	▶ All-wheel	Display the current torque distribution between the front and rear axle in the form of bar diagrams.	
4	▶ Tyre pressure	Display Tyre Pressure Monitoring.	▷ p. 238

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

	Tube	Display	What can I do?/What is displayed?	Where?
A				
B				
C	4	▶ Night View Assist	Display Night View Assist with thermal image detection.	▷ p. 164
D				
E	4	▶ Performance	Display power and torque.	
F				
G	4	▶ Gear shift assist	Display gear shift assist for performance-oriented driving.	▷ p. 237
H				
I	4	▶ Media	Display current media (e.g. radio).	▷ p. 152
J				
K	4	▶ Driving programme	Display selected driving programme.	▷ p. 100
L				
M	5	▶ Fuel gauge and range	Display fuel gauge and range.	
N				
O	5	▶ Coolant temperature gauge	Display coolant temperature gauge.	
P				
Q	5	▶ Kilometres to destination	Display kilometres to destination (during active route guidance).	

Setting personal speed limit with speed warning

If a personal speed limit with speed warning is set and activated, a warning message appears and a warning signal sounds if the limit is exceeded.

The function can be used to remind the driver to keep to the maximum speed permitted for the tyre type fitted on the vehicle, for example.

1. Speed limit ▶ Lim 1: or Lim 2:

2. Select the desired limit:

- **Reset:** Reset the speed limit.
- **Current:** Set the current speed of the vehicle.
- **Manual:** Set the desired speed limit.

- **Active:** Activate or deactivate the speed limit.



Speed limit activated.



Speed limit deactivated.

The warning message in the lower area indicates the number of important pending warning messages.

Displaying vehicle information

Displaying various vehicle information

▶ Vehicle ▶ Vehicle

Select the desired vehicle information view.

Displaying messages

▶ Vehicle ▶ Notifications

Pending warnings or vehicles messages are displayed.

Displaying service intervals

▶ Vehicle ▶ Maintenance

Select the desired service interval.

The display indicates when the next service is due.

Interior lighting

Adjusting brightness

- ▶ CAR  ▶ CONTROL  ▶ Vehicle ▶ Light and visibility ▶ Interior lighting ▶ Brightness

Set the off delay

- ▶ CAR  ▶ CONTROL  ▶ Vehicle settings ▶ Light and visibility ▶ Interior lighting ▶ Fade-out

Switching interior lighting on and off

Switching interior/reading lights on and off

- ▶ Press the button for the relevant light.

Adjusting brightness (dimming)

- ▶ Press and hold the button for the relevant light for at least 1 second until the desired brightness is achieved.

Switching interior lighting on and off automatically

- ▶ CAR  ▶ CONTROL  ▶ Vehicle ▶ Light and visibility ▶ Interior lighting ▶ On opening doors

When it is dark, the interior lighting is switched on in the following situations:

- When the vehicle is unlocked or a door is opened.
- After the ignition is switched off and the driver's seat belt is unfastened.

The interior lighting is switched off again in the following situations:

- After all doors are closed.
- Immediately after switching on the ignition.
- Immediately after locking the vehicle.
- Automatically approx. 10 minutes after switching on.

The off delay for the interior lighting can be set.



- ▶ CAR  ▶ CONTROL  ▶ Vehicle settings ▶ Light and visibility ▶ Interior lighting ▶ Fade-out

Adjusting ambient lighting

Switching ambient lighting on and off

1. CAR  ▶ CONTROL  ▶ Ambient lighting
2. Select **ON**.

Setting the brightness throughout the passenger compartment

1. CAR  ▶ CONTROL  ▶ Ambient lighting
2. Select **Brightness**.
3. Set the desired brightness value.

Jack and Lifting Platform

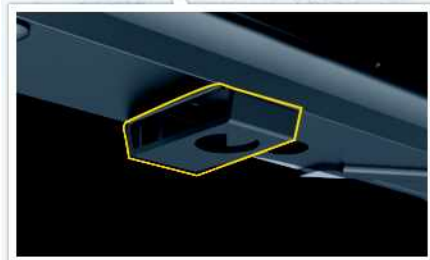


Fig. 94: Front jacking point for jack and lifting platform

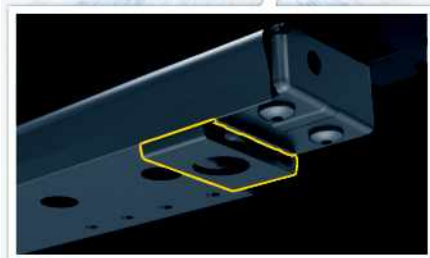


Fig. 95: Rear jacking point for jack and lifting platform

WARNING

Insufficiently secured vehicle.

A vehicle that is not secured or that is incorrectly secured may move unintentionally or tip or fall off lifting equipment, e.g. jack or lifting platform. This can result in serious injury and damage.

- ▶ The vehicle must be raised using the jack only when on a solid and level surface.
- ▶ Raise the vehicle only at the prescribed jacking points on the vehicle underbody.
- ▶ Always place the vehicle on solid supports when working under the vehicle.
- ▶ Never start the engine once the vehicle is raised. Engine vibration could cause the vehicle to fall.
- ▶ When working on the engine while it is running, apply the electric parking brake **and** engage operating mode **P**.

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Changing a wheel" on page 243.

Jump-lead Starting

Depending on the model and equipment, the vehicle is equipped with a lead-acid battery with AGM (Absorbent Glass Mat) technology or a 12-volt lithium battery (LiFePO₄).

In vehicles with a lithium battery, the battery is labelled with a sticker.

- ▶ Under no circumstances remove, deface or render illegible the sticker.

Lead battery jump-lead starting

- ✓ Vehicle with lead battery.

If the battery is flat, another vehicle's battery can be used for starting and as an external power supply with the help of jump leads. Both batteries must have a nominal voltage of 12 V. The capacity (Ah) of the donor battery must not be substantially less than that of the flat battery. The flat battery must be properly connected to the vehicle electrical system.

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Battery" on page 52.

Repeated jump-lead starting under normal operating conditions may indicate that the battery is damaged.

WARNING

Unsuitable jump leads and incorrect procedures

A short circuit may be caused if unsuitable jump leads are used or if jump-lead starting is not performed properly. Short circuits can cause fires.

- ▶ Use only standard jump leads with sufficient cross section and completely insulated terminal clamps. Follow the instructions provided by the

jump lead manufacturer.

- ▶ The vehicles must not touch, otherwise current may flow as soon as the positive terminals are connected.
- ▶ Ensure that conductive jewellery (e.g. rings, chains, watch straps) does not come into contact with live parts of the vehicle.
- ▶ Never connect jump leads directly to the battery or other electrical components. Only connect jump leads to the jump-lead starting terminals.

WARNING

Jump-lead starting using a frozen or damaged battery

When performing jump-lead starting using a frozen or damaged battery, there is a risk of explosion and chemical burns.

- ▶ Do **not** perform jump-lead starting using a frozen or damaged battery.

CAUTION

Corrosive electrolyte

Lead batteries contain highly caustic battery acid that can cause damage to the skin and clothing in the event of contact.

- ▶ Wear safety gloves and eye protection.
- ▶ If the eyes or skin come into contact with battery acid: rinse the affected area with cold water for several minutes.

Performing jump-lead starting

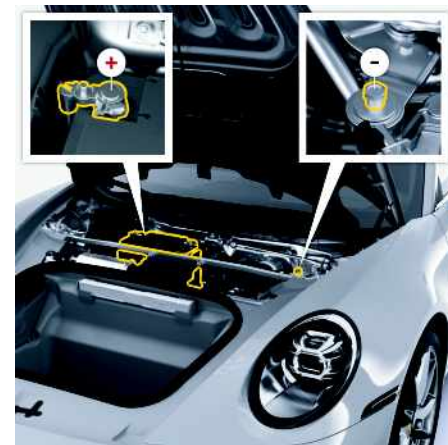


Fig. 96: Lead battery terminals

1. Open the luggage compartment.
 - ▶ Please refer to chapter "Performing emergency release of luggage compartment lid" on page 150.
2. Remove cover in luggage compartment.
 - ▶ Please refer to chapter "Luggage compartment" on page 146.
3. Connect the red positive cable to the positive terminal for jump-lead starting +.
4. Connect the red positive cable to the positive terminal of the donor battery.
5. Connect the black **negative cable** to the negative

terminal of the donor battery. **Never** connect the black negative cable directly to the battery.

6. Connect the black negative cable to the ground point –.
7. Allow the engine of the donor vehicle to run at a higher engine speed.
8. Start the engine. An attempted start using jump leads should not last more than 15 seconds. Then wait for at least one minute.
9. With engine running:
First, disconnect the black negative cable from the ground point – then from the negative terminal of the donor battery.
10. With engine running:
Disconnect the red positive cable from the positive terminal of the donor battery first, then from the positive terminal for jump-lead starting +.

Lithium battery jump-lead starting

✓ Vehicle with lithium battery

The 12-volt lithium battery is automatically disconnected from the vehicle electrical system if the battery charge condition is low. The electrical system is deactivated temporarily. When the battery is charged (for at least 10 minutes) or when jump-lead starting or connection to an external power supply take place, the electrical system is automatically re-activated. The 12-volt lithium battery is automatically reconnected to the vehicle electrical system. Another vehicle's battery can be used for starting and as an external power supply with the help of jump leads. Both batteries must have a nominal voltage of 12 V. The capacity (Ah) of the donor battery must not be substantially less than that of the flat battery. The flat battery must be properly connected to the vehicle electrical system.

▶ Please refer to chapter "Battery" on page 52.

Repeated jump-lead starting under normal operating conditions may indicate that the battery is damaged.

WARNING

Unsuitable jump leads and incorrect procedures

A short circuit may be caused if unsuitable jump leads are used or if jump-lead starting is not performed properly. Short circuits can cause fires.

- ▶ Use only standard jump leads with sufficient cross section and completely insulated terminal clamps. Follow the instructions provided by the jump lead manufacturer.
- ▶ The vehicles must not touch, otherwise current may flow as soon as the positive terminals are connected.
- ▶ Ensure that conductive jewellery (e.g. rings, chains, watch straps) does not come into contact with live parts of the vehicle.
- ▶ Never connect jump leads directly to the battery or other electrical components. Only connect jump leads to the jump-lead starting terminals.

WARNING

Escaping electrolyte fluid and toxic gases

Risk of electrolyte fluid and toxic gases escaping in exceptional cases if the battery is damaged or handled incorrectly.

- ▶ Avoid any inhalation of the vapours and any skin contact with the electrolyte fluid.
- ▶ Keep people away and stay on the side facing into the wind.
- ▶ Only charge lithium batteries in well-ventilated rooms.

NOTICE

Risk of damage if jump-lead starting is performed on an exhaustively discharged lithium battery.

- ▶ If you suspect exhaustive discharge of a lithium battery, do not attempt jump-lead starting.

Performing jump-lead starting

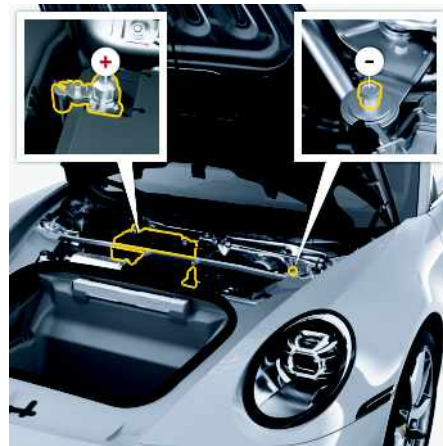


Fig. 97: Lithium battery terminals

1. Open the luggage compartment.
 - ▶ Please refer to chapter "Performing emergency release of luggage compartment lid" on page 150.
2. Remove cover in luggage compartment

- ▷ Please refer to chapter "Luggage compartment" on page 146.
- 3. Connect the red positive cable to the positive terminal for jump-lead starting +.
- 4. Connect the red positive cable to the positive terminal of the donor battery.
- 5. Connect the black **negative cable** to the negative terminal of the donor battery.
- 6. Connect the black negative cable to the ground point –.
- 7. Allow the engine of the donor vehicle to run at a higher engine speed.
- 8. Start the engine. An attempted start using jump leads should not last more than 15 seconds. Then wait for at least one minute.
- 9. With engine running:
First, disconnect the black negative cable from the ground point – then from the negative terminal of the donor battery.
- 10. With engine running:
Disconnect the red positive cable from the positive terminal of the donor battery first, then from the positive terminal for jump-lead starting +.

Lane Change Assist (LCA)

Lane Change Assist warns the driver about vehicles approaching from behind or those in the blind-spot. This applies when overtaking other vehicles and when being overtaken. Integrated warning indicators **A** in both exterior mirrors light up as soon as a dangerous situation is identified and changing lanes seems essential.

At driving speeds below the operating range of the Lane Change Assist, the additional Rear Turn Assist also supports the driver by monitoring the area behind the vehicle in turning-off situations. Rear Turn Assist is always automatically switched to standby together with Lane Change Assist.



Fig. 98: Warning indicator A on the exterior mirror

Switching Lane Change Assist on and off

Lane Change Assist can be switched on and off in the PCM.

▶ ASSIST ▶ Lane Change Assist

When Lane Change Assist is active, the indicator in the exterior mirror lights up briefly when the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

Lack of attention

Even with Lane Change Assist and Rear Turn Assist, absolute care and attention on the part of the driver is still required while driving. Ultimately, the driver is still responsible for changing lanes.

- ▶ Keep the direction of travel and the relevant area around the vehicle in view at all times.

WARNING

Restricted range of the radar sensor

The view of the radar sensor can be reduced in tight bends, when approaching crests and in adverse weather conditions (rain, snow, ice, heavy spray). Vehicles will not be detected properly or may not be detected at all.

- ▶ Observe the direction of travel and the relevant area around the vehicle closely at all times.

WARNING

Vehicles not detected

Vehicles cannot or may not be detected in time in the following situations:

- There is no indication in the case of vehicles approaching at high speed from behind or vehicles that are falling back.
- Lane Change Assist will not work in tight bends.
- Lane Change Assist will only alert you to approaching vehicles or vehicles in the blind-spot area when you are driving at approx. 15 km/h (9 mph) or faster.
- In the case of the Rear Turn Assist, it may occur

that, owing to the small differences in speed between your vehicle and moving or stationary objects, fixed objects (e.g. a metal post) trigger a warning, or that slow-moving vehicles are not detected.

- The Rear Turn Assist is activated when driving off. It can therefore occur that vehicles which are already moving or are driving off are not detected or are only detected late. Vehicles already located immediately next to your vehicle and therefore outside the detection range of the sensor may also not be detected.
- If, when turning-off, your vehicle is not facing in the direction of the driving lane, but is facing diagonally or at right angles to it, approaching vehicles can no longer be detected by the sensors.
- ▶ Keep the direction of travel and the relevant area around the vehicle in view at all times.

General information

- The system provides assistance when driving at speeds above approx. 15 km/h (9 mph).
- At speeds below 15 km/h (9 mph), the driver is supported by the Rear Turn Assist, however, on the vehicle side where the direction indicator was actuated and only when driving off.
- The Rear Turn Assist is active up to approx. 20 km/h (12 mph).
- Lane Change Assist and Rear Turn Assist are not available if the system detects that the radar sensors are covered.
- The radar sensors can sometimes detect other objects (e.g. high or raised crash barriers), not just vehicles.
- The display is designed so that you notice it merely by glancing at the exterior mirror.

Information

If the position of the radar sensors was changed following an accident, for example, this can impair the function of Lane Change Assist.

- ▶ Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Information

To ensure that Lane Change Assist can work properly:

- ▶ Do not cover the radar sensors on the rear bumper with objects (e.g. stickers). Also remove any dirt, snow and ice from this area.
- ▶ Do not cover the warning indicator in the exterior mirror (e.g. with stickers or self-adhesive blind spot mirrors).
- ▶ Subsequent painting of the bumper may lead to a reduction in the sensor range owing to the thicker coating layer. The electrical properties may also differ from those of the approved paints.



Fig. 99: Radar sensors in the rear bumper

Operating principle

Lane Change Assist measures the distance and speed difference of detected vehicles compared to your vehicle using the radar sensors integrated in the

rear bumper. The radar sensors calculate an area of up to 70 m to the rear (approach zone) and the blind-spot.

Whenever Lane Change Assist regards the speed difference and distance as critical for changing lanes, this is indicated on the relevant exterior mirror. Both sides of the vehicle are displayed separately. This is how the warning indicator in the left exterior mirror assists the driver when changing to the left lane, for example.

If a vehicle regarded as critical has switched on its direction indicator, the respective warning indicator in the exterior mirror flashes brightly and briefly several times.

When slowly overtaking another vehicle (speed difference of less than approx. 15 km/h (9 mph)), the warning indicator lights up as soon as this vehicle is in your blind-spot area and is detected by Lane Change Assist. If there is a greater speed difference, this is not indicated in the exterior mirror.

The speed range of the Lane Change Assist is not reached immediately after driving off. Until it is reached, the driver is supported via the Rear Turn Assist.

When the direction indicator is on, the Rear Turn Assist detects objects located next to and behind your vehicle, but only at the side on which the indicator has been activated. If a potential hazard is detected, the respective warning indicator on the exterior mirror lights up. If your own calculated driving path crosses that of a detected vehicle on the side of the vehicle on which the indicator has been activated, the respective warning indicator on the exterior mirror will flash brightly and briefly several times.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Information

The radar sensors cover the adjacent lane to the left and right. Other lanes are **not** covered by the radar sensors.

Information and warning stage

Lane Change Assist has two indicator levels that are activated as appropriate, depending on whether or not the direction indicator has been set.

Information stage

If the direction indicator is not set, Lane Change Assist informs you about detected vehicles that are considered critical for a possible lane change. Whenever Lane Change Assist regards the speed difference and distance of a detected vehicle as critical, a **weak** light appears in the warning indicator on the relevant mirror.

Warning stage

If the direction indicator is on and Lane Change Assist has detected a vehicle on this side that it regards as critical, the warning indicator in the exterior mirror on this side will start to flash **brightly**. When the warning stage flashes brightly and briefly several times, this is an indication for you to check the driving situation again by looking in the exterior mirror and looking over your shoulder.

Setting display brightness of Lane Change Assist

The brightness of the warning indicator for both the information stage and warning stage is automatically adapted to the ambient brightness. The basic brightness of the warning indicator in the exterior mirror can also be adjusted.

▶ ASSIST  ▶  ▶ Assistance system settings ▶ Lane Change Assist

Information

- The faster a vehicle is approaching, the earlier the warning indicator in the exterior mirror lights up. You are alerted to all vehicles detected by Lane Change Assist when they are in the "blind-spot area" at the latest.
- Changing lanes can already be critical for vehicles approaching at speed if there is still no warning activated in the exterior mirror.
- On vehicles with other assistance systems, the warning indicator on the exterior mirror can flash on briefly several times even if the indicator is not on. If Lane Keep Assist detects that your vehicle is veering out of your lane towards a vehicle on the adjacent lane, Lane Change Assist alerts you to the possible danger by flashing on briefly and brightly several times.

Driving situations

The following driving situations describe possible scenarios and the associated Lane Change Assist and Rear Turn Assist warning indicators.

Vehicles approaching quickly

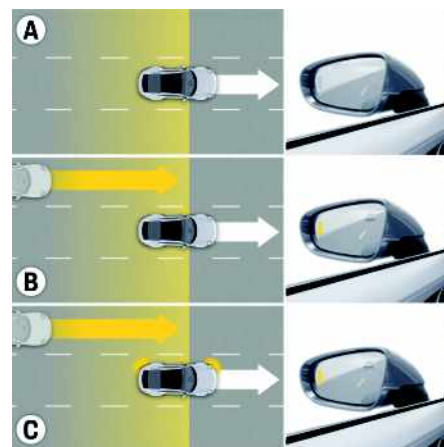


Fig. 100: Vehicle approaching fast

A – Warning indicator in exterior mirror does not light up

The sensors do not detect a vehicle. Warning indicator in exterior mirror does not light up.

B – Warning indicator lights up in the information stage

The sensors detect a fast approaching vehicle – in the left lane in the example. This vehicle is already regarded as critical for changing lanes due to the significant speed difference even though it is still a good distance away. Warning indicator in exterior mirror lights up.

C – Warning indicator flashes in the warning stage

If the direction indicator is switched on in driving situation B, the warning indicator in the exterior mirror flashes briefly several times. Lane Change Assist alerts you to the fact that you may have overlooked a vehicle.

Vehicles approaching slowly

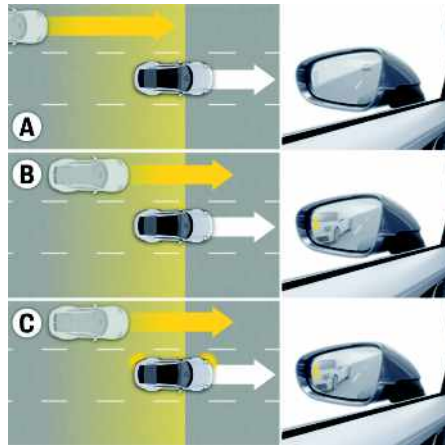


Fig. 101: Vehicle approaching slowly

A – Warning indicator in exterior mirror does not light up

The sensors detect a slowly approaching vehicle – in the left lane in the example. Due to the small speed difference and the large distance, the warning indicator in the exterior mirror does not light up.

B – Warning indicator lights up in the information stage

The slowly approaching vehicle is now closer. Warning indicator in exterior mirror lights up. Only when Lane Change Assist regards the speed difference and distance as critical for changing lanes, does the warning indicator in the exterior mirror light up. You are alerted to all vehicles detected by Lane Change Assist when they are in the "blind-spot area" at the latest.

C – Warning indicator flashes in the warning stage

If the direction indicator is switched on in driving situation B, the warning indicator in the exterior

mirror flashes briefly several times. Lane Change Assist alerts you to the fact that you may have overlooked a vehicle.

Vehicles falling back slowly

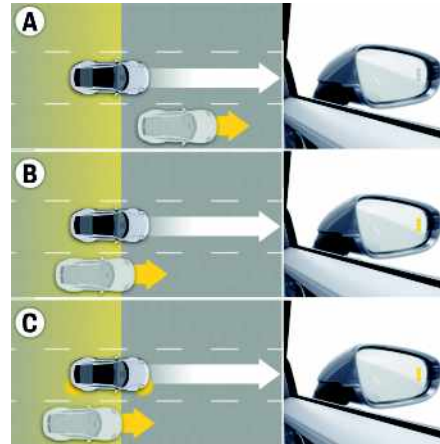


Fig. 102: Vehicle falling back slowly

A – Warning indicator in exterior mirror does not light up

Lane Change Assist has not yet detected the overtaken vehicle. Warning indicator in exterior mirror does not light up.

B – Warning indicator lights up in the information stage

The slowly receding vehicle (less than approx. 15 km/h speed difference) – in the right lane in the example – is detected by Lane Change Assist. Warning indicator in exterior mirror lights up.

C – Warning indicator flashes in the warning stage

If the direction indicator is switched on in driving situation B, the warning indicator in the exterior mirror flashes briefly several times. Lane Change

Assist alerts you to the fact that you may have overlooked a vehicle.

Vehicles falling back quickly

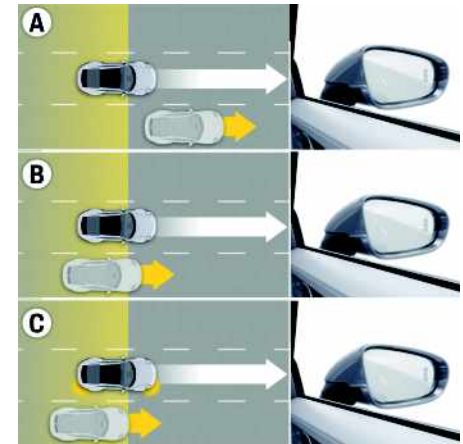


Fig. 103: Vehicle falling back quickly

A – Warning indicator in exterior mirror does not light up

Lane Change Assist has not yet detected the overtaken vehicle. Warning indicator in exterior mirror does not light up.

B – Warning indicator in exterior mirror does not light up

Lane Change Assist detects the vehicle on the right that is falling back fast (speed difference of more than approx. 15 km/h (9 mph)) – in the right lane in the example – but does not regard it as critical for changing lanes because it is falling back fast. Warning indicator in exterior mirror does not light up.

C – Warning indicator in exterior mirror does not light up

If the direction indicator is switched on in driving situation **B**, the warning indicator in the exterior mirror is still not activated.

Pulling away to turn off

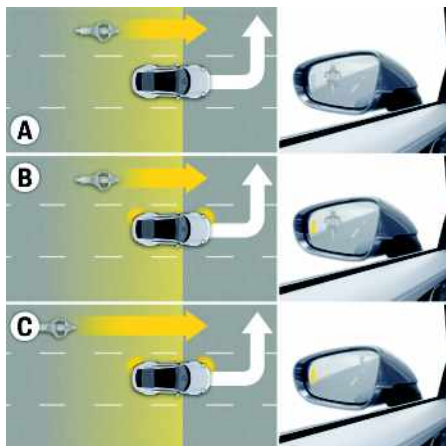


Fig. 104: Pulling away to turn off

A – Warning indicator in exterior mirror does not light up

The direction indicator has not been actuated. The Rear Turn Assist is therefore not active after driving off and the motorbike located in the blind spot is not detected. A fast approaching vehicle may also not be detected. Warning indicator in exterior mirror does not light up.

B – Warning indicator lights up in the information stage

If the relevant direction indicator is switched on in driving situation **A**, the warning indicator in the exterior mirror lights up. Turn assist alerts you to the fact that you may have overlooked a vehicle.

C – Warning indicator flashes in the warning stage

If, in driving situation **B**, the driver has initiated turning off by steering to the relevant side and this results in his own calculated driving path crossing that of a detected vehicle, the warning indicator in the exterior mirror flashes briefly several times and then lights up. This warns you of a potential collision with a vehicle that may have been overlooked.

Driving around bends

When driving around a bend, Lane Change Assist may react to a vehicle driving in the next lane but one and the warning indicator in the exterior mirror may light up.

Lane Change Assist cannot detect vehicles in tight bends.

- ▶ Take additional care when driving around bends and where there are lanes with differing widths.

Lane width

The Lane Change Assist detection area covers the two adjacent lanes (left and right) on lanes of standard width regardless of whether you are driving exactly in the middle or at the edge of the lane.

When driving on narrow lanes, this area may cover even more lanes, particularly when driving at the edge of a lane. In such situations, vehicles driving two lanes away may be detected and Lane Change Assist may switch to the information or warning stage.

Likewise, when driving on very wide lanes, vehicles in the adjacent lane may not be detected as they are outside the detection area.

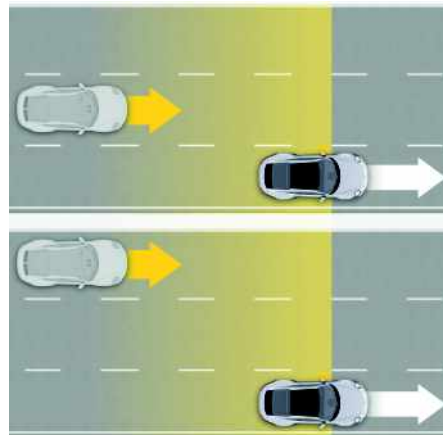



Fig. 105: Lane width and detection area

Lane Keep Assist



Fig. 106: Windscreen camera

Using the front camera **A** and within the limits of the system, Lane Keep Assist detects the course of the road ahead based on the lane markings. When the vehicle approaches a detected lane marking and is in danger of leaving the driving lane, the system initiates corrective steering intervention that helps to keep the vehicle in the lane. The driver receives a visual indication of the steering intervention in the status display. The driver can override the steering intervention at any time.

If the vehicle crosses a lane marking without indicating, the system alerts the driver to the fact acoustically. For this purpose, the acoustic warning must be enabled in the PCM in the **ASSIST**  menu.

The system is designed for driving on highways and well-surfaced country roads and works in a speed range of approx. 40 mph (65 km/h) – 156 mph (250 km/h). The operative system does not issue a warning or steer if the driver indicates before crossing a lane marking. In these situations, the system interprets the lane change as intentional.

✓ Vehicles with Lane Change Assist:

If the vehicle is equipped with Lane Change Assist, the driver is warned through corrective steering intervention back into lane when changing lanes in a potentially critical situation. This also happens if the

direction indicator is actuated for the relevant direction. At the same time as a steering intervention, the relevant side appears in red on the status display and an acoustic warning (if active) is provided when the lane marking is crossed over.

WARNING

Lack of attention

The driver remains responsible at all times when driving, e.g. staying in lane, despite active Lane Keep Assist. The system is no substitute for attention on the part of the driver.

- The system can help to keep the vehicle in the lane within the limits of the system, but it does not drive it. Keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times in order to always be ready to steer. If a warning message appears on the instrument cluster, take over control of the vehicle yourself immediately.
- In the case of heavy braking, for example, corrective steering interventions may not take place.
- In the case of active steering by the driver, corrective steering intervention can be reduced or may not take place.
- It is possible that not all lane marking will be detected. Steering intervention can only take place on the side where a lane marking has been detected.
- Other road structures or objects may be incorrectly identified as lane markings. This can lead to unexpected or missing steering interventions/acoustic warnings.
- Corrective steering intervention alone may not be sufficient to keep the vehicle in the driving lane in the case of track ruts, winding roads, inclined road surfaces or crosswind. The driver must actively steer in such situations.

- ▶ Never use Lane Keep Assist in the following situations:
 - When increased attention is required on the part of the driver.
 - During sporty driving.
 - In adverse weather conditions (e.g. fog, snow or heavy rain).
 - Under unfavourable road conditions (including bad roads, pot holes, dirty road surfaces).
 - In roadworks areas.
 - When approaching humps and dips.
 - In urban traffic.
 - On winding and narrow country roads.
- ▶ Drive with extreme care.
- ▶ Always pay attention to the traffic situation and the area around the vehicle.
- ▶ Adapt your driving speed to road and weather conditions.
- ▶ Do not attach any objects to the steering wheel.

WARNING

Failure of camera to detect the lane

Camera vision can be impaired by various factors (e.g. rain, snow, ice, heavy spray, oncoming headlights or damage). Under certain conditions, the camera cannot detect the lane markings, or cannot detect them correctly. In this case, no steering intervention or unexpected steering intervention can occur.

- ▶ Drive with extreme care.
- ▶ Keep the direction of travel and the lane lines in view at all times.
- ▶ Clean the camera lens regularly and keep free of snow and ice.
- ▶ Do not cover the camera lens.
- ▶ Check the windscreen for damage in the area of the camera lens at regular intervals.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Information

- ▶ If there is a fault in the system or if Lane Keep Assist does not function as described in this section, do not use Lane Keep Assist. Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

WARNING

No corrective steering intervention

In tighter bends and with Lane Keep Assist active, corrective steering intervention is not sufficient to keep the vehicle in the lane. It can also happen that Lane Keep Assist is automatically deactivated before or in the bend and no corrective steering intervention occurs.

- ▶ Drive with extreme care.
- ▶ Always hold the steering wheel with both hands.

Information

The driver's steering behaviour is monitored when Lane Keep Assist is active. If no more steering activity is detected and the vehicle is about to stray from the lane several times, the instrument cluster issues an acoustic and visual warning and prompts the driver to take over the steering.

If the driver does not respond to this, Lane Keep Assist switches to a passive mode (see status display). Steering intervention on the part of the driver re-activates Lane Keep Assist.

If Lane Keep Assist must intervene for an extended period, the instrument cluster issues an acoustic and visual warning and prompts the driver to align the vehicle in the centre of the lane.

Switching Lane Keep Assist on and off

Lane Keep Assist can be switched on and off in the PCM.

- ▶ ASSIST  ▶ Lane Keep Assist 

Setting acoustic warning

The acoustic warning can be switched on and off individually. The warning tone volume can also be selected in 3 stages.

- ▶ ASSIST  ▶  ▶ Assistance system settings ▶ Lane Keep Assist

Calling up and reading off Lane Keep Assist

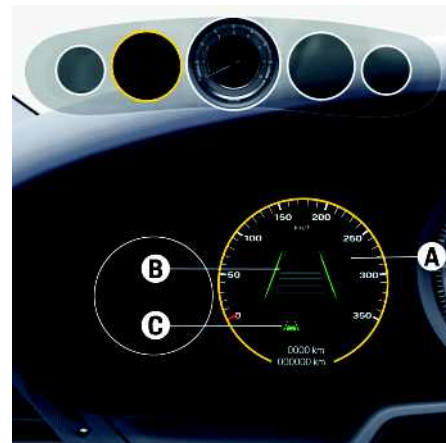


Fig. 107: Speed & Assist display

- A Lane Keep Assist display
- B Display of lane markings
- C Status display

Vehicles with Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)









The Speed & Assist display in the ASSIST main menu shows the lane markings **B** and the status display **C**.

Vehicles without Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

The lane markings are only shown on the status display **C**.

Reading off the system states

The table shows the system states of the Lane Keep Assist and their display on the instrument cluster:

Lane Keep Assist display	Status display	Meaning
No display	No display	Lane Keep Assist is switched off.
		Lane Keep Assist is switched on but passive.
		Lane Keep Assist is switched on and active on both sides.
		The lane markings can also be detected on one side.
		Lane Keep Assist performs a corrective steering intervention (example on the right).

Information

When the system is switched on but passive, this may have the following causes:

- The vehicle speed is below the activation speed of approx. 65 km/h (40 mph).
- The lane markings of the currently driven lane are not detected. (e.g. in the case of snow, dirt, wet, oncoming headlights or a vehicle close ahead).
- The quality of the lane markings is not sufficiently good for activation of Lane Keep Assist.
- The radius of a bend is too small.
- The distance to the nearest lane marking is too great.
- The lane markings are too close to the vehicle.
- Temporarily in conjunction with an extremely dynamic driving style.
- The direction indicator is actuated.
- The system has detected that your hands are not on the steering wheel.

Responding to warning message

Deactivation in the case of a fault:

If a system fault occurs, Lane Keep Assist may switch off automatically. The indicator light goes out and a message is displayed.

- ▷ Please refer to chapter "Warning and Information Messages" on page 255.



Lights



Brief overview Lights

This brief overview does not replace the comprehensive descriptions. Safety messages and warnings, in particular, are not replaced by this brief overview.



Fig. 108: Light control panel

What do I want to do?	What do I have to do?	Where?
Switch on automatic headlights	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Press the AUTO button. The AUTO button lights up red. Automatic headlights and the Porsche Dynamic Light System Plus (PDLS Plus) are switched on. 	▶ p. 141
Switch on parking light	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Press button . Number plate light, instrument lighting and side lights are switched on. 	–
Switch on dipped beams	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ✓ Ignition switched on. ▶ Press button . Dipped beams are switched on. Automatic headlights, daytime running lights and the Porsche 	–

What do I want to do?	What do I have to do?	Where?
	Dynamic Light System Plus (PDLS Plus) are switched off.	
Switch on rear fog light	▶ Press button  .	–
Switch exterior lights off completely	▶ Press button  for approx. 2 seconds. The AUTO button goes out. All exterior lights remain switched off until a speed of 10 km/h (6 mph) or a driven distance of 100 m has been exceeded.	▶ p. 141

Switching automatic headlights/ exterior lights on and off

WARNING

Driving without lights

If you drive without lights, this may significantly restrict your visibility and also the ability of other road users to see your vehicle.

- ▶ Carefully monitor the automatic headlights and switch the dipped beam headlights on manually if necessary.
- ▶ Observe the laws on driving with dipped beam headlights in the specific country.


Switching on automatic headlights

- ▶ Press the **AUTO** button.

The **AUTO** button lights up red.

The dipped beams are switched on automatically in the following situations:

- Dusk
- Darkness
- Driving through tunnels
- Rain


When the dipped beams are switched on, the indicator light  on the instrument cluster lights up.

Information

Fog is not recognised.

- ▶ In the event of fog, switch on the dipped beams and rear fog light manually.

Switch exterior lights off completely

- ▶ Press button  for approx. 2 seconds.

The **AUTO** button goes out.

The automatic lights are switched on again in the following situations (country-dependent):

- From a speed of 10 km/h (6 mph)
- When a distance of more than 100 m has been driven after switching off the exterior lights

Information

The vehicle's exterior lights can mist up depending on temperature and humidity. This misting will evaporate after a sufficient distance has been driven.

Adjusting Automatic Coming Home lights

- ✓ Automatic headlights switched on.

The following lights may be switched on for a certain period to allow you to get in and out of your vehicle with improved visibility in darkness:

When the last vehicle door is closed or after unlocking the vehicle, the following lights are switched on:

- Daytime running lights
- Dipped beam courtesy (PDLS Plus)
- Door courtesy lights in the folded-out exterior mirrors
- Front and rear side marker lights
- Number plate light

They are switched off again when the ignition is switched on or the automatic headlights are switched off.

The duration of the off delay can be set.

- ▶ **CAR**  ▶ **CONTROL**  ▶ **Vehicle** ▶ **Light and visibility** ▶ **Exterior lights** ▶ **Fade-out**

Porsche Dynamic Light System Plus (PDLS Plus) with LED headlights

- ✓ Automatic headlights switched on.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Dynamic cornering lights

Above a speed of around 5 km/h (3 mph), the dipped beam or high beam headlights are swivelled in the direction of the curve to illuminate the road more clearly, depending on the speed of the vehicle and the extent to which the steering wheel is turned.

Situational lighting distribution

Depending on the country, situational lighting control adapts the light distribution of the dipped and high-beam headlights to urban, country-road or motorway driving.

Adverse weather lights

When the fog lights are switched on, the dipped beam distribution changes at a speed of less than approx. 60 km/h (38 mph). The light beam becomes wider and reduces glare.

Full beam assist



Fig. 109: Windscreen camera

Light sources and other road users can be detected by means of a camera A in the vicinity of the interior mirror. Depending on the position of other vehicles, the dipped beam headlight is switched to high beam headlight and back.

The high beam headlight is available from approximately 30 km/h (19 mph) to approximately

60 km/h (38 mph). High beam is switched to dipped beam when the camera detects street lights.

WARNING

Lack of attention when driving with full beam assist

In spite of full beam assist, it is always the driver's responsibility to manually adapt high beam according to light conditions, visibility and traffic conditions during driving, for example. The system is not a substitute for careful attention on the part of the driver. Manual intervention may be required in the following situations:

- In unfavourable weather conditions, such as rain, fog, snow, ice, heavy spray.
- On roads where oncoming traffic is partly obscured, e.g. motorways.
- Where there are poorly lit road users, e.g. cyclists.
- On narrow bends, steep crests or hollows.
- In poorly lit built up areas.
- Where there are strong reflections e.g. signs.
- Where the windscreen in the camera area is misted, dirty, icy or covered with stickers.
- ▶ Drive with extreme care.
- ▶ Always pay attention to the traffic situation and the area around the vehicle.
- ▶ If necessary, manually adjust the high beam to the light, visibility and traffic conditions.

Information

To avoid impairing the detection performance:

- ▶ Do not cover the camera area on the interior mirror with objects (e.g. stickers).
- ▶ The camera must always be kept free of dirt, ice and snow.

Porsche Dynamic Light System Plus (PDLS Plus) with LED-Matrix headlights

- ✓ Automatic headlights switched on. PDLS Plus LED-Matrix headlights also include the PDLS Plus functions.
- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Porsche Dynamic Light System Plus (PDLS Plus) with LED headlights" on page 141.

Dynamic high beam



Fig. 110: Windscreen camera

Light sources and other road users can be detected by means of a camera A in the vicinity of the interior mirror. Depending on the position of other vehicles, the speed and other environmental and traffic conditions, the individual LED segments of the high beam headlights are activated or deactivated. The beam in the relevant area in front of the vehicle is low, the rest remains high. This ensures that the environment is lit to best effect without dazzling other road users.

Dynamic high beam is switched on or off at speeds between 30 km/h (20 mph) and 60 km/h (37 mph), depending on the navigation data. Full high beam illumination is switched to dipped beam when the camera detects street lights.

WARNING

Lack of attention when driving with dynamic high beam

In spite of dynamic high beam, it is always the driver's responsibility to manually adapt high beam according to light conditions, visibility and traffic conditions during driving, for example. The system is not a substitute for careful attention on the part of the driver. Manual intervention may be required in the following situations:

- In unfavourable weather conditions, such as rain, fog, snow, ice, heavy spray.
- On roads where oncoming traffic is partly obscured, e.g. motorways.
- Where there are poorly lit road users, e.g. cyclists.
- On narrow bends, steep crests or hollows.
- In poorly lit built up areas.
- Where there are strong reflections e.g. signs.
- Where the windscreen in the camera area is misted, dirty, icy or covered with stickers.
- ▶ Drive with extreme care.
- ▶ Always pay attention to the traffic situation and the area around the vehicle.
- ▶ If necessary, manually adjust the high beam to the light, visibility and traffic conditions.

Information

To avoid impairing the detection performance:

- ▶ Do not cover the camera area on the interior mirror with objects (e.g. stickers).
- ▶ The camera must always be kept free of dirt, ice and snow.

Passing lights

- ✓ No oncoming traffic.
- ✓ Vehicle ahead.
- ▶ Operate the direction indicator for overtaking while driving.
The area next to the vehicle ahead is illuminated brightly. This makes it easier to see the road ahead.
Passing lights are automatically deactivated again when the turn signal is deactivated or if oncoming traffic is detected.

Encounter lights

- ✓ No vehicle ahead.
- ✓ Oncoming traffic with detected headlights.
The light distribution is briefly changed so that the lane being driven on is illuminated brightly. This draws the direction of vision onto the lane being driven on. The driver is less dazzled by the oncoming traffic.

Signage glare reduction

- ✓ Dynamic high beam is switched on.
The glare of reflective traffic signs and other signage can – particularly when driving with high beams – cause the driver to be dazzled.
The signage glare reduction briefly dims individual LED segments of the vehicle's low or high beam headlights in a targeted manner. The driver is dazzled less due to reflecting traffic signs and other signage.

Automatic headlight calibration

- ✓ No objects in the immediate vicinity of the vehicle.
- ✓ Vehicle positioned as straight as possible in front of a projection surface, e.g. wall (distance > 5m).

- ✓ Dipped beam active during reference run while stationary.
Automatic headlight calibration starts automatically provided the conditions are right (ambient lighting, good projection surface). The LED segments of the headlight are automatically activated and deactivated repeatedly from right to left during calibration and are detected by the camera **A**.
Calibration is used to check headlight alignment and does not replace manual headlight adjustment.

Operating direction indicator and high beam stalk



Fig. 111: Operating direction indicators, high beam and headlight flasher

- 1 Direction indicator/left parking light
- 2 Direction indicator/right parking light
- 3 High beam/dynamic high beam
- 4 Headlight flasher

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z**Operating direction indicators**

- ▶ Push the stalk past pressure point **1** or **2**. The direction indicator remains active until the stalk is returned to the initial position manually or automatically due to steering wheel movement.


Comfort direction indication

- ▶ Push the stalk once to pressure point **1** or **2**. The direction indicators flash three times.
- ▶ In order to interrupt comfort direction indication, press the stalk in the opposite direction.


Switching high beam on and off

- ✓ Vehicles without PDLs Plus
– or –
Full beam assist/dynamic high beam is deactivated.

Switching on

- ▶ Push the stalk once to pressure point **3**.
The indicator light  comes on.


Switching off


- ▶ Push the stalk once to pressure point **4**.
The indicator light  goes out.

Activating and deactivating full beam assist


- ✓ Porsche Dynamic Light System Plus (PDLs Plus) with LED headlights
- ✓ Automatic headlights switched on.
- ✓ Full beam assist is activated.
 - ▶ Please refer to chapter "Vehicle Settings" on page 246.

Activating


- ▶ Push the stalk once to pressure point **3**.
The indicator light  comes on. Depending on different factors, such as the position of other vehicles and speed, the dipped beam headlight is

switched to high beam headlight and back. If high beam activated, the indicator light  comes on.


Deactivating

- ▶ Push the stalk once to pressure point **4**.
Full beam assist can only be deactivated when the indicator light  is on.
If the requirements for full beam assist are not met, high beam can be switched on and off manually.

Switching on manually

- ▶ Push the stalk twice to pressure point **3**.
The indicator light  comes on.



Switching off manually

- ▶ Push the stalk once to pressure point **4**.
The indicator light  goes out.

Activating and deactivating dynamic high beam


- ✓ Porsche Dynamic Light System Plus (PDLs Plus) with LED-Matrix headlights
- ✓ Automatic headlights switched on.
- ✓ Dynamic high beam is activated.
 - ▶ Please refer to chapter "Vehicle Settings" on page 246.

Activating

- ▶ Push the stalk once to pressure point **3**.
The indicator light  comes on. Depending on various factors such as the position of other vehicles and speed, the individual LED segments of the high beam headlights are activated or deactivated. If high beam is partly or fully activated, the indicator light  comes on.


Deactivating

- ▶ Push the stalk once to pressure point **4**.


The dynamic high beam can only be deactivated when the indicator light  is on.

If the dynamic high beam was deactivated or if the requirements for the dynamic high beam are not met, high beam can be switched on and off manually.


Switching on manually

- ▶ Push the stalk twice to pressure point **3**.
The indicator light  comes on.

Switching off manually

- ▶ Push the stalk once to pressure point **4**.
The indicator light  goes out.

Operating the headlight flasher

- ▶ Briefly push the stalk once to pressure point **4**.
The indicator light  comes on briefly.

Switching parking light on and off

- ✓ Ignition switched off.
- ▶ Press the stalk past pressure point **2** or **1** to switch on the right or left parking light.
When the parking light is switched on, a message appears on the instrument cluster after the ignition is switched off and the door is opened.

Switching hazard warning lights on/off

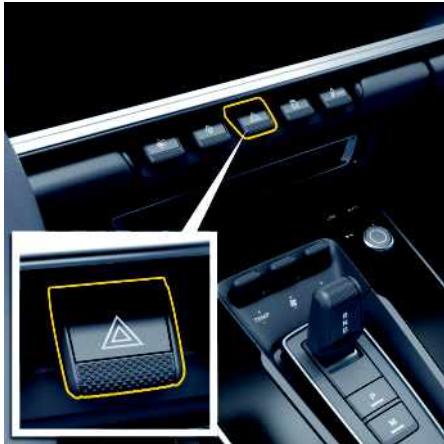


Fig. 112: Switching hazard warning lights on and off

Switching hazard warning lights on and off

- ▶ Press button in the switch panel.
All direction indicators and the button flash.

Deactivating hazard warning lights after emergency braking

If the vehicle is travelling at a speed of more than approx. 70 km/h (43 mph) and is braked fully to a standstill, the hazard warning lights are activated automatically. The brake lights flash during braking.

- ▶ Press the hazard warning light button on the centre console to deactivate the hazard warning lights. The hazard warning lights are deactivated automatically when the vehicle begins to move again.

Hazard warning lights following an accident

The hazard warning lights are activated automatically in the event of an accident in which the airbag is triggered.

Activating overseas mode

When you cross the border into a country where traffic drives on the other side of the road, the light distribution of the headlights must be adapted. The dipped beam then lights symmetrically and drivers of oncoming vehicles are not dazzled.

Adaptation of the light distribution normally occurs automatically based on the navigation data.

After conversion, a message appears in the instrument cluster every time the ignition is switched on. If conversion does not take place automatically:

▶ **CAR** ▶ **CONTROL** ▶ **Vehicle settings** ▶ **Light and visibility** ▶ **Exterior light** ▶ **Inverted**

- ▶ Readjust headlights on the return journey.

Changing bulbs

The vehicle lighting as well as the interior lights are equipped with long-life LEDs. The LEDs cannot be replaced individually.

Removing and installing lamps involves a great deal of effort.

- ▶ Always have faulty bulbs and lamps replaced or repaired by a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

NOTICE

Abrasion and excessive temperatures can cause damage to the headlights.

- ▶ Do not install any coverings (e. g. stone guards or films) in the headlight area.

Luggage compartment

Stowing loads

WARNING

Changed vehicle handling when vehicle is loaded

Vehicle handling changes depending on the vehicle load.

- ▶ Adapt your driving style to the changed vehicle handling.
- ▶ Do not exceed the maximum gross weight and axle load.

WARNING

Unsecured, incorrectly secured or incorrectly positioned load

As a result of braking, changes of direction or in an accident, unsecured or incorrectly positioned loads can slide out of place and endanger vehicle occupants.

- ▶ Never transport unsecured objects (accident, braking, cornering).
- ▶ Always carry loads in the luggage compartment, never in the passenger compartment (e.g. on or in front of the seats).
- ▶ Do not transport any heavy objects in open storage compartments.
- ▶ Always keep lockable storage compartment covers closed when driving.

WARNING

Incorrect tyre pressure

An incorrect tyre pressure can impair driving safety.

- ▶ Adapt the tyre pressure to the load.
- ▶ After you change the tyre pressure, you must also update the setting for Tyre Pressure Monitoring.

Opening and closing the luggage compartment

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Luggage Compartment Lid" on page 149.

Removing the warning triangle

The warning triangle **A** is located on the back of the luggage compartment, depending on the country.

Securing and removing first aid kit

The first aid kit **B** can be secured to the carpet in the luggage compartment (Velcro strip), depending on country.

Removing and stowing tyre sealing compound/tool kit

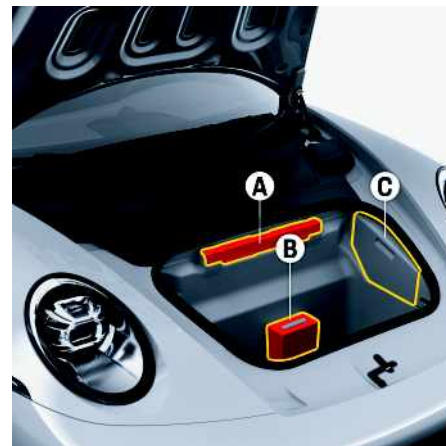


Fig. 113: Plastic box C containing tyre sealing compound



Fig. 114: Tyre sealing compound and tool kit

- D Tyre sealing compound
- E Adapter
- F Towing lug
- G Open-ended spanner
- H Screwdriver
- I Crank for emergency operation of sliding roof

Removing tyre sealing compound/tool kit

- ▶ Remove the plastic cover on the handle recess.

Stowing tyre sealing compound/tool kit

1. Insert lugs at bottom.
2. Engage the plastic cover at top.

Removing and stowing tyre filling compressor

Removing the tyre filling compressor



Fig. 115: Detaching and lifting plastic cover

1. Lift the plastic cover by the handle recesses (**arrow**) until the latch audibly disengages.
2. Pull the plastic cover forwards slightly and lift at the front.



Fig. 116: Attaching the plastic cover

3. Release retaining strap on the underside of the plastic cover and attach to the luggage compartment lid.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z



Fig. 117: Opening storage compartment for tyre filling compressor

4. Open the storage compartment for the tyre filling compressor.
5. Remove the tyre filling compressor from the storage compartment.

Stowing tyre filling compressor

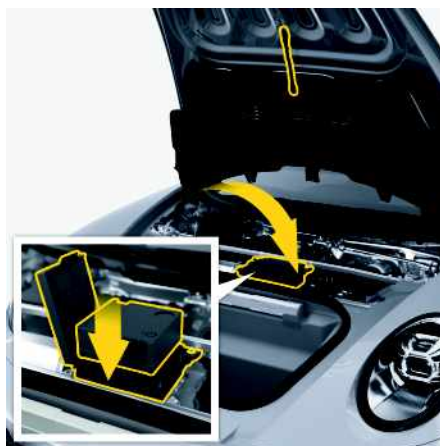


Fig. 118: Replacing tyre filling compressor

1. Place the tyre filling compressor in the storage compartment.
2. Close the cover on the storage compartment.

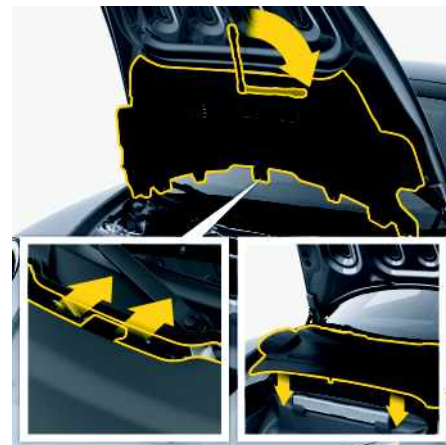


Fig. 119: Closing the plastic cover

3. Unhook the retaining strap and attach to the plastic cover.
4. Insert plastic cover with the guides at the rear edge and lay it on the holders. Lower the plastic cover at the front.
5. Ensure that the centring pins on the underside of the cover engage in the respective guides. Press the cover downwards at the handle recesses until the latch audibly engages.

Luggage Compartment Lid

Opening and closing luggage compartment lid

Opening luggage compartment lid using button in passenger compartment

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the luggage compartment lid or windscreen wipers.

- ▶ Make sure that the windscreen wipers are not folded forward when opening the luggage compartment lid.
 - ▶ Always switch off windscreen wipers before opening the luggage compartment lid (wiper stalk in position **0**).
-
- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Windscreen Wipers" on page 275.

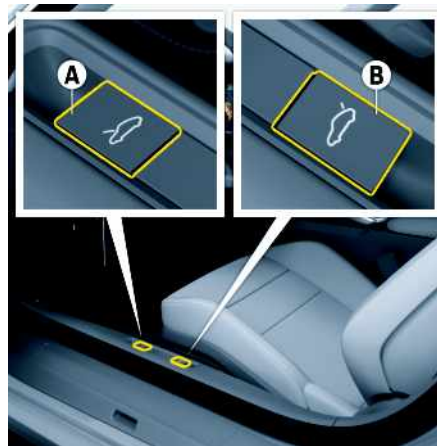


Fig. 120: Opening the luggage compartment lid

- A** Luggage compartment lid button
B Engine compartment lid button

1. Pull button **A**.
The lid is unlocked.




Fig. 121: Unlocking luggage compartment lid

2. Lift the lid up slightly and release the safety latch (**arrow**).
3. Open the lid completely.
When the lid is open, the luggage compartment light comes on.

Opening luggage compartment lid with driver's key



Fig. 122: Opening luggage compartment lid with driver's key

1. Press button .
2. Lift the lid up slightly and release the safety latch.
3. Open the lid completely.

When the lid is open, the luggage compartment light comes on.

Information

When the luggage compartment lid is unlocked using the driver's key, the vehicle doors are also unlocked.

Opening luggage compartment lid with Comfort Access (keyless)



Fig. 123: Opening luggage compartment lid with Comfort Access

- ✓ Vehicles with Comfort Access
 - ✓ Driver's key is located in the front area of the vehicle.
1. Place your hand between the Porsche Crest and the number plate. Either move your hand in a forward and backward movement or make a swiping action.
The lid is unlocked.
 2. Lift the lid up slightly and release the safety latch.
 3. Open the lid completely.
When the lid is open, the luggage compartment light comes on.

Closing luggage compartment lid

1. Lower the lid and let it fall into the lock. Push the lid closed with the palm of your hand in the area of the lock.
2. Check that the lid has engaged correctly in the lock.
If the lid is not closed properly, a message appears on the instrument cluster when the vehicle is moving.

Performing emergency release of luggage compartment lid

If the battery is discharged, the luggage compartment lid can be opened only with the aid of a donor battery.

- ▷ Please refer to chapter "Jump-lead Starting" on page 129.

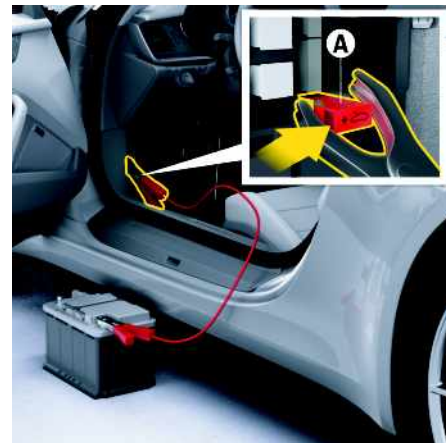


Fig. 124: Emergency release of luggage compartment lid – connecting positive terminal

1. Use the emergency key to unlock the vehicle at the door lock.
2. Remove the plastic cover from the left-hand fuse box.
3. Pull out positive terminal **A** (red) in the fuse box.
4. Use the red jump lead to connect the positive terminal of the donor battery to the positive terminal **A** in the fuse box.

Information

If the vehicle was locked, the alarm horn from the alarm system will sound when the negative terminal is connected.

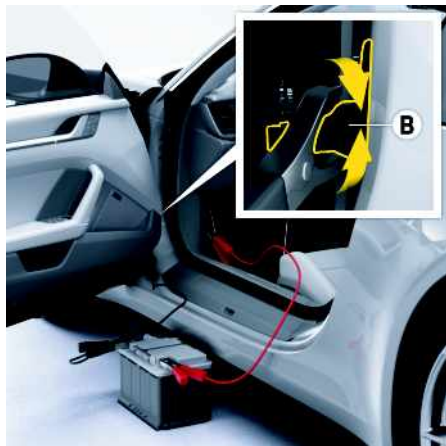



Fig. 125: Emergency release of luggage compartment lid – connecting negative terminal

5. Use the black jump lead to connect the negative terminal of the donor battery to the joint of the door arrester **B**.
6. Press and hold the  button on the driver's key for approx. 2 seconds. The luggage compartment

lid is unlocked and the alarm system is deactivated.

7. Disconnect the negative lead first, then the positive lead.
8. Push positive terminal **A** into the fuse box and fit the plastic fuse box cover.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Media

Brief Overview – Media

This brief overview does not replace the comprehensive descriptions. Safety messages and warnings, in particular, are not replaced by this brief overview.

For information on operating Porsche Communication Management (PCM):

- Please refer to chapter "Porsche Communication Management (PCM)" on page 175.

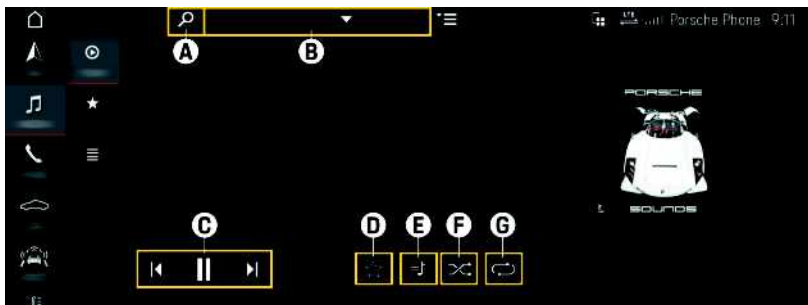













Fig. 126: Playing media

What do I want to do?	What do I have to do?	Where?
Load a media source	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Insert an SD card. – Connect an external device via USB. 	▸ p. 180
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Connect an external device via Bluetooth®. 	▸ p. 96
Find station/track/album (search relates to the currently selected media source)	▸ MEDIA ▸ Perform Media Search (see A) ▸ Enter the desired station/track.	–
Select media source/reception range	▸ MEDIA ▸ PLAY ▸ Call up media sources (see B) ▸ Select media source (e.g. DAB/FM).	–
Play/pause music	▸ MEDIA ▸ PLAY ▸ Select or (see C)	–
Play next/previous station/track	▸ MEDIA ▸ PLAY ▸ Select or .	–
Save station/track/album as favourite	▸ MEDIA ▸ (see D)	▸ p. 153

What do I want to do?	What do I have to do?	Where?
Display station/track list	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ MEDIA  ▶ LIST  <p>Depending on the selected media source, further subfolders such as Playlists, Artists are available.</p>	–
Activate online station tracking	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ MEDIA  ▶ DAB/FM  ▶ Options  ▶ Tuner settings ▶ Online station tracking¹. <p>In the case of poor reception, stations are automatically received online and  appears under the station name.</p>	–
Activate online additional data	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ MEDIA  ▶ Options  ▶ Tuner settings ▶ Online additional data¹. <p>With this option, additional metadata and album covers are displayed. More information is displayed in the PCM than in the instrument cluster.</p>	–
Activate DAB relaying	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ MEDIA  ▶ DAB/FM  ▶ Options  ▶ Tuner settings ▶ DAB relaying 	–

Playing media

Available radio and media sources

The radio supports the FM and DAB (digital radio) frequency ranges.

Depending on equipment, the following media sources are available: SD cards, external devices via USB or Bluetooth®, online media services, online radio.




Technical data on supported media and file formats:

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Porsche Communication Management (PCM)" on page 285.

Other functions during media playback



✓ **MEDIA**  ▶ **PLAY**  selected.

In addition to the functions from the brief overview, the following functions are available (Fig. 126):

- Display current playback list:  (see E)
- Activate random playback:  (see F)
- Repeat track:  (see G)
- Have similar music suggested: **Play More Like This**



Storing and editing a favourite

Storing a favourite







1. **MEDIA**  ▶ **FAV** 
2. Select the desired station/track from the **Recently played** area and move to the **Favourites** area via drag & drop.

1. Prerequisite: A data connection is established. Porsche Connect Services activated.

Organising favourites

1. MEDIA  ► FAV 
2. Press on the desired station/track and move to the desired position (drag & drop).




Deleting a favourite

1. MEDIA  ► FAV 
2. Select the desired station/track and move upwards from the **Favourites** display area via drag & drop.
– or –
If available, select the icon  under MEDIA 
► PLAY  /LIST  in order to delete a previously stored favourite from the **Favourites** area.

Retrieving program guide

Displaying program guide


- ✓ Media source **DAB** selected.

- MEDIA  ► LIST  ► Options  ►
Electronic program guide (EPG)
Information on digital programmes is displayed.

Navigating in the programme guide

- ✓ Programme guide displayed.
- Navigate in the programme guide by swiping vertically (scrolling) or using the rotary push button.
- Select Programme to display the details

Changing media settings

- MEDIA  ► Options  ► Select the required setting.

Mirror

Using the exterior mirrors

WARNING

Incorrect assessment of traffic situation due to distorted representation of surroundings in exterior mirrors

Vehicles or objects appear smaller in convex mirrors and further away than they are in reality. This may lead to incorrect assessment of the driving situation and an accident.

- ▶ Take account of distortion when estimating the distance of vehicles behind you and when parking.
- ▶ Use the interior mirror for judging distance as well.

CAUTION

Escaping electrolyte fluid

Electrolyte fluid may escape from a broken mirror. This fluid causes irritation to the skin and eyes.

- ▶ In the event of contact with the skin or eyes, immediately rinse off the electrolyte fluid using clean water.
- ▶ Seek medical attention from a doctor if necessary.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to paintwork, leather, plastic components and clothing.

Electrolyte fluid can only be removed while it is still wet.

- ▶ Clean affected parts with water.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the exterior mirrors when washing the vehicle in car washes.

- ▶ Fold in exterior mirrors before using the car wash.

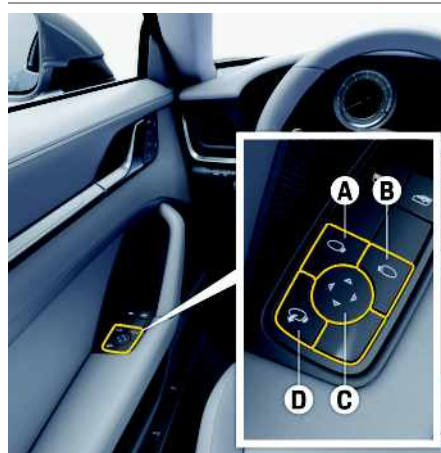



Fig. 127: Exterior mirror operation

- A** Exterior mirror selection on the left side
- B** Exterior mirror selection on the right side
- C** Adjusting exterior mirrors
- D** Folding exterior mirrors in and out (depending on equipment)

Adjusting exterior mirrors



Fig. 128: Adjusting exterior mirrors

- ✓ Ignition switched on.
 - or –
 - Ignition switched off, driver's or passenger's door not yet opened (for a maximum of 10 minutes).
1. Press button **A** for the left exterior mirror and button **B** for the right exterior mirror. As long as the  symbol on the selected button lights up red, the corresponding exterior mirror glass can be adjusted.
 2. Move the exterior mirrors to the correct position by pressing the adjustment button **C**.

If the electric function fails

- ▶ Adjust the mirrors by pressing on the mirror surface.

Folding exterior mirrors in and out

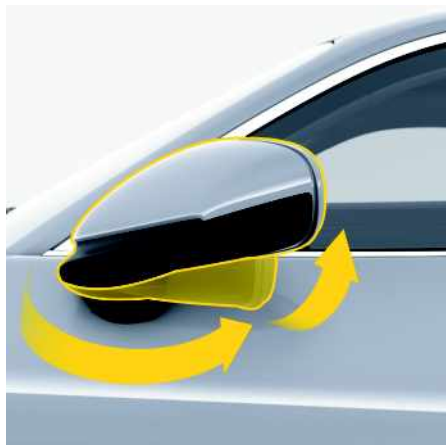


Fig. 129: Folding exterior mirrors in and out

Folding in exterior mirrors manually

- ▶ Swivel the mirror housing diagonally upwards by hand as far as it will go.

Folding out exterior mirrors manually

- ▶ Swivel the mirror housing diagonally downwards by hand as far as it will go.

Folding exterior mirrors in and out electrically (depending on equipment)


- ✓ Maximum speed of approx. 50 km/h (30 mph).
- ▶ Press button **D** (Fig. 127).
Both exterior mirrors fold in or out.

If the electrical folding function fails

- ▶ Fold mirror in or out manually.

Folding exterior mirrors in and out from the outside

The exterior mirrors can be folded in when the vehicle is locked.

- ▶ Press and hold the  button on the driver's key for at least 1 second.
In vehicles with Comfort Access: Touch the proximity sensor on the door handle of the driver's side for at least 1 second.
The exterior mirrors fold in.

Folding exterior mirrors out automatically

- ▶ Switch on ignition.
The exterior mirrors fold out automatically.

Folding exterior mirrors in and out automatically (depending on equipment)

The automatic folding in and out function of the exterior mirrors can be adjusted in the PCM.

Activating function

- ▶ **CAR**  ▶ **CONTROL**  ▶ **Vehicle** ▶ **Locking** ▶ **Fold-in mirrors**

Folding exterior mirrors in automatically

- ✓ Function activated.
- ▶ Lock the vehicle.
The exterior mirrors fold in automatically.

Folding exterior mirrors out automatically

- ✓ Function activated.
- ▶ Switch on ignition.
The exterior mirrors fold out automatically.

Information

The exterior mirrors will not fold out automatically after the ignition is switched on if they were folded in manually beforehand using button **D** (Fig. 127).

Storing exterior mirror settings

In vehicles with memory package, individual exterior mirror settings can be stored on the memory buttons on the driver's door and on the driver's key.

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Personal Settings" on page 169.

Switching automatic anti-dazzle function of exterior mirrors on and off

The exterior mirrors change to anti-dazzle position automatically in synchronisation with the interior mirror.

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Switching automatic anti-dazzle function of the interior mirror on and off" on page 158.

Swivelling down mirror glass as parking aid

On vehicles with memory package, the mirror on the **passenger's side** swivels down slightly to show the kerb area when reverse gear is engaged.



Fig. 130: Swivelling down mirror glass as parking aid

Swivelling down mirror glass automatically

Downward swivelling of the passenger side mirror glass can be adjusted in the PCM.

Activating function

- ▶ **CAR** ▶ **CONTROL** ▶ **Vehicle settings** ▶ **Light and visibility** ▶ **Reversing** ▶ **Lower mirror**

- ✓ Ignition switched on.
- ✓ Reverse gear is engaged.
- ✓ Function activated.

Swivelling down mirror glass manually

On vehicles with memory package the mirror glass on the passenger's side can be swivelled downwards.

1. Engage reverse gear.

The symbol for adjusting the exterior mirror on the passenger's side lights up.

2. Press button **B** for adjusting the exterior mirror on the right-hand side (on a right-hand drive vehicle press button **A**).

The mirror glass on the passenger's side swivels downwards.

Individually adjusting the position of the lowered mirror glass:

- ▶ Move the exterior mirror glass to the required position by pressing adjustment button **C**.

In vehicles with memory package, this setting is stored on the memory buttons in the driver's door or on the driver's key.

For information on retrieving and storing vehicle settings:

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Personal Settings" on page 169.

Moving mirror glass to its initial position

The mirror glass swivels back to its initial position:

- after a certain time delay, if the vehicle is shifted out of reverse gear, or
- immediately, if the vehicle reaches a speed of more than 15 km/h (9 mph).

Moving the mirror glass on the passenger's side to its initial position manually:

- ▶ Press button **A** for the exterior mirror on the driver's side.

Dimming interior mirror manually



Fig. 131: Dimming interior mirror manually

When the mirror is being adjusted, the anti-dazzle lever **A** must point towards the passenger compartment.

- ▶ Basic setting – swivel lever towards the passenger compartment.
- ▶ Anti-dazzle position – swivel lever towards the windscreen.

Switching automatic anti-dazzle function of the interior mirror on and off

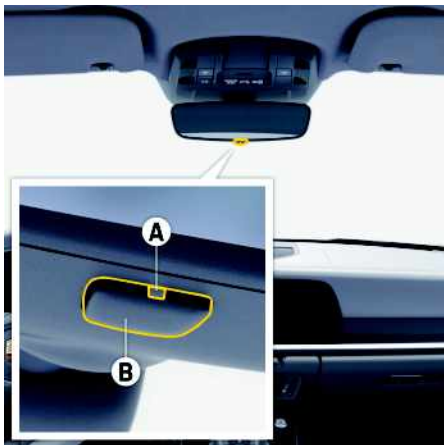


Fig. 132: Automatic anti-dazzle function of interior mirror

Switching on automatic anti-dazzle function

- ▶ Press button **B**.
The indicator light **A** lights up.
The interior mirror automatically changes to anti-dazzle position or reverts to its normal state, depending on the light intensity.

Information

The interior mirror does not dim when reverse gear is engaged **or** when interior lighting is switched on.

Switching off automatic anti-dazzle function

- ▶ Press button **B**.

The indicator light **A** goes out.

CAUTION

Escaping electrolyte fluid

Electrolyte fluid may escape from a broken mirror. This fluid causes irritation to the skin and eyes.

- ▶ In the event of contact with the skin or eyes, immediately rinse off the electrolyte fluid using clean water.
- ▶ Seek medical attention from a doctor if necessary.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to paintwork, leather, plastic components and clothing.

Electrolyte fluid can only be removed while it is still wet.

- ▶ Clean affected parts with water.

Navigation

Brief Overview - Navigation

This brief overview does not replace the comprehensive descriptions. Safety messages and warnings, in particular, are not replaced by this brief overview.

For information on operating Porsche Communication Management (PCM):

- Please refer to chapter "Porsche Communication Management (PCM)" on page 175.



Fig. 133: Entering/searching for a destination

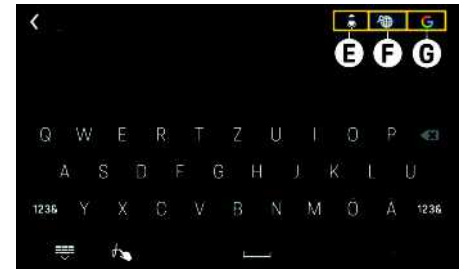


Fig. 134: Search options on the keyboard

What do I want to do?	What do I have to do?	Where?
Find a destination/enter a destination address	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ► Select NAV ► in the header (see A). – or – NAV ► DEST ► Destination input (see A) – Voice input (see E) – Integrated search: search in PCM memory and online content (see F) – Online search (availability dependent on country)¹: Internet search (see G) 	–
Select previous destination	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ► NAV ► DEST / FAV ► Recent destinations (see B) / My Destinations 	–
Enter POI	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ► NAV ► DEST ► Points of interest (see C) 	–

1. Prerequisite: A data connection is established. Online navigation and Porsche Connect services activated.

A	What do I want to do?	What do I have to do?	Where?
B C	Enter GPS coordinates	▶ NAV ▶ DEST ▶ Options (see D) ▶ Enter GPS coordinates	–
D E	Start/End route guidance	▶ NAV ▶ Enter destination ▶ Select Start route guidance or Stop	–
F G	Select a stored destination	▶ NAV ▶ FAV ▶ My Destinations	–
H I	Select a destination from contacts	▶ NAV ▶ FAV ▶ Contacts	–
J	Access map view	▶ NAV ▶ MAP	–
K	Display list of traffic information	✓ Route guidance active. ▶ NAV ▶ TRAFFIC	▷ p. 162
L M	Activate online navigation	▶ NAV ▶ Options ▶ Navigation settings ▶ Online navigation services ▶ Online navigation ¹	–
N	Activate intelligent detour	✓ Route guidance active. ▶ Activate NAV ▶ Options ▶ Intelligent detour .	▷ p. 162
O P Q	Use Porsche Connect services (e.g. online map update)	✓ Data connection established. Porsche Connect services activated. Further information on Porsche Connect can be obtained from ▷ www.porsche.com/connect	▷ p. 182
R S T	WARNING Risk of accident through disregarding road traffic laws	regulations always apply. The driver is always responsible for road safety. ▶ Always pay attention to the traffic situation.	WARNING Risk of accident owing to system-related inaccuracies and malfunctions
U V W X Y Z	If a recommended driving instruction contradicts the road traffic laws in force, the country-specific traffic	▶ Adapt your speed and driving style to the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.	Incorrect directions and malfunctions cannot be ruled out during satellite-based navigation. The

1. Data connection established. Porsche Connect services and Online navigation services are activated.

driver is always responsible for driving the vehicle.

- ▶ Always pay attention to the terrain.

Accepting destination from map

1. Select **NAV** ▶ **MAP** .
2. Touch the destination on the map for longer.
3. Select to start route guidance.

Planning a tour (entering a stopover)

A tour consists of one destination and one to eight stopovers.

Entering and starting a tour

1. **NAV** ▶ Enter destination ▶ **Start route guidance** .
2. **Options** ▶ **Edit route** ▶ **Add stopover** .
3. Enter or select a stopover.
4. **Add as stopover** ▶ **Start tour**.

Saving a tour

- ✓ Tour started.

- ▶ **Options** ▶ **Edit route** ▶ **Options** ▶ **Save tour**

Retrieving a tour

- ✓ Tour is stored.

1. **NAV** ▶ **FAV** ▶ **My Destinations**

2. **My Destinations** ▶ **Stored tours** ▶ Select desired tour.

Editing a tour

You can reorganise the stopovers at a later time.

- ✓ Tour started.

- ▶ Under **NAV** ▶ **DEST** ▶ **Options** ▶ **Edit route**, then press and hold the relevant stopover and move it to the desired position (drag & drop).

Smart routing

A smart route is created automatically as soon as an identical route is travelled twice.

Activating smart routing

1. **NAV** ▶ **Options** ▶ **Navigation settings**
2. Under **Smart routing**, activate the function **Smart routing**.

The symbol is displayed at the bottom right of the map.

Information

- Up to three destinations are created and up to three routes are available for each destination. Suggested routes are prioritised according to how frequently an identical route is travelled.
- The traffic situation for available smart routes is displayed depending on the current vehicle position.
- The PCM identifies whether the route is travelled during the week or at the weekend. Recorded smart routes are only displayed at the appropriate time - either at the weekend or on weekdays.
- Opening **Smart routing** stops active route guidance.

Accessing smart routing

- ✓ Smart routing activated.




1. **NAV** ▶ **MAP**
2. Select at the bottom right of the map
3. Select the desired smart route from the list of suggestions.
4. Select **Start** .

Deleting Smart routing

Stored smart routes remain stored after the function is deactivated and must be deleted.

- ▶ **NAV** ▶ **MAP** ▶ **Options** ▶ **Navigation settings** ▶ **Smart routing**

Configuring map content

1. NAV  ► MAP  ►  (in the header)
2. Activate/deactivate the desired map content (availability dependent on country):
 - **3D map:** Show or hide 3D map view (otherwise 2D view).
 - **Auto zoom:** Activate or deactivate Auto zoom function in the map.
 - **Satellite map:** Show or hide satellite view on the map.
 - **Weather¹:** Show or hide weather information on the map.
 - **Display points of interest:** Show or hide points of interest on the map.
 - **Compass:** Show or hide compass on the map.

Displaying traffic information


Displaying traffic information on the map¹

You can display the following traffic information on the current location or on the selected route on the map:

- **Hatched areas:** Indication of the length of the traffic disruption.
- **Coloured warning symbols:** Imminent traffic disruption on the selected route. If route guidance is not active, all current traffic disruptions are highlighted in colour.
- **Greyed-out warning symbols:** Traffic disruption which is not on the selected route.

Displaying list of traffic information



1. NAV  ► TRAFFIC 

The number displayed in the **TRAFFIC**  icon indicates the number of traffic notices on the selected route.

2. Select traffic notice.
 - or –
 - Select **Show all traffic notices** to display all traffic notices.

Avoiding traffic disruptions



Traffic disruptions can be automatically avoided or displayed in route guidance.

- Activate NAV  ► Options  ► Route options ► **Dynamic reroute/Refer to traffic notices.**

The radio station or online content providers are responsible for traffic notices. For that reason, no liability can be accepted for the completeness and correctness of the information.

Activating intelligent detour

- ✓ Route guidance active.

- Activate NAV  ► Options  ► **Intelligent detour.**
The section of the route ahead is avoided.

Displaying map view and navigation information on the instrument cluster

For information on operating the instrument cluster:

- Please refer to chapter "Operating the instrument cluster" on page 122.



Displaying and configuring the map display

1. Select the map view in the Car & Info display on the instrument cluster.
 - Please refer to chapter "D – Car & Info display" on page 120.
2. Select the desired view option via the multi-function steering wheel:
 - **Man. zoom:** Adjust the zoom factor for the map display.
 - **Auto zoom:** The map scale is adjusted automatically.
 - **3D map:** Three-dimensional map display.
 - **North up:** North is always at the top of the map.
 - **Map info:** If no map view is selected in the Car & Info display on the instrument cluster, the map is automatically displayed in the event of a navigation event.
 - **Arrow info:** If the **Navigation** menu is **not** selected in the Speed & Assist display on the instrument cluster, the menu is displayed automatically in the case of a navigation event.

Displaying navigation information in the instrument cluster

- Select the **Navigation** menu in the Speed & Assist display in the instrument cluster.
 - Please refer to chapter "A – Speed & Assist display" on page 120.

Changing navigation settings

- NAV  ► Options  ► **Navigation settings** ► Select the desired setting.

1. Prerequisite: A data connection is established. Porsche Connect services activated.

Toll devices



Fig. 135: Attaching toll devices

Attach the toll device at the marked position on the inside of the windscreen in order to guarantee optimum reception.

Night View Assist

WARNING

Lack of attention and failure to detect objects via Night View Assist

Night View Assist is a support system and cannot warn of an impending collision under all circumstances. Risk of accident!

Responsibility for timely braking and appropriate vehicle lighting for the situation always lies with the driver.

- ▶ Drive with extreme care.
- ▶ Always pay attention to the traffic situation and the area around the vehicle.

CAUTION

Night View Assist restricted or not available

Shocks or damage to the bumper, e.g. through parking bumps, can move the sensors. This may impair performance of the system.

- ▶ Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

The thermal imaging camera of the Night View Assist in the front of the vehicle provides a thermal image of the surroundings, which can be displayed in the Car & Info display in the instrument cluster. The system can detect persons and animals beyond the area illuminated by the headlights and highlight these in the camera image.

Because the thermal imaging camera is only sensitive in the heat radiation range, the image in the camera may differ significantly from the image as perceived by the human eye. Night View Assist detects persons and animals when it is sufficiently dark and at an ambient temperature of under 28 °C.

An impending collision or driving dangerously close past persons will trigger a warning within the limitations of the system limits. In this case, the system warns the driver visually and audibly. On vehicles with Porsche Dynamic Light System Plus, the endangered person is flashed at in order to enhance recognition.

Prior to an impending collision with wild animals outside urban areas, a warning is also issued within the limitations of the system. In this case, the system warns the driver visually and audibly.



Fig. 136: Night View Assist thermal image

The Porsche Night View Assist has the following functions:

- Display of the thermal image
- Pedestrian and animal warning

Pedestrian warning

If the system detects a possible collision with a pedestrian, it can warn the driver by means of a warning tone and an appropriate display in the instrument

cluster in the vehicle speed range up to 250 km/h (156 mph).




Fig. 137: Pedestrian warning on the instrument cluster.

The pedestrian warning is output if a pedestrian is standing or moving onto the driving lane. On vehicles with LED-Matrix headlights, the endangered person is flashed at in order to enhance recognition. In the event of this warning, it may still be possible to prevent a collision through the driver avoiding the pedestrian or braking sharply. The warning time varies according to the traffic situation and the driver's behaviour.

Animal warning

The animal warning reacts to hazards caused by wild animals, e.g. deer outside built-up areas. The animal warning is triggered if an animal is located in the projected driving lane or is in dangerously close proximity. In urban areas, the animal warning is automatically deactivated in order to prevent false warnings caused e.g. through leashed dogs.

Switching Night View Assist on and off

▶ ASSIST  ▶ Night View Assist

Setting collision warning and image adaptation

The warning time for the collision warning and the image parameters of the Night View Assist can be set on the PCM.

▶ ASSIST  ▶  ▶ Assistance system settings ▶ Night View Assist

Night View Assist status display

Symbol	Instrument cluster	Meaning
--------	--------------------	---------



Car & Info display

Indicates when the camera image is displayed that, owing to the prevailing ambient conditions (outside temperature and brightness), the system cannot reliably detect persons or animals. The warning function is currently not available.

Information

- ▶ Clean the thermal imaging camera of the Night View Assist in the front of the vehicle at regular intervals.

Cleaning Night View Assist camera



Fig. 138: Button for camera washer system

- ✓ Dipped/high beam is activated.
- ▶ Press button B under the wiper stalk.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

ParkAssist

When the driver is parking and manoeuvring the vehicle, ParkAssist indicates the distance between the vehicle and an obstacle by visual and audible means. The visual ParkAssist parking aid is displayed on the PCM. Obstacles in front of and behind the vehicle are shown using different-coloured fields. These fields show the shape of the obstacles and their distance from the vehicle.

WARNING Lack of attention when manoeuvring or parking

The increased comfort offered by ParkAssist must not induce you to take any safety risk. Despite ParkAssist, the driver is still responsible for taking due care when parking and when assessing obstacles. The system cannot replace the driver's attentiveness.

► Make sure that no persons, animals, obstacles or vehicles are within the manoeuvring area.

ParkAssist cannot detect the following things:

- sound-absorbing obstacles (e.g. wintry conditions, powder snow, clothing made from fabric or fur)
- sound-reflecting obstacles (e.g. glass surfaces and flat painted surfaces)
- very thin obstacles (e.g. thin posts)
- other ultrasound sources (e.g. pneumatic brakes of other vehicles, sweeping machines and jack hammers) can interfere with the detection of obstacles.
- obstacles if the sensors or cameras are very dirty.

Distance measurement



Fig. 139: Sensors for distance measurement

The ultrasonic sensors **A** on the front and rear bumper measure the distance from the closest obstacle. A detected obstacle is signalled by an **intermittent tone**. The intervals decrease as the obstacle is approached. If the distance drops to less than approx. 30 cm, a **continuous tone** sounds. Obstacles above and below the sensors cannot be detected.

The volume of the warning tones can be set in the PCM.

Activating ParkAssist

Activating automatically (up to a speed of approx. 15 km/h (9 mph))

- ✓ Ignition switched on.
- ✓ Reverse gear is engaged.
- or -

- ✓ Distance in front less than approx. 80 cm.
- or -
- ✓ Vehicle rolling backwards has been detected.

Activating manually

► ASSIST ► ParkAssist

Display in PCM



Fig. 140: ParkAssist display

Colour	Distance at front	Distance at rear
White	There are no obstacles in the path of the vehicle and the distance is > 30 cm.	
Orange	< 120 cm	< 180 cm

Colour	Distance at front	Distance at rear
Red	< 40 cm	< 40 cm
Red with continuous tone	< 30 cm	< 30 cm

For information on operating Porsche Communication Management (PCM):

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Porsche Communication Management (PCM)" on page 175.

Deactivating ParkAssist

Deactivating automatically

- ✓ P button on the selector lever is activated.

Enabling/disabling automatic activation

- ▶ ASSIST  ▶ Assistance system settings ▶ ParkAssist

Adjusting ParkAssist volume

- ▶ ASSIST  ▶ Assistance system settings ▶ ParkAssist

Reversing camera

The reversing camera facilitates monitoring of the area behind the vehicle during parking manoeuvres. The reversing camera image is displayed on the PCM.

WARNING

Danger of injury

The objects shown by the camera appear distorted. The red mark represents the rear of the vehicle. The

reversing camera image does not show the complete area behind the vehicle.

- ▶ Always pay attention to the entire vehicle surroundings.
- ▶ Make sure that no persons, animals, obstacles or vehicles are within the red area of the reversing camera image.

Activating the reversing camera

Automatically

- ✓ Ignition is switched on and reverse gear engaged.
 - or –
- ✓ Vehicle rolling backwards has been detected.

Manually

- ▶ ASSIST  ▶ ParkAssist

Automatically deactivating reversing camera

- ✓ Speed is higher than 15 km/h (9 mph).
 - or –
- ✓ P button on the selector lever is activated.

Surround View

WARNING

Danger of injury

The objects detected by the camera appear distorted. Many of the screen windows do not show the entire area around the vehicle.

- ▶ Always pay attention to the entire vehicle surroundings.
- ▶ Make sure that no persons, animals, obstacles or vehicles are within the manoeuvring area.

Surround View provides a birds' eye view of the vehicle and covers the area around the vehicle. Using

the cameras, obstacles or markings as well as the exact position of the vehicle are detected. When Surround View is active, the courtesy lighting is switched on for better illumination.

Activating Surround View




Automatically

- ✓ ParkAssist activated.

Manually

- ▶ ASSIST  ▶ ParkAssist

Select the desired view via the relevant symbol, e.g. **Rear**). The symbol for the active view is highlighted in red.

Symbol	View
	Parking (change front and rear view by tapping)
	Panorama (change front and rear view by tapping)
	Side

Information

In addition to the camera image, guide lines are superimposed on the front and rear camera views. These guide lines indicate the direction the vehicle can follow with the steering wheel in the current position. The guide lines change as the position of the front wheels changes.

- A
- B
- C
- D
- E
- F
- G
- H
- I
- J
- K
- L
- M
- N
- O
- P**
- Q
- R
- S
- T
- U
- V
- W
- X
- Y
- Z

Deactivating Surround View

- ▶ Deactivate ParkAssist.

Personal Settings

Ergonomic settings can be manually saved and retrieved via the memory buttons in the driver's door. In addition, individual driver profiles for automatically saving and retrieving ergonomic and comfort settings can be created via the PCM. Both functions can be used independently of one another.

Saving and retrieving personal settings

When the ignition is switched off, the settings previously made are automatically saved to the driver profile via the PCM and linked to the driver's key used. The settings are automatically retrieved via the driver's key when the door is unlocked. If you and others use the vehicle, it is advantageous to use one driver profile and driver's key per person. If necessary, the driver profiles can be changed manually. Additionally, up to three ergonomic settings can be manually saved and retrieved via the memory buttons in the driver's door.

Ergonomic settings affect:

seat, exterior mirror and steering wheel settings. Additionally, up to three ergonomic settings can be manually saved and retrieved via the memory buttons in the driver's door.

Comfort settings affect:

Ergonomic, air conditioning, light, vision, assistance-system, instrument cluster and infotainment settings.

Information

Specific functions cannot be personalised, to avoid damage to the vehicle (e.g. automatic activation of the rear window wiper when engaging reverse gear).

CAUTION

Retrieving automatic settings for seats, exterior mirrors and steering wheel

Parts of the body may be pinched or crushed if the settings are activated in an uncontrolled manner.

- ▶ Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended.
- ▶ Automatic retrieval of the **ergonomic settings** can be **cancelled** if necessary by pressing a memory button or a seat adjustment button.

Storing and retrieving comfort settings

Storing comfort settings

- ▶ When the ignition is switched off, the settings previously made are **automatically** saved to the driver profile in the PCM.

Retrieving comfort settings

- ▶ Unlock the vehicle.
The driver profile settings are retrieved.
– or –
- ✓ The vehicle is stationary.
- ▶ Change driver profile using the PCM.

If loading of the settings is interrupted:

- ▶ Select **Activate driver** via the PCM.

Managing driver profile

Up to 6 driver profiles and 1 guest profile can be created and managed.

When you start the PCM for the first time, the **Set-up wizard** is displayed and guides you through important steps for configuring the PCM. We recommend that you run the **Set-up wizard** fully to correctly create the first driver profile.

It is only possible to switch between the created driver profiles via the instrument cluster immediately after the ignition has been switched on and, when the ignition is on, at any time via the PCM.

Driver detection occurs automatically via the driver's key. A driver's key is always automatically assigned to an active profile.

Managing driver profiles

Driver profiles can be managed in the PCM.

▶ SET * ▶ Driver

- Add driver
- Edit driver
- Change driver
- Delete driver (via the Edit driver menu item)
- Activate driver
- Activate personalisation
- Deactivate automatic saving

If the activated personalisation settings do not match the current driver, it is recommended to switch to another, already created driver profile. If necessary, a new driver profile can be created and the vehicle settings then adjusted. This avoids inadvertent adjustment of vehicle settings in the first driver profile selected.

Storing and retrieving ergonomic settings

Storing ergonomic settings on the memory buttons

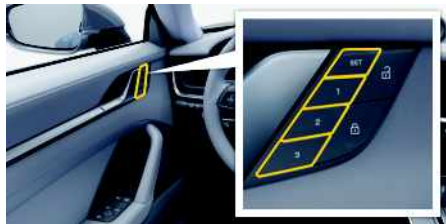


Fig. 141: Driver's door memory buttons

1. Press the **SET** button.

The inscription on the button lights up.

2. Press the relevant memory button **1**, **2** or **3** within 10 seconds.

The settings are stored.

Storage is acknowledged acoustically (driver's door only) and the lighting on the **SET** button goes out.

Retrieving ergonomic settings with memory buttons

- ▶ Press and hold the relevant memory button **1**, **2** or **3** until all settings are retrieved.
 - or –
- ✓ Ignition switched off.
- ✓ The driver's door is open.
- ▶ Briefly press the relevant memory button **1**, **2** or **3**.
 - The settings are automatically applied.

Porsche Active Safe (warning and brake assist)

Porsche Active Safe (PAS - warning and brake assist) can initiate measures to protect occupants and other road users in certain dangerous situations.

Porsche Active Safe includes the following functions¹:

- Distance warning (depending on equipment)
- Warning and braking functions
- Preventive occupant protection functions (depending on equipment)

The camera behind the windscreen captures the front vehicle environment. An imminent frontal collision with road users can be detected. The system warns the driver visually, acoustically and if necessary through a braking jolt. Where required, the system can support the driver's braking or initiate partial or full deceleration in order to reduce the collision speed or prevent the collision in some circumstances.

System limitations

The system can warn of impending front collisions within the system limits and initiate appropriate braking manoeuvres¹. Not all road users and dangerous situations can be recognised correctly and in time.

The lateral vehicle areas and the rear area are not monitored.

In complex driving situations, the system can give unwanted warnings and perform unwanted brake interventions.

The system is available above walking speed and can react to pedestrians up to a speed of

85 km/h (53 mph). It can react to vehicles up to a speed of 250 km/h (156 mph).

The system does not respond to animals, crossing vehicles, oncoming vehicles and objects such as bars, fences and rail vehicles.

The function is not available:

- When reversing.
- If the brake lights are defective.
- If the PSM malfunctions and PSM is switched off.
- If the airbag control unit malfunctions.

The function may be restricted, or unavailable:

- Up to 10 seconds after switching on the ignition.
- If the seat belts are not fastened.
- In sharp bends.
- In the presence of reflective objects such as guardrails or when entering a tunnel.
- In heavy rain, snow, fog and ice.
- In the event of damage to the windscreen.
- If the windscreen is dirty.

Switching Porsche Active Safe on/off

NOTICE


- ▶ Switch off Porsche Active Safe in the following situations:
 - When towing.
 - When driving off public roads.
 - When transporting, e.g. on a car transporter, train or ship.

▶ ASSIST  ▶ Porsche Active Safe

When Porsche Active Safe is switched off, the display appears on the instrument cluster.

Porsche Active Safe is activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.

Distance warning

If Porsche Active Safe detects a safety hazard due to following too close, the driver is warned through the  symbol on the instrument cluster¹.

Detection can take place in a vehicle speed range from approx. 65 – 250 km/h (40 – 156 mph).

Setting the distance warning

▶ ASSIST  ▶  ▶ Assistance system settings ▶ Porsche Active Safe

Warning and braking functions

The warning and braking functions can be activated in three stages.

- Collision warning (visual and acoustic)
- Acute warning (brake pressure)
- Automatic braking and brake assistance

1. Not available in some country versions.

Collision warning



Fig. 142: Collision warning on the instrument cluster

The collision warning warns the driver by means of a warning tone and a symbol on the instrument cluster.

Setting the collision warning

The collision warning can be switched off and on. The warning time can also be set.

- ▶ ASSIST  ▶  ▶ Assistance system settings ▶ Porsche Active Safe

Acute warning

If the driver does not respond to the collision warning, a braking jolt is performed in addition to the warning tone and the symbol on the instrument cluster.

With the braking jolt, the system draws attention to the increasing danger of collision.

In the event of this warning, it may still be possible to prevent a collision through the driver avoiding the pedestrian or braking sharply.

Automatic braking and brake assistance¹

If the driver does not respond to the acute warning or does not brake sufficiently, the warning and brake assist, supports the driver during braking or brakes the vehicle to a standstill with progressively increasing braking force.

Additionally, a warning tone is emitted and a symbol appears in the instrument cluster.

By reducing the vehicle speed, the consequences of a possible accident are mitigated.

Information

Automatic braking interventions can be aborted with the following measures:

- ▶ Pressing the brake pedal
- ▶ Fully depress the accelerator pedal
- ▶ steer actively

Information

Once the vehicle has reached a standstill, it is not held permanently by the brake system.

- ▶ If necessary, actuate the brake and resume control of the vehicle.

Preventive occupant protection function

Seat belt system optimisation

When driving off, the front seat belts are gently tightened in order to ensure an optimal position with regard to the occupants. Activation is performed when reaching a driving speed of approx. 30 km/h (20 mph) or when the seat belts are fastened again.

Preconditioning of the seat belt and passenger compartment

If a potentially hazardous accident situation is detected, the warning and brake assist can initiate measures to prepare for a possible collision in order to support the effectiveness of the passive passenger protection systems. For this purpose, depending on the situation, the front seat belts are reversibly pretensioned, windows are opened and (depending on equipment) the roof system is closed and the adaptive front seat side bolsters are inflated.

Within the system limits, the preventive occupant protection measures can be activated both during emergency braking initiated by the driver above a speed of approx. 30 km/h (20 mph) or through an automatic brake intervention initiated by the vehicle. As soon as the collision hazard has passed and a stable driving condition is achieved, the preconditioning measures are ended and existing seat belt tension is released again.

System limitations

In the case of repeated activation (e.g. in the context of driver safety training), the belt tension increases progressively so that it may no longer be possible to reliably release the belt tensioning. In this case,

1. Not available in some country versions.

unfasten and refasten the seat belt or deactivate Porsche Active Safe.

After an accident, the seat-belt pretensioner may be damaged. Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

In the event of restricted or switched-off the PSM functionality, the preventive warning and brake assist occupant protection functions are deactivated.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Porsche Active Suspension Management (PASM)

The Porsche Active Suspension Management (PASM) system actively adjusts the shock absorbers. The adjustable damper system selects the appropriate damping level for each wheel according to the driving situation and driving conditions. Driving safety, agility and comfort are optimised.

Two different chassis setups can be selected at the push of a button:

- "Normal chassis"
- "Sport chassis"

In Normal mode, the vehicle is in a sporty and comfortable setup.




The Sport mode offers very sporty shock absorber tuning, e.g. for driving on the race circuit.

In addition to manual mode selection, PASM also adjusts shock absorber tuning for either sporty or comfort driving, depending on the driving situation.

Selecting PASM mode



Fig. 143: PASM button in the switch panel

1. Switch on ignition.
2. Press  button (repeatedly).
 - The  button **does not light up red**: "Normal chassis" is selected (default setting).
 - The  button **lights up red**: "Sport chassis" is selected.

Information

The last selected chassis setup is stored in the memory after the ignition is switched off.

Responding to warning message

PASM faults are displayed on the instrument cluster.

- ▷ Please refer to chapter "Warning and Information Messages" on page 255.

Porsche Communication Management (PCM)

Brief Overview – PCM

This brief overview does not replace the complete information provided in this section.

Safety messages and warnings, in particular, are not replaced by this brief overview.



Fig. 144: Volume control and rotary push button

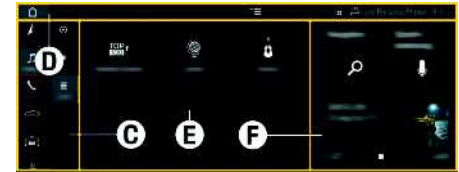









Fig. 145: Areas of the touch display

What do I want to do?	What do I have to do?	Where?
Switch on the PCM	▶ Switch on ignition or press volume control A .	–
Switch off the PCM	▶ Switch off ignition or press and hold volume control A .	–
Adjust the volume	▶ Turn volume control A . Mute: Briefly press volume control A .	–
Operate the PCM	▶ Operate the PCM with rotary push button B .	▶ p. 178
Use content from the main and sub-menus	▶ Use menu area C and interaction area E .	▶ p. 177
Use context-dependent search function and options, display connection and status symbols, navigate back	▶ Use status area D .	▶ p. 178
Open home screen	▶ Select status area D  .	▶ p. 177
Open and use Info Widget	▶ Open and use the Info Widget F in all menus.	▶ p. 178
Configure home screen/Info widget	▶  ▶ Options  ▶ Configure Home/Configure Info Widget	▶ p. 180

A	What do I want to do?	What do I have to do?	Where?
B	Call up Set-up wizard	When you start the PCM for the first time, the Set-up wizard is displayed and guides you through important steps for configuring the PCM.	–
C		▶ SET  ▶ Set-up wizard	
D			
E			
F	Activate/deactivate private mode	▶ SET  ▶ Porsche Connect ▶ Private mode	▷ p. 184
G			
H	Change system and vehicle settings	▶ CAR  ▶ CONTROL 	▷ p. 246
I			
J			
K			
L			
M			
N			
O			
P			
Q			
R			
S			
T			
U			
V			
W			
X			
Y			
Z			

Touch display in dashboard

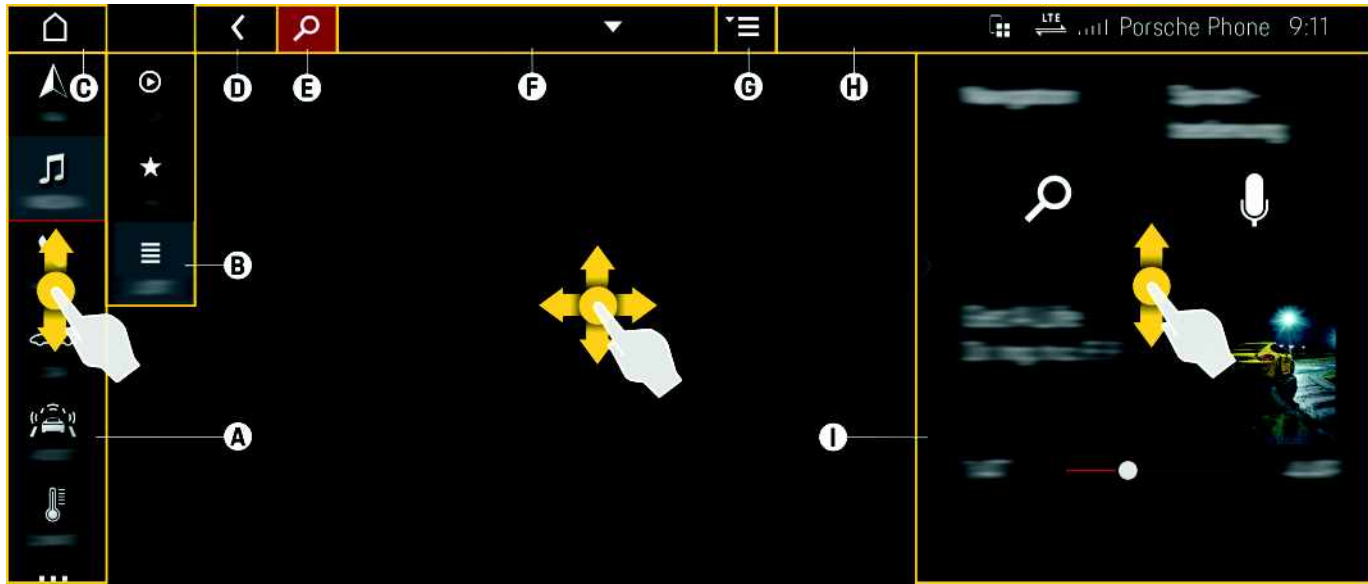


Fig. 146: Touch display controls in dashboard

A - Main menu

- Please refer to chapter "Opening menus" on page 178.

B - Sub-menu

Depending on the setting, the sub-menu is hidden and when your hand approaches the touch display, the main menu is displayed.

- Please refer to chapter "Vehicle Settings" on page 246.

C - Home screen

Factory set and individually set functions are displayed.

Content from different categories can be individually grouped in tiles. A tile contains either a direct jump to the relevant menu or direct access to a function. Various layouts can be configured. Please refer to chapter "Home screen and Info widget" on page 180.

D - Back

E - Context dependent search

F - Header with quick selection


e.g. display the selected media source. Tap to open the quick selection.

G – Options and most important settings for each menu item

H – Connection and status symbols

E.g. Display of various functions and the temperature or time. Tap to open the quick selection.

I – Info widget

When  is opened, the factory set and individually set functions are displayed. Swipe vertically to change Info widget.

Content from different categories can be individually grouped in tiles. A tile contains either a direct jump to the relevant menu or direct access to a function. Various layouts can be configured. Please refer to chapter "Home screen and Info widget" on page 180.

Important information on operation

The Porsche Communication Management (PCM) is the central control unit. To protect the battery, the PCM switches off automatically a few minutes after the ignition is switched off.

For safety reasons, some functions are only available when the vehicle is stationary.

WARNING

Setting and operating while driving

Setting and operating the multi-function steering wheel, infotainment system, etc. while driving may distract you from the traffic situation. You may lose

control of the vehicle.

- ▶ Only operate these components while driving if the traffic situation allows you to do so safely.
- ▶ In case of doubt, safely pull out of traffic and only carry out extensive operations and settings while the vehicle is stationary.

Operating the touch display

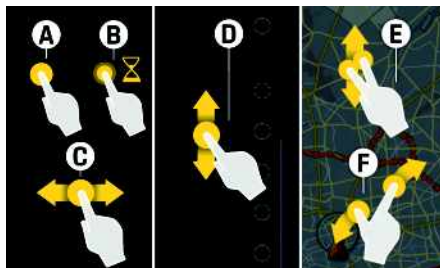


Fig. 147: Operating the touch display

A – Touch (select)

Briefly tap the touch display with your finger. Example: Select a function or check/uncheck a box.

B – Long press

Touch the touch display with your finger for longer. Example: Save station as a favourite in the Media main menu.

C – Horizontal swipe

Swipe the touchscreen horizontally with your finger. Example: Scroll favourites horizontally.

D – Vertical swipe (scroll and switch)

Swipe the touchscreen vertically with one finger. Example: Manually scroll through lists or change Info widget.

E – Vertical swipe (switch)

Swipe the touchscreen vertically using two fingers to tilt the map in the Navigation main menu.

F – Zoom

Move two fingers apart or closer together. Tapping the touch display twice zooms in on that section.

Operating PCM with rotary push button and buttons



Fig. 148: Operating the rotary push button


- ▶ Turn the rotary push button **A** until the desired function is highlighted.
- ▶ Press the rotary push button **A** to activate the highlighted function.
- ▶ Use button **B** to go back one level.
- ▶ Use button **OPT C** to call up the most important settings for each menu item

Opening menus

Opening main menu


- ▶ Select menu in the touch display (e.g. NAV ).

Calling up sub-menu

- ▶ Select menu item in the touch display (e.g. **MAP** ).

Opening the settings for each menu item

- ✓ Desired menu is selected.

- ▶ Select Options .
Settings and other functions of the relevant menu are displayed.

Setting time or temperature display

- ▶ Select time **9:11** or temperature in the headline to adjust the display.

To adjust the PCM and the display brightness:

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Vehicle Settings" on page 246.

Entering text and characters

As soon as you need to enter text or characters, e.g. for entering a navigation destination or search term, an input field is displayed.

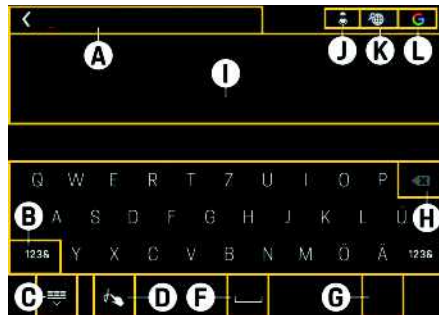


Fig. 149: Touch display keyboard



- A** Current cursor position
- B** Toggle between entry of letters, numbers and special characters
- C** Show and hide keyboard
- D** Freehand entry (enter letters or characters using the touch display)
- E** Adapt keyboard (availability dependent on country)
- F** Insert space
- G** Confirm entry
- H** Delete entry
- I** Results list
- J** Voice input
- K** Integrated search (search in PCM and online content)
- L** Online search (availability dependent on country)

There are various options for entering text and characters:

Entry using the keyboard

1. Select the input field.
The touch display keyboard appears.
2. Enter the desired text or characters.
3. To enter accents, umlauts, etc. press the desired letters for longer.
A window then opens containing accents, umlauts, etc. for these letters.

Entry via the rotary push button


1. Turn the rotary push button (Fig. 148) until the desired letter or character is highlighted.
2. Press the rotary push button to enter the highlighted letter or character.
3. Jump to the results list from the character input field using the button .
4. Using the button  jump from the results list to the input field.

Entry via free form writing

The free form writing feature has handwriting recognition and enables you to write text and characters directly with your finger.



Fig. 150: Freehand entry

1. Select  to open the input field.
2. Write the desired characters with your finger.
3. To enter a space, swipe your finger from left to right (with Arabic as the menu language: note the writing direction).
4. To delete a space, swipe your finger from right to left (with Arabic as the menu language: note the writing direction).

Entry via voice control

Text and numbers can also be entered using voice control (e.g. for dialling a phone number or entering a navigation destination).

- ▷ Please refer to chapter "Voice Control" on page 248.

Home screen and Info widget

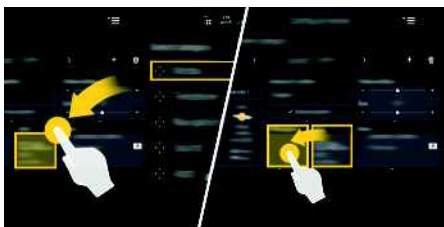


Fig. 151: Configuring Home screen

Configuring Home screen

1. ▶ Options ▶ **Configure Home**
2. Select the desired category, hold and drag any tile in the left-hand layout by drag & drop.
3. Swipe in the tile to select the desired display contents.
4. If you wish to remove a tile from the left-hand layout, drag the relevant tile upwards using drag & drop or replace it with another tile.

Select **Switch layout** to configure the home screen layout.

Information

A tile can also be moved to any other tile (drag & drop).

Deleting tiles in Home screen

- ▶ ▶ Options ▶ **Activate delete mode**

Configuring Info widget

1. ▶ Options ▶ **Configure Info Widget**
2. Select the desired category, hold and drag any tile in the left-hand layout by drag & drop.
3. Swipe in the tile to select the desired display contents.
4. If you wish to remove a tile from the left-hand layout, drag the relevant tile upwards using drag & drop or replace it with another tile.

Select **Switch layout** to configure the Info widget layout.

Information

A tile can also be moved to any other tile (drag & drop).

Deleting tiles in Info widget

- ▶ ▶ Options ▶ **Configure Info Widget** ▶ Options ▶ **Activate delete mode**

Opening manual in PCM

- ✓ The vehicle is stationary.

- ▶ **CAR** ▶ **CONTROL** ▶ **Drivers's Manual**

Notes on interfaces and externally connected devices

- If a storage device contains a large number of files, folders or playlists, it may take longer to load media tracks for the first time.
- Audio files are automatically displayed with stored additional information (e.g. artist, title, album cover) during playback. If this information is not available on the medium in question, an available Internet database is used. Despite this, certain additional information may not be displayed.
- Do not use USB extension cables or adapters. These impair the functionality.
- USB hubs are not supported.
- Porsche will not assume any liability for damaged or lost files or media.

Technical data on supported media and file formats:

- ▷ Please refer to chapter "Porsche Communication Management (PCM)" on page 175.

Ports

Using ports in the armrest

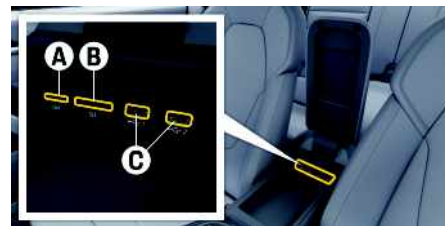


Fig. 152: Ports in the armrest

- A SIM card reader
- B SD card reader
- C USB ports

Inserting and removing a SIM card

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Using the PCM for making phone calls with an external SIM card" on page 224.




Inserting an SD card

NOTICE

Risk of damage to PCM if SD cards are not used properly.

If you use SD cards with adapters, there is a risk of the SD card falling out of the adapter if shaken, and individual card pieces getting stuck in the SD card reader.




- ▶ Only use single-piece SD cards.

1. Insert the SD card into SD card reader **B** with the label facing up, until it locks into place.
2. Under **MEDIA**  ▶ **PLAY**  ▶  (in the header) select the desired media source.

Removing an SD card

- ▶ Push on the inserted SD card and remove it.

Connecting an external device via USB

1. Open the armrest.
2. Connect an external device (e.g. iPod, USB storage medium) to the USB interface **C**.
3. Under **MEDIA**  ▶ **PLAY**  ▶  (in the header) select the desired media source.
4. Adjust the volume on the external device and on the PCM as required.


Porsche Connect

Various use options are available depending on model, country and equipment. The features described here are therefore not available in all models, countries and equipment versions.

Depending on the country, data connection can be established via the embedded SIM card, an external SIM card or an external WiFi hotspot. The currently active data connection is shown in the status line of the PCM and in the device manager.

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Porsche Communication Management (PCM)" on page 175.
- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Device Manager" on page 96.

Establishing data connection via embedded SIM card (availability dependent on country)

- ✓ The SIM card reader is **empty**.
- ✓ PCM phone switched on (SET  ▶ **Porsche Connect** ▶ **Switch on telephone function**).

The data connection is established immediately when the ignition is switched on.

Information

If a data connection cannot be established, check the following:

- PCM phone is switched on.
- The vehicle is in an area with sufficient network reception (not a coverage blackspot).
- ▶ Restart the PCM if necessary.

Displaying data packages

- ▶ **APPS**  ▶ **Data packages**

Information about the booked data package is displayed in some markets.

Establishing data connection via external SIM card

An inserted external SIM card deactivates the function of the embedded SIM card (availability dependent on country). Additional costs may be incurred for the data connection (e.g. due to data roaming).


NOTICE

If you are using a SIM card adapter, the SIM card may fall out of the adapter due to vibrations and components of the card may get stuck in the drive.

- ▶ Do not use adapters for SIM cards.



Fig. 153: SIM card in the armrest

- ✓ PCM phone switched on (SET  ▶ **Porsche Connect** ▶ **Switch on telephone function**).

1. Insert external SIM card **B** (mini-SIM, dimensions: 25 x 15 mm). The missing corner must be at the front left with the chip facing downwards.
2. SIM card **with** PIN:
 - a. If necessary, enter the PIN for the external SIM card and confirm with **OK**.

- b. Select **Store PIN**.

3. Confirm the prompt for establishing the data connection.

The data connection is established.

4. To remove the external SIM card, press on the inserted card and remove it.

Information



If a data connection cannot be established, check the following:

- PCM phone is switched on.
- External SIM card has sufficient data volume and is inserted correctly.
- External SIM card is not damaged and is working properly.
- APN settings (Internet access) are correct. The APN settings can be checked by contacting the network operator.
- Abroad: Data roaming is allowed on the external SIM card and enabled in the PCM.
- The vehicle is in an area with sufficient network reception (not a coverage blackspot).
- ▶ Restart the PCM if necessary.

Selecting access point for external SIM card


If several access points are available, the message **Several access points (APN) are available. Please select one** appears. A list of available access points (APNs) is displayed.




1. Select the desired access point (APN).
2. If there is no access point configured, contact the mobile phone provider to obtain the APN settings. To configure the APN settings, select

 or  (depending on the connection)

status) ▶ Options  ▶ **Data Connections** ▶ **Reset access point configuration** in the header.

Establishing data connection via an external WiFi hotspot (availability dependent on country)




- ✓ The SIM card reader is **empty**.
- ✓ Vehicles with embedded SIM card (availability dependent on country): PCM phone is switched off (**SET**  ▶ **Porsche Connect** ▶ **Switch off telephone function**).

1. Select  or  in the header (depending on the connection status) ▶ Options  ▶ **WiFi** ▶ **Search for WiFi hotspot**
2. Select a WiFi hotspot (e.g. public hotspot or the mobile phone's personal hotspot) and enter WiFi access data in the PCM. When entering the data, pay attention to upper and lower case. A connection is established to the external WiFi hotspot.

Activating the PCM WiFi hotspot (wireless Internet access)

Up to eight WiFi devices can be connected to the vehicle hotspot.

- ✓ Data connection successfully established via the embedded SIM card or external SIM card.
- ✓ Data connection via embedded SIM card (availability dependent on country): relevant data plan booked.

1. Select  or  in the header (depending on the connection status) ▶ Options  ▶ **Vehicle hotspot**.

WiFi access data of the PCM (device name and WiFi password) is displayed.

2. Enter the WiFi access data of the PCM into the WiFi settings on the device. A connection is established to the PCM's wireless Internet access.

Using Porsche Connect

A data connection is required in order to use Porsche Connect services.

- ▷ Please refer to chapter "Porsche Connect" on page 182.

Information

More information about Porsche Connect (help videos, Porsche Connect operating instructions and questions & answers) can be found at www.porsche.com/connect and in the "Good to know" app (availability dependent on country).

Activating Porsche Connect services

Before starting to use the Porsche Connect services for the first time, they must be activated.

- ▷ Activate Porsche Connect Services under www.porsche.com/connect.

Using services in the navigation system and voice control system

- Online search function for entering navigation destinations as well as loading portal POIs and other POI categories from My Porsche.
- Additional map display.
- Realtime traffic provides information on accidents, roadworks, traffic flow information and other incidents from the Internet.




- Online voice search as well as dictating messages.

Using services in the APPS menu

- ▷ Select **APPS** . Available services are displayed.



Logging Porsche Connect user (Porsche ID) into PCM

The Porsche ID is linked to the PCM using a pairing code. This is required for using some Connect services in order to retrieve personal settings from My Porsche.

1. **APPS**  ▶ Options  ▶ **Porsche ID settings** ▶ **Link new Porsche ID**
2. Enter the pairing code that is displayed after you have successfully activated the services under My Porsche. User is logged in and the symbol  appears in the header.



Porsche Connect Managing user (Porsche ID) in PCM

- ✓ A Porsche Connect user created and registered.

- ▷ **APPS**  ▶ Options  ▶ **Porsche ID settings** ▶ Select the desired action:

- **Link ID**
- **Remove**
- **Settings**
- **Porsche ID logout**: The currently logged in user is logged out.

Displaying service overview

- ▶ **APPS**  ▶ Options  ▶ **Service information**
Information about the services purchased and contract duration is displayed.

Using Porsche apps

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Apps" on page 41.

Information

- The Porsche Connect services (including the Car Connect services, but not the Safety and Security services) offer a free inclusive period, which varies in length for each services package and country, but is always at least 3 months. Further information about the free inclusive periods as well as subsequent costs and information about the availability of individual services for your country is available online at www.porsche.com/connect or from your Porsche partner.
- Depending on the country, the Porsche Connect Services can be used via the integrated SIM or via a data-enabled, external SIM card. A separate, fee-based contract with a mobile phone provider is required for the external SIM card.
- You may incur additional charges when receiving data packages from the Internet, depending on your mobile phone tariff and whether you are abroad. A flat-rate data plan is recommended.
- The availability, scope and provider of the services may vary depending on the country, model year, device and tariff.

Changing Porsche Connect settings


- ▶ **SET**  ▶ **Porsche Connect** ▶ Select the desired setting:

- **Porsche ID settings**
- **Remote access authorisation:** Prerequisite for using service control programmes (My Porsche, Porsche Connect App or Porsche Car Connect App (available depending on country)) and activating private mode.
- Activate or deactivate **Private mode** globally or for individual services.
Please refer to chapter "Private mode" on page 184.
- **Switch on telephone function/Switch off telephone function:** Switch PCM phone on or off.

Private mode

Communication between the vehicle and the Porsche Connect App as well as My Porsche is suppressed when privacy mode is active. No vehicle-specific information is transmitted. This means that no vehicle settings can be configured using the app or My Porsche.

Activating private mode

- ✓ Remote access authorisation issued (**SET**  ▶ **Porsche Connect** ▶ **Remote access authorisation**).

- ▶ **SET**  ▶ **Porsche Connect** ▶ **Private mode**

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Porsche Connect App" on page 41.

If there is no active contract for the vehicle, the **Porsche Connect** menu item is greyed out. Despite activated private mode, location information for the

vehicle can be transmitted in the event of a breakdown or emergency call as well as theft.

- ▶ Please inform all persons using the vehicle that communication may be disabled.

Porsche Stability Management (PSM)

Porsche Stability Management (PSM) is an active control system for stabilising the vehicle in extreme driving situations. It is automatically enabled when the engine starts. PSM makes use of both the Automatic Brake Differential (ABD) and Anti-slip Regulation (ASR) systems, as well as the functions of the Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) and engine drag torque control system (MSR).

WARNING


Loss of control over the vehicle

Risk of accidents due to inappropriate speed cannot be reduced by PSM.

The increased safety that is provided should not induce you to take greater risks with your safety. The limits set by the physics of driving cannot be overcome, even with PSM.

- ▶ Despite the advantages of PSM, the driver is responsible for adapting his or her driving style and manoeuvres in line with road and weather conditions, as well as the traffic situation.

The events below inform the driver of PSM control operations:

- PSM warning light  flashes on the instrument cluster.
- Hydraulic noises can be heard.
- The vehicle decelerates and steering-wheel forces are altered as PSM controls the brakes.
- Engine power is reduced.
- The brake pedal pulsates and its position is changed during braking. To achieve full vehicle deceleration, the foot pressure must be increased after the brake pedal starts to pulsate.

Automatic Brake Differential (ABD)

If one wheel of a driven axle starts to spin, it is braked so that the other wheel on the same axle can be driven.

Anti-slip Regulation (ASR)

The Anti-slip Regulation system prevents the wheels from spinning by adjusting the engine power, thereby ensuring good lane-holding ability and stable handling.

Engine drag torque control (MSR)

In conditions of excessive slip, the engine drag torque control system prevents all driven wheels from locking up when the vehicle is overrunning. This is also the case for downshifts on a slippery road.

Steering torque pulse

The steering torque pulse provides the driver with steering assistance when braking on road surfaces with differing friction values.

Additional steering forces also assist the driver during countersteering.

Activating PSM Sport


- ✓ Vehicles with Sport Chrono package



During PSM Sport operation, the system switches to a particular sporty mode.

WARNING

Limited PSM support

In PSM Sport mode, PSM support is limited in critical driving situations outside the ABS control range.

- ▶ PSM Sport should always be switched off during "normal" driving.
- ▶ Press the  button briefly.

The PSM OFF warning light  on the instrument cluster comes on. The button  lights up red. A message stating that PSM Sport is activated appears on the instrument cluster.

Switching PSM off

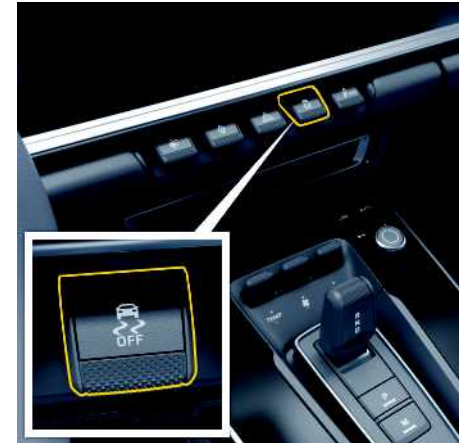



Fig. 154: PSM OFF button in the switch panel



WARNING

No PSM support

When PSM is switched off, PSM support is no longer provided in critical driving situations outside the ABS control range.

- ▶ PSM should always be switched on during "normal" driving.
- ▶ Briefly press the  button (vehicles with Sport Chrono package: press the button for at least 2 seconds). PSM is switched off after a short delay.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

The PSM OFF warning light  on the instrument cluster comes on. The button  lights up red. A warning message appears on the instrument cluster indicating that PSM is switched off.

Information

When you brake in the ABS control range, the vehicle is stabilised even when PSM is switched off. One-sided spinning of the wheels is prevented, even with PSM switched off.

However, it may be advantageous to switch off PSM temporarily in exceptional situations:


- On loose ground and deep snow.
- When "rocking the vehicle free".



If the slide/tilt roof is open and the PSM is switched off, the PSM is switched on again when a speed of approx. 160 km/h (100 mph) is exceeded.

Information

When PSM Sport mode is active, it is only possible to switch to PSM OFF mode if the PSM was activated beforehand.

Switching PSM back on

- ▶ Press button . PSM is active immediately.

The PSM OFF warning light  in the instrument cluster and the red lighting of the  button go out.

A message appears on the instrument cluster indicating that PSM is switched on.

ABS brake system (Anti-lock Brake System)

WARNING

Loss of control over the vehicle

ABS does not reduce the risk of accidents owing to an inappropriate driving speed.

The increased safety provided should not induce you to take greater risks with your safety. The limits set by the laws of driving physics cannot be overcome, even with ABS.

- ▶ Despite the advantages of ABS, the driver is responsible for adapting his or her driving style and manoeuvres in line with road and weather conditions, as well as the traffic situation.

ABS ensures:

- Full steering control: The vehicle remains steerable.
- Good driving stability: no skidding by blocking wheels.
- Optimal braking distance: Shorter stopping distances in most cases.
- Prevention of wheel locking: No flat spots on the tyres.

Position

The decisive advantage of ABS lies in the driving stability and manoeuvrability of the vehicle in hazardous situations.

ABS prevents the wheels from locking during full braking on virtually all road surfaces until just before the vehicles come to a standstill.

ABS begins to take control as soon as one wheel shows a tendency to lock.

This controlled braking process is comparable with extremely rapid cadence braking.

A pulsating brake pedal and a "juddering noise" alert the driver to adapt his or her driving speed to the road conditions.

Full braking is necessary:

- ▶ Fully depress the brake pedal during the entire braking operation, despite the pulsing pedal. Do not reduce the braking pressure.

Responding to warning message

For information on the ABS warning light :

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Warning and Information Messages" on page 255.

Multi-collision braking

During an accident, multi-collision braking can help the driver reduce the risk of skidding and further collisions during the accident through automatically initiated braking.

Prerequisites

Multi-collision braking only works:

- in the event of front, side and rear-end collisions.
- if the airbag control unit detects a corresponding activation threshold during an accident.
- if an accident occurs when the vehicle is travelling at a speed of more than approx. 10 km/h (6 mph).

Information

PSM automatically brakes the vehicle provided the hydraulic brake system PSM, and the electrical system are not damaged and are still working after the accident.

Exceptional conditions

The following activities prevent automatic braking in the event of an accident:

- When the driver noticeably presses on the accelerator pedal.
- When the braking pressure exerted by the driver on the brake pedal is stronger than the brake pressure applied by the system.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Porsche Vehicle Tracking System (PVTS)

PVTS is a GSM/GPS-based tracking system that allows a Security Operating Centre (SOC) to locate the vehicle if it is stolen. It can then be found by the authorities.

As soon as PVTS detects a theft alarm, the location of the vehicle in question is sent to the Security Operating Centre (SOC). There are two different PVTS equipment variants:

- **PVTS Plus** with Driver Card
- **PVTS** without Driver Card

The PVTS vehicle equipment is affected by the insurance and legal requirements in the relevant country. If you have questions about the installed PVTS variant:

- ▶ Contact your Porsche partner.

Information

On vehicles with the Porsche Connect smartphone app or Car Connect (country-dependent), some PVTS Plus settings can be implemented directly using the app or at www.porsche.com/connect.

Detailed information on installation, the functions and management of the contract can be found at: www.porsche.com/connect.

Scope of delivery and initial activation

PVTS is tested by your Porsche partner and activated together with the vehicle owner.

Following activation, the vehicle owner receives important details, such as the telephone number of the local Security Operating Centre (SOC) and of your service provider.

Detailed information on activating the system is available at www.porsche.com/connect or from a Porsche partner.

Functions

Vehicle tracking is only carried out if the vehicle is stolen. In this case, a notification is sent to the specified mobile phone number. The location of the vehicle is not specified in the notification for safety reasons.

- ▶ Contact the Security Operating Centre (SOC) if your vehicle is stolen. In addition, report the theft to the competent police authority.

The following alarms can be set:

- **Unauthorised movement of the vehicle:** The vehicle is moved when the ignition is switched off. On vehicles with Driver Card: The vehicle is moved without a Driver Card.
- **Sabotage:** PVTS was used without authorisation.
- **Break-in alarm:** The alarm system was triggered and has been active for more than 15 seconds.

Information

- There is no guarantee that the theft of a vehicle will always be detected.
- The PVTS alarm can be triggered even if the vehicle battery is flat.

Information

Note for Belgium / Luxembourg:

If the Driver Card remains in the parked vehicle for longer than 30 minutes, it becomes invalid. In order to reactivate the card, disarm mode must be activated via the app, customer portal or Security Operating Centre (SOC).

Information

- If the vehicle was stolen, the Security Operating Centre (SOC) can prevent the engine from starting.
- On vehicles with the Porsche Connect smartphone app or Car Connect (depending on country), access to the vehicle using the app or on My Porsche is blocked in the event of theft.

Operating PVTS without Driver Card

When PVTS is operated normally, no intervention on your part is required.

Operating PVTS Plus with Driver Card

PVTS Plus can be activated and deactivated automatically using a Driver Card.

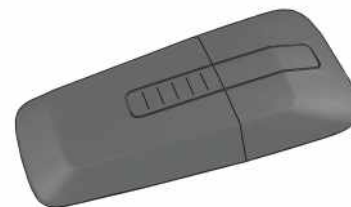


Fig. 155: PVTS Plus Driver Card

Activating PVTS Plus with Driver Card

- ▶ Switch off the ignition and take the Driver Card with you when you leave the vehicle.

If the Driver Card is far enough away from the vehicle, PVTS Plus will be activated after approx. 70 seconds.

Theft of the vehicle can be detected.

Deactivating PVTS Plus with Driver Card

- ▶ Store the Driver Card in the centre console of the vehicle or keep it on your person. PVTS Plus is deactivated when a Driver Card is located in the vehicle.

Information

- Do not put the Driver Card in the luggage compartment or engine compartment or near metal, e.g. coins.
- Do not put the Driver Card near a mobile phone.
- Vehicles are very often stolen using stolen driver's keys. Do not attach the Driver Card to the driver's key.

Information

The PVTS Plus can detect up to 7 Driver Cards per vehicle. Only one Driver Card must be present in the vehicle. If you wish to add, delete or replace a Driver Card:

- ▶ Contact your Porsche partner.

Driver Card malfunction

In exceptional cases (e.g. interference from radio waves), the Driver Card may not be detected. A warning message appears on the instrument cluster.

Driver Card emergency deactivation

- ▶ If PVTS Plus cannot be deactivated using the Driver Card (e.g. if the Driver Card battery is flat or the Driver Card was lost), contact the Security

Operating Centre (SOC) and get the Security Operating Centre (SOC) personnel to deactivate the system, or activate "Disarm mode" using the app or at www.porsche.com/connect.

Transport

If the vehicle is transported with the ignition switched off (e.g. on a ferry), transport mode must be activated.

If the vehicle is not transported in transport mode, the system may trigger a false alarm, which is also subject to charge (further information is available at www.porsche.com/connect).

Activating and deactivating transport mode

- ▶ Contact the Security Operating Centre (SOC) before transporting the vehicle and when you have finished transporting the vehicle.
 - or –
- ▶ Via the Porsche Connect smartphone app, Car Connect (depending on country) or at www.porsche.com/connect before transporting the vehicle and when you have finished transporting the vehicle.

Service

PVTS must be set to vehicle servicing mode in the following situations:

- During customer service (e.g., for regular servicing)
- When the vehicle battery is disconnected

If the vehicle is not serviced in vehicle servicing mode, the system can trigger a false alarm, for which you may be billed (further information is available at www.porsche.com/connect).

Activating and deactivating service mode

- ▶ Contact the Security Operating Centre (SOC) before having the vehicle serviced and after the vehicle has been serviced.
- ▶ When your vehicle is being serviced, please inform the relevant employee at the qualified specialist workshop or the Porsche partner that your vehicle is equipped with PVTS.

In addition:

 - ▶ PVTS Plus with Driver Card: Hand the Driver Card with the driver's key to Customer Service to ensure that PVTS Plus is deactivated.

Information

In the case of vehicle equipment PVTS Plus, the Driver Card and driver's key must be handed to Customer Service to ensure that PVTS Plus is deactivated for a service.

Changing Driver Card battery

If the battery in the Driver Card is too weak, a text message will be sent automatically to the specified mobile phone number. A message appears on the instrument cluster.

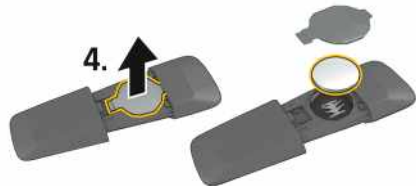
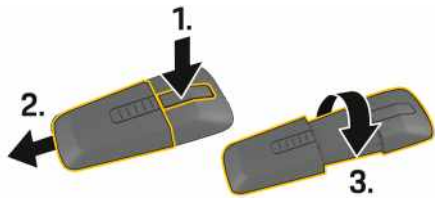


Fig. 156: Changing PVTS Plus Driver Card battery

WARNING

Internal burns or death from swallowing the lithium button cell

The driver's key contains a lithium button cell (battery).

Swallowing the battery can cause internal burns within two hours and this can result in death.

- ▶ Keep removed or new batteries out of reach of children.
- ▶ Keep the driver's key away from children. Children might open the driver's key and remove the battery.
- ▶ If the battery is swallowed or inserted into a bodily orifice, seek medical attention from a doctor immediately.

Card using a suitable tool (e.g. a screwdriver) (4.).

3. Change the battery (check polarity).
4. Assemble the Driver Card and press it together firmly. Make sure that the cover on the Driver Card has engaged securely.

1. Remove the cover of the Driver Card (1. – 3.).
2. Carefully open the battery cover on the Driver

Refuelling

General information

WARNING

Risk of fire when refuelling

Fuel is highly flammable and can deflagrate or explode.

- ▶ Fire, naked flame and smoking are prohibited when handling fuel.

WARNING

Fuel vapours and skin contact with fuel.

Fuel and fuel vapours are harmful to health.

- ▶ Do not inhale fuel vapours.
- ▶ Avoid contact with skin or clothing.

Information

Some fuels have a high sulphur content. Combustion in the engine can therefore cause unpleasant odours under certain driving conditions (so-called "rotten egg smell"). Porsche is not responsible for this characteristic and it does not point to a defect in the vehicle.

When the ignition is on, the fuel level is displayed on the instrument cluster.

If the amount is less than a model-dependent remaining quantity, a warning message appears on the instrument cluster.

- ▶ Refuel at the next opportunity.
- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Technical Data" on page 280.

Selecting suitable fuel

NOTICE

Unsuitable fuels may damage the engine as well as the fuel and exhaust system.

- ▶ Only use fuel according to the specification below.
- ▶ Do **not** use fuels containing methanol.

Information

Information regarding fuel quality can normally be found on the fuel pump. Petrol station employees can also provide information.

The engine is designed for **unleaded fuels without metallic additives**.

Model	Recommended fuel	Alternative fuel
	Octane rating of at least:	
All	98 RON/ 88 MON	95 RON/ 85 MON

The engine is suitable for operation with fuel

containing up to 10 % ethanol. Use of fuels containing ethanol can lead to increased fuel consumption.



Information regarding fuel quality can normally be found on the fuel pump. Petrol station employees can also provide information.

Information

If the recommended fuel is not available, **unleaded fuels without metallic additives with octane numbers of 91 RON/82.5 MON** can be used in an emergency. However, this could reduce performance and increase fuel consumption.

- ▶ **Use unleaded fuels without metallic additives with octane numbers of at least 91 RON/82.5 MON.**
- ▶ Do **not** drive at full throttle if you are using unleaded fuel with octane numbers of 91 RON/82.5 MON.

Using additives for lower quality fuel

NOTICE

Non-approved additives can damage the engine, fuel system and exhaust system.

- ▶ Exclusively use additives approved by Porsche.
- ▶ Pour in the additive before refuelling.

The depositing behaviour of the fuel may not meet requirements in some countries. In this case, the fuel may be mixed with the additive sold and recommended by Porsche after consulting a Porsche partner:

Porsche part number 000 043 209 02.

- ▶ Read and follow the instructions and mixture ratios specified on the container.
- ▶ Always comply with service intervals and oil change intervals in particular.

Filling with fuel

NOTICE

Decorative films may fade as a result of contact with fuel.

- ▶ Wipe off fuel on films immediately.



Fig. 157: Opening the filler flap



Fig. 158: Opening the fuel cap

- ✓ Engine switched off.
 - ✓ Ignition switched off.
 - ✓ Vehicle unlocked.
1. Open the filler flap by pressing on the rear part of the filler flap. The fuel type to be used for the vehicle is printed on a sticker on the inside of the filler flap.
 2. Slowly unscrew and remove the fuel cap.
 3. Put the fuel cap into the holder.
 4. Insert the pump nozzle fully into the filler neck with the handle pointing downwards.
 5. Operate the pump nozzle and refuel the vehicle. Do not add more fuel after the automatic pump nozzle has switched off. Fuel could spray back or could flow over when heated.

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Technical Data" on page 280.
6. Replace the tank cap immediately after refuelling and close it until you hear and feel it locking.
 7. Close the filler flap and press on the rear of the filler flap until it engages securely.

Information

If you lose the tank cap, you must replace it only with an original part.

Filler flap emergency release



Fig. 159: Emergency operation of the filler flap

If the electrical release mechanism is faulty, the filler flap can be opened manually:

1. Open the passenger's door.
2. Reach into the door aperture between the passenger door and wing. Pull the knob up to the point of resistance.

The filler flap is unlocked mechanically.

3. Open the filler flap by pressing on the rear part of the filler flap.
4. If the flap does not open, repeat steps 2 and 3.
5. Once emergency release has taken place, engage the knob in the catch provided. Visit a workshop.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Roll-over protection (Cabriolet)

Position

A roll-over protection system is installed behind the rear seats and is extended within fractions of a second in the case of accidents with danger of rolling over.

This generates a loud noise. If necessary, the seat-belt tensioners for the front seats will be activated.

► Please refer to chapter "Seat Belts" on page 200.

The roll-over protection system consists of two extendable assemblies which, together with the wind-screen frame, ensure sufficient headroom for all occupants if the vehicle rolls over.

DANGER

Malfunction due to tampering with the roll-over protection

A roll-over protection system that has been tampered with or obstructed in its movement may malfunction, resulting in serious or fatal injury. A roll-over protection system that has been tampered with does not offer any protection. It may be triggered inadvertently, or not respond when needed.

- Do not modify the wiring or components of the roll-over protection system.
- Keep body parts and objects out of the area of movement of the extendable assemblies.
- Do not open the covers of the extendable assemblies.
- When cleaning the vehicle, ensure that no water or cleaning agent enters the roll-over protection system.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the convertible top and roll-over protection when opening and closing the convertible top.


Extended roll-over protection will obstruct the movement of the convertible top.

- Do not open or close the convertible top with the roll-over protection extended.

Information

If the roll-over protection is triggered when the convertible top is closed, the rear window is destroyed.

Responding to the warning light

Faults in the roll-over protection system are indicated by the red **airbag warning light**  in the instrument cluster. Functioning of the roll-over protection is not ensured.

- Have the fault repaired without delay.
- Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Triggered roll-over protection system

- Never press the extendable assemblies back into the original position. Extendable assemblies do not remain in the retracted position, but spring back.
- Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have

trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Roof Transport System

Transporting objects on the roof

WARNING

Unsecured or incorrectly secured roof transport system or individual load-carrying devices

An unsecured or incorrectly secured roof transport system can become detached from the vehicle while driving and cause serious accidents.

- ▶ Install individual load-carrying devices such as a ski/snowboard holder or roof box as centrally as possible with respect to the supports.
- ▶ Check the roof transport system and load-carrying devices before every journey and at regular intervals during longer journeys to ensure that they are fitted correctly and securely.
- ▶ Tighten all fastening screws again.

WARNING

Changed vehicle handling

The handling of the vehicle changes when the roof transport system is fitted and loaded.

- ▶ Adapt your driving style accordingly.
- ▶ Do not drive at a speed of more than 130 km/h (81 mph) when the roof transport system is loaded.
- ▶ When the roof transport system is fitted but not loaded, do not drive at a speed of more than 180 km/h (110 mph).

WARNING

Unsecured or incorrectly secured load

An unsecured or incorrectly secured load can become detached from the roof transport system while

driving and cause serious accidents.

- ▶ Secure the load so that it will not move during the journey.
- ▶ Load the roof transport system so that the load does not protrude over the sides of the roof transport system. Never load the roof transport system wider than the width of the vehicle.
- ▶ Do not use elastic rubber tensioners.
- ▶ Position the centre of gravity of the load as low as possible with respect to the roof transport system and distribute the load evenly over the load area.

NOTICE

Washing the vehicle in a car wash or failure to observe the overall vehicle height or the maximum permitted gross weight can damage the vehicle or roof transport system.

- ▶ Remove the complete roof transport system before washing the vehicle in a car wash.
- ▶ Check the overall vehicle height with the roof transport system fitted before driving through height-restricted entrances (e.g multi-storey car parks).
- ▶ Do not exceed the maximum roof load, maximum vehicle weight and maximum axle loads.

Information

- ▶ Since fuel consumption and noise are increased when the roof transport system is fitted, it should not remain on the vehicle if not in use.

Various objects can be transported safely and securely using the roof transport system and load-carrying devices, e.g. ski/snowboard holder, roof box or bicycle rack.

- ▶ Only use roof transport systems that have been tested and approved by Porsche. Conventional roof rack systems cannot be mounted on the vehicle.

For more information on the roof transport system:

- ▶ Contact your Porsche partner.

Fitting the roof transport system



Fig. 160: Components of the roof transport system

- A Front carrier bar (long)
- B Rear carrier bar (short)
- C Cover trims
- D Torque wrench
- E Key

When fitting for the first time:

- ▶ Adjust the front and rear carriers to fit the width of the vehicle.

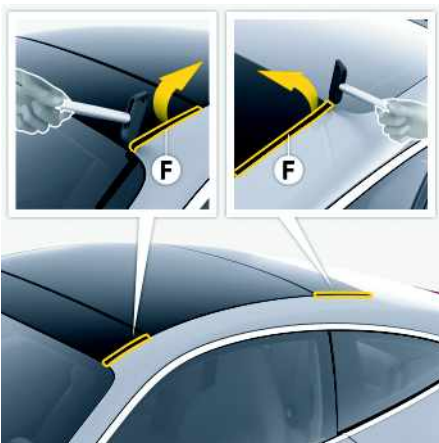


Fig. 161: Removing the seals from the roof rails

1. Lift seals **F** on the roof rail using the hook of the torque wrench and pull them out.

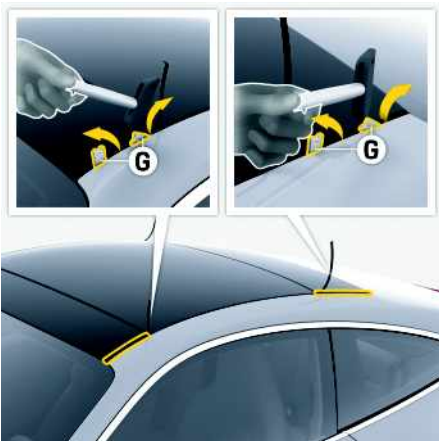


Fig. 162: Folding out rotary holders

2. Fold out all 8 rotary holders **G** using the hook of the torque wrench.



Fig. 163: Unlocking and folding up the cover flaps

3. Unlock cover flaps **H** using the key and fold all the way up.



Fig. 164: Loosening the screws on the underside of the carriers.

4. When fitting for the first time:

- a. Remove the handle from the torque wrench. Loosen screws on the underside of the carriers using the short side of the torque wrench.

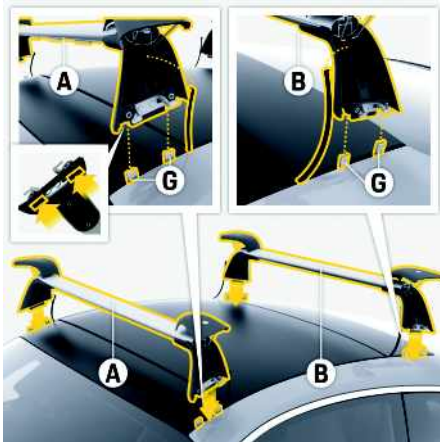


Fig. 165: Adjusting the length of the carriers

- b. Place long carrier **A** at the front and short carrier **B** at the rear on the rotary holders **G** and, at the same time, adapt to the vehicle width by means of the moveable carrier supports.

Ensure that the carriers are fitted in accordance with the stickers on the underside of the carriers.

- c. Tighten the screws on the underside of the carriers slightly.



Fig. 166: Tightening the screws on the underside of the carriers

- d. Remove the carriers and tighten the screws on the underside of the carriers hand-tight using the short side of the torque wrench.
 - e. Fit the handle of the torque wrench.
5. Place the carriers on rotary holders **G** (Fig. 165).

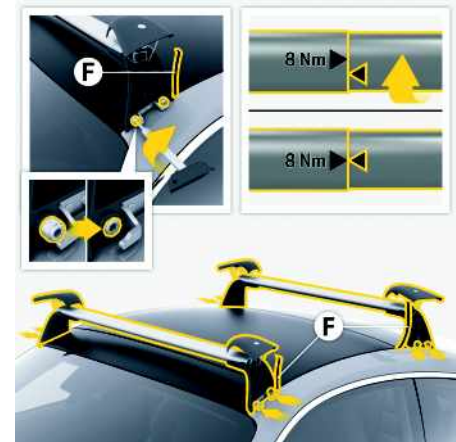


Fig. 167: Tightening carrier fastening screws

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the seals through pinching between roof and supports.

- ▶ Insert seals **F** in the support feet.

6. Screw in all 8 fastening screws on the carriers using the torque wrench until flush with the surface. Then tighten all 8 screws until the arrow markings on the torque wrench are exactly aligned.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z



Fig. 168: Inserting the load-carrying device

7. Fold the cover flaps **H** of the carriers fully downwards and insert the desired load-carrying device (e.g. for roof box, bicycle rack) into the carrier.



Fig. 169: Cutting the cover trims to size and attaching

8. Cut the cover trims **C** to size and push them sideways into the carriers or press them into the carriers from above to protect against moisture and dirt as well as to prevent wind noise.
9. Close the cover flaps and lock with the key.

Information

After driving 50 km (30 mls), retighten all screws on the carriers and load-carrying devices.

Screenwash



Fig. 170: Washer fluid reservoir for windscreen

Note the following points:

- ▶ Mix the water with the appropriate additives (window cleaner concentrate, antifreeze), depending on the season. Always use the right mixture ratio and read all instructions on the containers of the additives used.
- **Summer:** Fill with water and window cleaner concentrate
- **Winter:** Fill with water, antifreeze and window cleaner concentrate

Only use window cleaner concentrate that meets the following requirements:

- Dilutability 1:100
- Phosphate-free
- Suitable for plastic headlight lenses

For information on washer fluid concentrates approved by Porsche: Contact your Porsche partner.

If the washer-fluid level is too low, a warning message appears on the instrument cluster.

Adding washer fluid

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the headlights.

- ▶ Do not lean on the headlight when adding washer fluid.

1. Open the cap on the washer-fluid reservoir.
2. Add washer fluid.
 - ▶ Please refer to chapter "Technical Data" on page 280.
3. Close the cap carefully.

Seat Belts

Using seat belts correctly

DANGER

Unfastened or incorrectly used seat belts

Seat belts do not offer any protection in the event of an accident if they are not worn. Incorrectly worn seat belts increase the risk of injury in an accident.

- ▶ For their own safety, all occupants of the vehicle must wear a seat belt on all journeys.
- ▶ Share all the information in this section with your passengers.
- ▶ Never use **one** seat belt for two persons at the same time.
- ▶ Remove any loose or bulky items of clothing that prevent the seat belt from fitting correctly and restrict your freedom of movement.
- ▶ Do not lay the seat belt across hard or breakable objects (glasses, ball-point pens, pipes, etc.). These objects may present an additional risk of injury.
- ▶ Belt straps must not be twisted or loose.

DANGER

Using damaged seat belts.

Damaged, heavily stressed or worn seat belts do not offer adequate protection in the event of an

accident.

The seat belt pretensioner system can only be triggered once; the system must then be replaced.

- ▶ Check all seat belts regularly for signs of damage to the fabric and check that the seat-belt buckle and attachment points function correctly.
- ▶ Protect seat-belt buckle from soiling and keep it clean.
- ▶ Have seat belts that are damaged or have been heavily stressed in an accident replaced immediately.

The same applies to the seat belt pre-tensioner systems and force limiters installed on the seats that have been triggered.

- ▶ In addition, have the anchor points of the seat belts checked.
- Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.
- ▶ Ensure that the seat belts are fully retracted when not in use to protect them from dirt and damage.

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Car Care" on page 61.

Seat-belt pretensioners

Triggering of the seat-belt pretensioners depends on the severity of the accident.

The seat-belt pretensioners can be triggered:

- In the event of front and rear impact
- In the event of side impact
- If the vehicle turns over

Information

Smoke is released when the seat-belt pretensioners are triggered. This does not indicate a fire in the vehicle.

Observe seat belt warning light and warning message

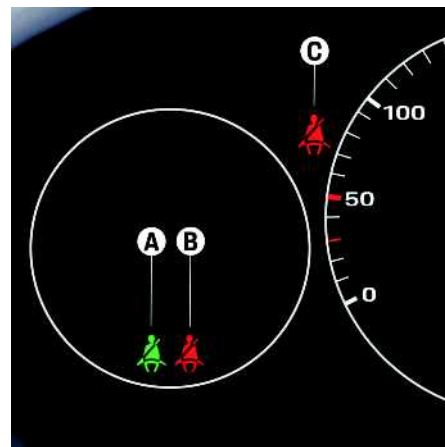


Fig. 171: Seat belt status display in instrument cluster


- A** Green symbol: the rear seat belt is fastened
- B** Red symbol: the rear seat belt is **not** fastened
- C** Warning symbol: driver's or passenger seat belt not fastened

Front seats

When the ignition is switched on, the red warning symbol **A** **C** in the instrument cluster lights up and stays on until the driver side and occupied passenger side seat belts have been fastened.


A warning symbol is also displayed on the instrument cluster.



When the speed exceeds approx. 24 km/h (15 mph) a warning signal sounds and the red warning symbol

 **C** in the instrument cluster flashes if the driver side or occupied passenger side seat belts are not fastened.

Rear seats

When the vehicle drives off, a seat belt status display for the rear seats appears for about 30 seconds in the instrument cluster.

The green symbol  **A** indicates that the person sitting on this seat has fastened their seat belt.

The red symbol  **B** indicates that the person sitting on this seat has not fastened their seat belt, or no one is sitting on this seat. If a seat belt on the rear seats is opened while driving, an acoustic warning signal sounds and the relevant symbol turns red and flashes for about 30 seconds .

Fastening seat belt



Fig. 172: Fastening seat belt

1. Assume a comfortable sitting position.
2. Adjust the backrest so that the seat belt always rests on your upper body and runs across the middle of your shoulder.
3. Grasp the seat belt latch and pull the belt in a slow, continuous motion across your chest and lap.

Information

The seat belt may be blocked if the vehicle is standing at an angle or if the seat belt is pulled out abruptly.

The seat belt can also jam when accelerating or decelerating, when negotiating bends or on inclines.

4. Insert the belt latch into the appropriate seat-

belt buckle on the inner side of the seat until it locks with an audible click.

5. Make sure that the seat belt is not trapped or twisted and that it is not rubbing against sharp edges.
6. Ensure that the horizontal section of the belt always fits snugly across the pelvis. Therefore, after fastening the seat belt, always pull the diagonal part of the belt upwards.
Pregnant women: should position the lap belt as low as possible across the pelvis and ensure that it is not pressing against the abdomen.
7. Also pull on the diagonal section of the belt now and again during the journey to ensure that the horizontal section remains tight.

Opening seat-belt buckle and removing seat belt

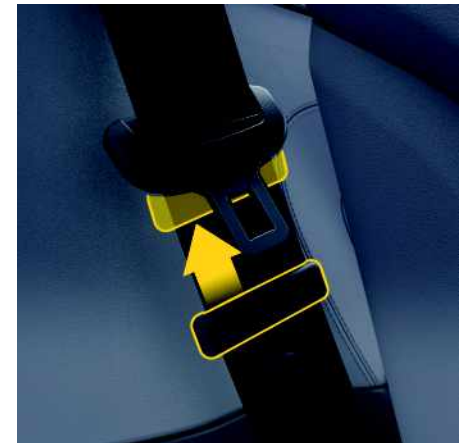


Fig. 173: Removing the seat belt

A

1. Hold the belt latch.

B

2. Press the red button on the belt buckle.

C

3. Guide the belt latch to approx. 7 cm below the belt outlet and push the plastic slide under the belt latch.

D

The plastic slide serves to hold the belt latch in an easily accessible position.

E

F

G

H

I

J

K

L

M

N

O

P

Q

R

S

T

U

V

W

X

Y

Z

Seats

Choosing the right seat position

A correct sitting position is important for safe and fatigue-free driving. To adjust the driver seat position to suit individual requirements, proceed as follows:

1. Adjust the seat height to ensure that you have enough headroom and a good overview of the vehicle.
2. Adjust the seat's fore-and-aft position so that your legs are not fully straight and your foot is touching the entire pedal surface when pressing the pedals fully.
3. Grip the top half of the steering wheel. Set the backrest angle and the steering wheel position so that your arms are almost outstretched. However, your shoulders must still rest on the backrest.
4. Adjust the seat's fore-and-aft position if necessary.

Adjusting the seat

WARNING

Adjusting the seat when driving

The seat may move further than desired if you attempt to adjust it whilst driving. You may lose control of the vehicle.

- ▶ Do not adjust the seat while driving.

CAUTION

Seat adjustment

If persons or animals are within the range of movement of the seat, there is a risk of parts of the body

being squeezed or crushed when you adjust the seat.

- ▶ Adjust the seat so that no-one is put at risk.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to headrests, roof and sun visor.

- ▶ Set the seat position to ensure sufficient clearance between the headrest, roof and sun visor.

Information

The adjustment range of the passenger seat backrest is restricted in vehicles with ISOFIX anchorage systems when using a child restraint system in the passenger seat.

Adjusting sports seat/sports seat plus

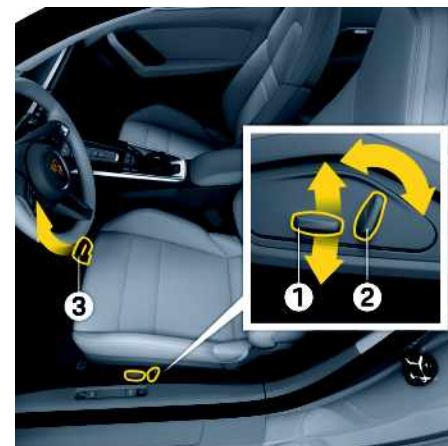


Fig. 174: Adjusting semi-electric sports seat/sports seat plus

- 1 Seat height adjustment
- 2 Backrest angle adjustment
- 3 Fore-and-aft adjustment

- ▶ Press each control in the direction indicated by the arrows until the desired setting or the limit position is reached.
- ▶ Pull up locking lever **3**, move seat to the desired fore-and-aft position and release the lever. Check that the seat engages correctly.

Adjusting fully electric sports seat/adaptive sports seat Plus

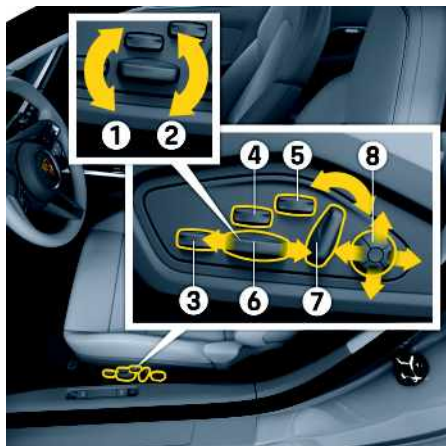


Fig. 175: Adjusting fully electric sports seat/adaptive sports seat Plus

- 1 Seat angle adjustment
- 2 Seat height adjustment
- 3 Thigh support adjustment
- 4 Seat cushion side bolster adjustment (adaptive sports seat Plus only)
- 5 Seat cushion side bolster adjustment (adaptive sports seat Plus only)
- 6 Fore-and-aft adjustment
- 7 Backrest angle adjustment
- 8 Lumbar support adjustment

- ▶ Press each control in the direction indicated by the arrows until the desired setting or the end position is reached.

Storing seat settings

For information on storing and retrieving the seat settings:

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Personal Settings" on page 169.

Folding down seat backrest



Fig. 176: Folding down seat backrest

Folding down seat backrest

- ▶ Pull the loop at the side of the backrest upwards and fold the backrest forwards.

Adjusting seat backrest to vertical position

WARNING

Seat backrest not engaged

Risk of injury if seat backrests are not engaged.

- ▶ Check that the seat backrest engages when folding it back.
- ▶ Fold up the backrest until it locks with an audible click.
Ensure that the seat belt is not trapped.

Using the Comfort Entry function

The Comfort function makes it easier for you to get in and out of the vehicle.

CAUTION

Automatic adjustment of driver's seat

Persons behind the driver's seat may be trapped by the seat as a result of automatic adjustment of the driver's seat towards the rear.

- ▶ Switch off the Easy Entry function if there is a person behind the driver's seat.

Activating function

The Comfort Entry function can be activated via the PCM.

▶ CAR ▶ CONTROL ▶ Vehicle ▶ Locking

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Vehicle Settings" on page 246.

Exiting the vehicle

- ✓ Function activated.
- ▶ Switch off the ignition **and** open the driver's door. The steering wheel moves upwards. The driver's seat moves backwards.

Entering the vehicle

- ✓ Function activated.
- ✓ Driver's seat and steering wheel are in their Comfort Entry positions.
- ▶ Shut the driver's door and switch on the ignition. The driver's seat and steering wheel move to the stored position.

Information

When the key is changed, the seat and steering wheel move to the entry position stored on the driver's key.

Information

Manual intervention in the seat setting interrupts the Comfort Entry function.

- ▶ Adjust driving position manually.

Switching seat heating/seat ventilation on and off

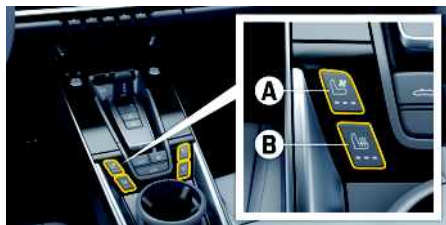


Fig. 177: Switching seat heating/seat ventilation on and off

Switching on seat heating/seat ventilation

- ✓ Engine is running.
- ▶ Press button **A** (seat heating) or **B** (seat ventilation) — repeatedly if necessary. The number of illuminated indicator lights shows the selected heating or ventilation setting.

Switching off seat heating/seat ventilation

- ▶ Press button **A** (seat heating) or **B** (seat ventilation) — repeatedly if necessary — until all the indicator lights go out.

Information

Seat heating is not available when the interior temperature is high.

Seat ventilation is not available when the interior temperature is below 15 °C.

If the battery voltage is too low, seat heating/seat ventilation is restricted initially and then switched off.

Setting seat heating/seat ventilation

For seat heating and seat ventilation, the balance between the seat cushion and backrest can be set.

1. CAR ▶ CONTROL ▶ Vehicle ▶ Seat settings ▶ Driver seat heating balance/ Passenger seat heating balance/Driver seat ventilation balance/Passenger seat ventilation balance
2. Set balance.

Adjusting passenger seat from the driver's seat

1. CAR ▶ CONTROL ▶ Vehicle ▶ Seat settings ▶ Passenger seat position ▶ Adjust passenger seat
2. Set the passenger seat position using the controls on the driver's seat.

To end the adjustment:

- ▶ **Cancel seat adjustment.**

Folding the rear seat backrest forward



Fig. 178: Folding rear seat backrests forward

Folding rear seat backrests forward

- ▶ Pull the lever forward and fold the backrest forward.

Returning rear seat backrests to upright position

WARNING

Seat backrest not engaged

Risk of injury if seat backrests are not engaged.

- ▶ Check that the seat backrest engages when folding it back.
- ▶ Fold up the backrest until it locks with an audible click. Ensure that the seat belt is not trapped.

Slide/Tilt Roof

Opening and closing slide/tilt roof

WARNING

Opening and closing the slide/tilt roof and sun blind

When opening or closing the slide/tilt roof or sun blind, particularly in one-touch operation, parts of the body may get trapped between moving and fixed vehicle parts.

- ▶ Ensure that nobody is injured when the slide/tilt roof or sun blind is operated.
- ▶ Always switch off the ignition when leaving the vehicle. Always take the driver's key with you when leaving the vehicle. Uninformed persons (e. g. children) could injure themselves by operating the slide/tilt roof or sun blind.
- ▶ In case of danger, press the slide/tilt roof or sun blind buttons, or when opening or locking the vehicle, release the buttons on the driver's key immediately.

NOTICE

Damage to the roof or the load, if the slide/tilt roof is opened or lifted when a roof transport system is fitted.

- ▶ Do not open or lift the slide/tilt roof when a roof transport system is fitted.

Information

- The slide/tilt roof and sun blind have a force limiter. If they are obstructed during the closing operation, they will open again immediately.
- The slide/tilt roof does not function at extremely high vehicle speeds or at extremely low temperatures.

Operating the slide/tilt roof and sun blind

- ✓ Ignition switched on.
 - or –
 - Ignition switched off (for not longer than 10 minutes) and driver's or passenger's door not yet opened.

The buttons for opening and closing the slide/tilt roof and sun blind have a **two-stage function**. When actuating the buttons, both positions can be clearly felt through resistance when pulling or pressing.

Opening the steel slide/tilt roof



Fig. 179: Operating steel slide/tilt roof

- A** Opening slide/tilt roof
- B** Lifting/lowering slide/tilt roof
- C** Closing slide/tilt roof

First setting – manual operation

- ▶ Pull and hold button **A** in the first setting until the desired position is reached.
The process stops when the switch is released.

Second setting – one-touch operation

- ▶ Briefly pull button **A** to the second setting.
The slide/tilt roof opens automatically to the end position.
- ▶ To interrupt the process, pull button **A** or **C** again.

Opening the glass slide/tilt roof



Fig. 180: Operating the glass slide/tilt roof

- A** Opening/closing slide/tilt roof
- B** Lifting/lowering slide/tilt roof
- C** Opening/closing sun blind

First setting – manual operation

- ▶ Press and hold button **A** in the first setting until the desired position is reached.
The process stops when the switch is released.

Second setting – one-touch operation

- ▶ Briefly press button **A** to the second setting.
The slide/tilt roof opens automatically to the end position.
- ▶ To interrupt the process, press button **A** again.

Lifting or lowering the slide/tilt roof

- ▶ Press button **B**.

The slide/tilt roof is lifted or lowered to the end position.

- ▶ To interrupt the process, press button **B** again.

Closing slide/tilt roof

First setting – manual operation

- ▶ Pull and hold button **A** or **C** (only steel slide/tilt roof) in the first setting until the desired position is reached.

The process stops when the switch is released.


Second setting – one-touch operation

- ▶ Briefly pull button **A** or **C** (only steel slide/tilt roof) to the second setting.
The slide/tilt roof closes automatically to the end position.
- ▶ To interrupt the process, press button **A** again.


Lifting and closing the slide/tilt roof with the driver's key

- ✓ Function activated.
 - ▶ Please refer to chapter "Vehicle Settings" on page 246.

Lifting/lowering the slide/tilt roof

- ▶ Press and hold the button  on the driver's key until the slide/tilt roof has reached the desired position.

Closing slide/tilt roof

- ▶ Press and hold the  button on the driver's key until the slide/tilt roof has reached the desired position or the slide/tilt roof has closed.

Closing the slide/tilt roof with the proximity sensor in the door handle

- ✓ Comfort Access
- ✓ Function activated.

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Vehicle Settings" on page 246.

- ▶ When locking the vehicle, press the proximity sensor in the door handle until the slide/tilt roof has reached the desired position or the slide/tilt roof has closed.

Closing the slide/tilt roof after repeated intervention of the force limiter

WARNING

Anti-pinch protection deactivated

The slide/tilt roof and sun blind close with their full closing force. Parts of the body that become trapped between the moving and stationary vehicle parts may be crushed.

- ▶ Make sure that no parts of the body become trapped between moving and fixed vehicle parts during closing.

If the closing operation is impeded by an obstruction, the slide/tilt roof can be closed manually with increased force.

1. Remove the obstruction.
2. Pull button **A** or **C** (only steel slide/tilt roof) until the slide/tilt roof stops in the closed position.

Opening and closing the sun blind

Stage one – manual operation

- ▶ Pull or press and hold button **C** in the first setting until the desired position is reached.
The process stops when the switch is released.

Second setting – one-touch operation

- ▶ Briefly pull or press button **C** to the second setting.
The sun blind opens or closes automatically to the end position.
- ▶ To interrupt the process, press button **C** again.

If the slide/tilt roof is partly or fully open, the sun blind can only be closed as far as the front edge of the slide/tilt roof.

If the sun blind is closed, it will be opened (pulled along) automatically when the slide/tilt roof is opened.

Raising or lowering the slide/tilt roof does not affect the position of the sun blind.

Closing the sun blind after repeated intervention of the force limiter

WARNING

Anti-pinch protection deactivated

The slide/tilt roof and sun blind close with their full closing force. Parts of the body that become trapped between the moving and stationary vehicle parts may be crushed.

- ▶ Make sure that no parts of the body become trapped between moving and fixed vehicle parts during closing.

If the closing process is impeded by an obstruction, the sun blind can be closed manually with increased force.

1. Remove the obstruction.
2. Pull button **C** until the sun blind stops in the closed position.

Closing the slide/tilt roof if the roof drive mechanism fails

If the roof drive mechanism is defective, the slide/tilt roof can be closed manually using the hexagon key from the tool kit.

- ▶ Before carrying out an emergency operation, check whether the fuse has blown.
 - ▷ Please refer to chapter "Fuses" on page 114.

WARNING

Overloading the tyres

After emergency operation of the slide/tilt roof, the aerodynamics of the vehicle may change due to interaction with the retractable rear spoiler. This can result in overloading of the tyres. Overloaded tyres can burst, resulting in loss of control of the vehicle.

- ▶ Following emergency operation, do not exceed a speed of 130 km/h (81 mph).
- ▶ Have the slide/tilt roof repaired. Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

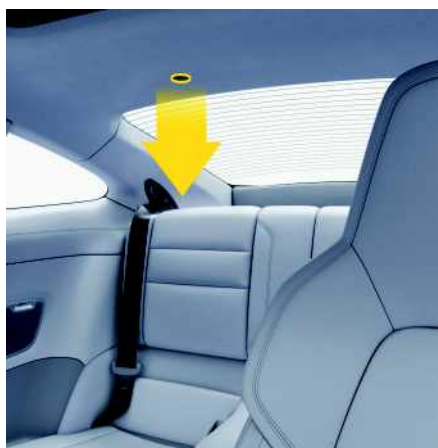


Fig. 181: Levering off the cover cap on the roofliner

1. Take the hexagon key and screw driver out of the tool kit in the luggage compartment.
 - ▷ Please refer to chapter "Luggage compartment" on page 146.
2. Carefully lever off the cover flap on the roofliner using a screw driver, for example.



Fig. 182: Closing the slide/tilt roof with the hexagon key

3. Insert the hexagon key all the way into the opening.
 4. Applying continuous upward pressure, turn the hexagon key clockwise until the slide/tilt roof is fully closed (**arrow**).
 5. Remove the hexagon key.
 6. Refit the cap.
 7. Stow the key in the tool kit.
- The slide/tilt roof can no longer be operated. End positions cannot be saved.

Storing end positions of the slide/tilt roof and sun blind

After an emergency operation, the end positions of the slide/tilt roof and sun blind are lost.

WARNING

Storing the end position

The slide/tilt roof and sun blind close with their full closing force when storing the end position.

- ▶ Make sure that nobody is injured when storing the end position.

✓ The vehicle is stationary.

1. Switch on the ignition.
 2. Pull and hold button **C** until the slide/tilt roof stops in the closed position.
 3. Release button **C** and pull and hold again.
The process for storing the end position begins after approx. 10 seconds. The slide/tilt roof now opens and closes once automatically.
The end position is now stored.
- ▶ Repeat Steps 1-3 for the sun blind using button **A**.

If the button is released before the slide/tilt roof has stopped moving completely:

- ▶ Start the storing process again.

Cleaning the air deflector

Cleaning the air deflector with the slide/tilt roof open

1. Switch on the ignition and open the slide/tilt roof fully. If the air deflector is not fully extended, drive for a short distance with the slide/tilt roof open until it is fully extended.
2. Clean the wind deflector and cover using a damp sponge.

Cleaning the sun blind

- ✓ The vehicle is stationary.
- ✓ Ignition switched on.

1. Fully open the slide/tilt roof.
2. Close the sun blind as far as possible.
3. Press button **A** of the sun blind.
The sun blind starts to close after 10 seconds.
4. Keep the switch pressed until the sun blind is fully closed.
5. Remove any dirt.

Exiting the cleaning function

- ▶ Drive off.
– or –
Operate the slide/tilt roof.
– or –
Operate the sun blind.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Smoker's Package

Using the ashtray

WARNING

Fire hazard from flammable objects

Paper in the ashtray can catch fire.

- ▶ Do not put any flammable objects into the ashtray.

Inserting ashtray



Fig. 183: Inserting ashtray

Depending on the equipment, an ashtray is available in the cupholder in the centre console.

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Cupholders" on page 94.
- ▶ Insert the ashtray in the cu holder and press down as far as it will go.

Opening and closing the ashtray

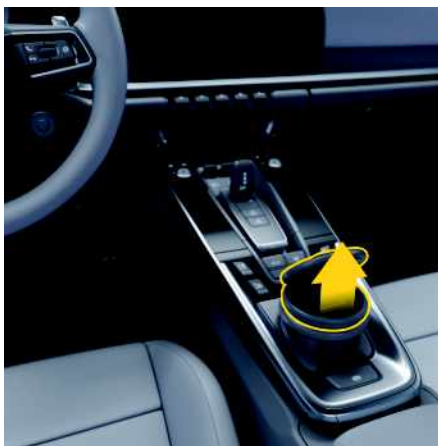


Fig. 184: Opening and closing the ashtray

- ▶ Open and close the ashtray by lifting and folding down the lid.

Removing the ashtray

- ▶ Grip the ashtray and remove it.

Socket

Using the 12-volt socket

Electrical accessories can be connected to the 12-volt plug socket.

The 12-volt plug socket is located in the footwell on the passenger's side.

Connecting the charging adapter

Information

- The 12-volt plug socket and the connected electrical accessories function even if the ignition is switched off or the driver's key is removed. If the engine is not running and the accessories are switched on, the vehicle battery will be discharged. The power supply is interrupted after about 30 minutes to protect the vehicle battery. If the load is to be switched on again, the ignition must be switched on once.
- The maximum load capacity of a 12-volt plug socket is 20 A but only if one load is operating. Do not exceed a 10 A load per 12-volt plug socket if several loads are operating simultaneously.
- Unshielded devices and equipment can cause interference to radio reception and malfunctions in the vehicle electronics.

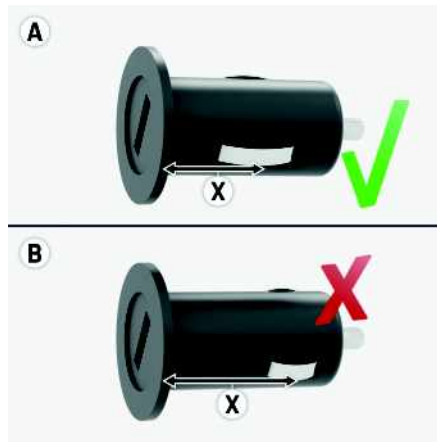


Fig. 185: Charging adapter for 12-volt plug sockets

- A** Suitable charging adapters
B Unsuitable charging adapters

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the electrical system.

- ▶ Only use suitable charging adapters (**A**):
 The **distance X** between the ground connection and the upper edge of the charging adapter must be **less than approx. 16 mm**.
- ▶ Unsuitable charging adapters (**B**) where the **distance X** between the earth connection and the upper edge is more than 16 mm can damage the 12-volt plug sockets.

Spoiler

Retractable rear spoiler

WARNING

Failure of the extendible rear spoiler

Driving stability will be adversely affected by increased rear axle lift at higher speeds.

- ▶ Adapt your driving style and speed to the changed driving behaviour.
- ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.

Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

CAUTION

Extending and retracting the rear spoiler

When extending or retracting the rear spoiler manually when the vehicle is stationary, parts of the body may become trapped between the moving spoiler and stationary vehicle parts.

- ▶ Make sure that no persons or objects are within the range of movement of the rear spoiler.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to rear spoiler.

- ▶ Do not pull or push the vehicle by the rear spoiler.
- ▶ Please retract the rear spoiler before using automatic car washes.

NOTICE

When the rear spoiler is extended, the air supply to the charge-air cooler can be blocked as foreign

objects can collect in it.

- ▶ Do not park the vehicle with the rear spoiler extended.

The rear spoiler improves driving stability at high speeds. The use of automatic mode is recommended.

If the spoiler control fails, a warning message appears on the instrument cluster.

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Warning and Information Messages" on page 255.

Automatic mode

Depending on the vehicle speed and the selected driving programme, the rear spoiler is automatically extended or retracted.



Manual mode

When the ignition is switched on, the rear spoiler can be extended and retracted manually via the PCM.



Information

The selected spoiler position can be stored in INDIVIDUAL mode.

Manual extension

- ▶ Select **CAR**  ▶ **DRIVE**  ▶ **Spoiler**.
The rear spoiler is extended. The current spoiler position is indicated in the vehicle model.

Manual retraction

1. Select **CAR**  ▶ **DRIVE**  ▶ **Spoiler**.
2. Current speed < 15 km/h (9 mph): Press and hold the **Spoiler** button until the rear spoiler has reached its end position.
– or –

Current speed > 15 km/h (9 mph): Briefly press the **Spoiler** button.
The rear spoiler is in automatic mode.

Sport Chrono Stopwatch

With the Sport Chrono stopwatch, times can be measured and evaluated and displayed in the PCM and instrument cluster.

The following information can be recorded and evaluated:

- Lap number
- Completed lap distance
- Lap time
- Optional: Various other data (such as vehicle position or speed)

During a recording the following can be displayed:

- Number of the current lap
- Fastest lap time and the current lap time in colour comparison
- How much of the lap has been completed in relation to a reference lap
- Colour rating to indicate whether the current lap time is quicker than, slower than or identical to the current fastest lap or selected lap
- Remaining fuel range and the number of laps that can be completed with the fuel left in the tank
- Remaining recording time
- The track progress of the current lap and of the reference lap

Up to 99 hours, 59 minutes and 59.99 seconds can be recorded and displayed.

Stopwatch on the dashboard



Fig. 186: Sport Chrono stopwatch

The total time is displayed in the stopwatch on the dashboard.

The analogue pointer indicates the seconds. The digital display shows 1/100 second up to the first minute. Subsequently, the display is in second steps.

Setting the time display and illumination of the stopwatch on the dashboard

- Please refer to chapter "Vehicle Settings" on page 246.

Stopwatch in PCM



Fig. 187: Stopwatch in PCM

- A** Information on recording e.g. lap times, number of laps and residual range that can be driven with the current fuel level.
- B** Distance travelled or circle diagram with lap counter: Distance travelled compared to a reference lap. Colour rating to indicate whether the current lap time is faster than (green), identical to (yellow) or slower than (red) the reference lap.

Starting timing

- **CAR** ▸ **CHRONO** ▸ **Start**
Data recording begins. If a reference lap has not been loaded, the first lap is used as the reference lap.

Stopping timing

- ✓ Timing has started.

- **CAR** ▸ **CHRONO** ▸ **Stop**

Continuing timing

- ✓ Timing was stopped.

- **CAR** ▸ **CHRONO** ▸ **Continue**

Stopping lap/starting new lap

A maximum of 99 laps can be stored during each recording.

✓ Timing has started.

▶ CAR  ▶ CHRONO  ▶ **New lap**

The lap counter is incremented by one. The time of the fastest lap driven is recorded as the fastest lap time if the duration is within the set difference in distance.

Storing interim time

✓ Timing has started.

▶ CAR  ▶ CHRONO  ▶ **Interim time**

The intermediate time is displayed briefly and is not stored. Timing continues in the background.

Resetting the stopwatch time

✓ Timing was stopped.




▶ CAR  ▶ CHRONO  ▶ **Reset**

All stop time displays are reset to zero and the running recording is stopped.

Loading reference lap

▶ CAR  ▶ CHRONO  ▶ **Load lap**

Saving reference lap




▶ CAR  ▶ CHRONO  ▶ Options  ▶ **Sport Chrono display** ▶ **Evaluation** ▶ Select desired recording ▶ **Save reference lap**

Resetting reference lap

▶ CAR  ▶ CHRONO  ▶ **Reset**

Displaying and editing recordings and recording statistics

A maximum of 99 laps can be recorded during each session. Provided a reference lap has not been loaded already, the first lap of the recording is used as the reference lap. A maximum of 10 hours of recording time is available.

▶ CAR  ▶ CHRONO  ▶ Options  ▶ **Sport Chrono display** ▶ **Evaluation**

Renaming, deleting, importing and exporting recordings and reference laps

✓ Under Options  ▶ **Sport Chrono evaluation** selected.

✓ For importing/exporting, SD card inserted or USB data carrier connected. Data is stored on the storage medium in the "SportChrono" folder.

▶ CAR  ▶ CHRONO  ▶ Options 

Setting Sport Chrono



Activating Record additional data option and displaying track progress

Apart from lap length and lap times, other driving data (such as speed) can be stored at intervals of 1 second. The track progress can also be shown on the map.

▶ CAR  ▶ CHRONO  ▶ Options  ▶ **Sport Chrono settings** ▶ **Record additional data**

Setting difference in distance allowed

Indicates how much the length of a lap may differ from the length of the reference lap. Laps with greater length deviations are not included in the evaluation.




▶ CAR  ▶ CHRONO  ▶ Options  ▶ **Sport Chrono settings** ▶ **Difference in distance allowed**

Setting maximum time deviation for evaluation

Indicates the maximum time difference with which laps are evaluated as identical in speed (marked yellow) during the recording.

▶ CAR  ▶ CHRONO  ▶ Options  ▶ **Sport Chrono settings** ▶ **Max. delta time for evaluation**

Displaying the vehicle position for the fastest lap (ghost car)

▶ CAR  ▶ CHRONO  ▶ Options  ▶ **Sport Chrono settings** ▶ **Show position during fastest lap**

Stopwatch in the instrument cluster

The stopwatch is displayed on the Car & Info display.

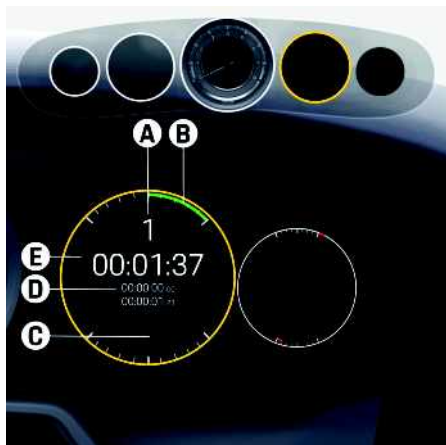


Fig. 188: Stopwatch in the instrument cluster

- A** Lap counter
- B** Circle diagram: how much of the lap has been completed compared to a reference lap.
- C** Control commands
- D** Lap time reference lap
- E** Current lap time

Starting timing

▶ Sport Chrono ▶ Start

Data recording begins. If a reference lap has not been loaded, the first lap is used as the reference lap.

Stopping timing

- ✓ Timing has started.

▶ Sport Chrono ▶ Stop

Continuing timing

- ✓ Timing was stopped.

▶ Sport Chrono ▶ Cont.

Stopping lap/starting new lap

The current stopwatch time is stored as a lap time while the stopwatch is still running.

A maximum of 99 laps can be stored during each recording.

- ✓ Timing has started.

▶ Sport Chrono ▶ Lap

The lap counter **A** is incremented by one lap.

The time of the fastest completed lap is stored as the fastest lap time.

Storing interim time

- ✓ Timing has started.

▶ Sport Chrono ▶ Interim time

The interim time is displayed briefly and is not stored. Timing continues in the background.

A number in the circle diagram **B** shows the set interim time.

Resetting the stopwatch time

- ✓ Timing was stopped.

▶ Sport Chrono ▶ Reset

All stopwatch time displays are reset to zero.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Ignition lock

The driver's key is replaced by a control unit in the ignition. You only need to carry the driver's key with you.



Fig. 189: Ignition lock positions

- 0 Basic setting
- 1 Ignition on
- 2 Starting the engine

0 – Ignition off (initial position)

The engine and ignition are off in ignition lock position 0.

1 – Ignition on

All electrical equipment can be switched on. The warning lights on the instrument cluster light up for a lamp check.

Information

If no loads are switched on for 10 minutes after switching on the ignition, the ignition must be switched on again. Turn the control unit to ignition lock position 0 (initial position) first.

2 – Start the engine

After the engine is started, the control unit automatically returns from position 2 to position 1.

Locking and unlocking steering wheel

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Alarm System" on page 38.

Starting the engine

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Vehicles with manual transmission: Press the clutch pedal down fully and keep it pressed.
3. Vehicles with manual transmission: Move gear-shift lever to neutral position.
4. Vehicles with PDK: Press the **P** button on the selector lever or select operating mode **N**.
5. Do not press the accelerator pedal.
6. Turn the control unit to ignition lock position 2. Do not operate the starter for longer than approx. 10 seconds.

After reaching ignition lock position 2, starting (engine start) is automatically initiated and completed.

- ▶ Repeat the starting procedure after a short pause of approx. 10 seconds if necessary. Turn the control unit back to ignition lock position 0 (initial position) beforehand. Do not run the engine warm when stationary. Drive off immediately. Avoid high revs and full

throttle until the engine has reached operating temperature.

Stopping the engine

WARNING

Inactive power steering and brake booster

The power steering and brake booster are only operational while the engine is running. When the engine is switched off, much greater force is suddenly required to turn the steering wheel or brake.

- ▶ Only switch the ignition off when the vehicle is stationary.

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Press the brake pedal.
3. Turn the control unit to ignition lock position 0.
- ▶ When leaving the vehicle, apply the electric parking brake and press button **P** on vehicles with PDK or engage 1st gear or reverse gear on vehicles with manual transmission.

Steering Wheel

Adjusting steering wheel

WARNING

Adjusting the steering wheel while driving

The steering wheel may move further than desired if you attempt to adjust it while driving. You may lose control of the vehicle.

- ▶ Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.

Adjusting steering wheel manually

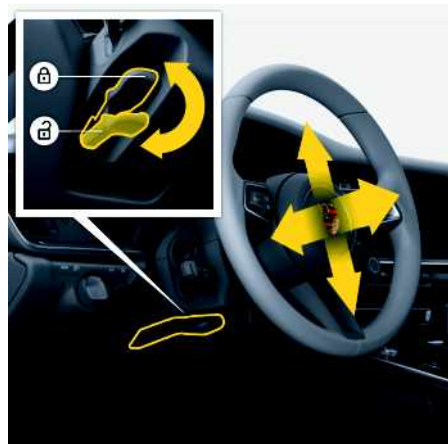


Fig. 190: Steering wheel adjustment lever

1. Swivel the lever downwards, away from the driver.
2. Move the steering wheel vertically and horizontally in order to adjust the steering wheel

position to the tilt of the backrest and seat position.

3. Swivel the lever back to the initial position, towards the driver until you feel it engage.

Adjusting the steering wheel electrically

CAUTION

Uncontrolled retrieval of the memory settings

If persons or animals are within the range of movement of the steering wheel while it is being adjusted, there is a risk of body parts being trapped or crushed.

- ▶ Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended.

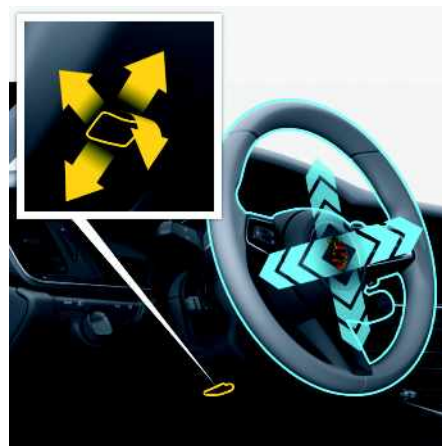


Fig. 191: Steering wheel adjustment control switch

- ▶ Move the control switch under the steering column in the relevant direction until the desired setting is reached.

Storing steering wheel settings

On vehicles with memory package, the steering wheel settings can be stored on the memory buttons in the driver's door and on the driver's key.

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Personal Settings" on page 169.

Operating instrument cluster with multi-function steering wheel

For further information on operating the instrument cluster:

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Operating the instrument cluster" on page 122.

Switching steering wheel heating on/off



Fig. 192: Heated steering wheel button

- ✓ Engine is running.
- ▶ Press the button on the central steering wheel spoke until the message **Heated steering wheel**

A on or **Heated steering wheel off** appears briefly on the instrument cluster.

B

C

D

E

F

G

H

I

J

K

L

M

N

O

P

Q

R

S

T

U

V

W

X

Y

Z

Storage

Stowing objects

WARNING

Unsecured or incorrectly positioned objects

An unsecured or incorrectly positioned load can slide or be thrown about and injure the vehicle occupants as a result of hard braking, direction changes or an accident.

- ▶ Do not transport objects unsecured in the passenger compartment.
- ▶ Do not transport any heavy objects in open storage compartments.
- ▶ Keep lockable storage compartments closed while driving.

WARNING

Objects in the centre console

If the storage compartment or cupholder is not inserted in the centre console, objects can block or activate the parking brake button. This can lead to unwanted braking.

- ▶ When storing objects in the centre console, always use the supplied storage compartment.
- ▶ Only use the cupholder for the storage of drinks as intended.
- ▶ Never store items in the cupholder.
- ▶ Never operate the vehicle without an inserted cupholder or inserted storage compartment.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the storage net.

- ▶ Do not place any heavy or bulky objects in the storage net.

NOTICE

If objects are in the area behind the rear seats, there is a risk of damage when opening the convertible top or roof system.

- ▶ Remove objects from behind the rear seats before opening the convertible top or roof system.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following storage options may be available:

- 2 cup holders
- Glove box
- Door storage compartments with bottle tray
- Storage net in the passenger's footwell
- Storage compartment in the centre console
- Storage compartment in the armrest
- Rear shelf behind the rear seats

Opening and closing the glove box



Fig. 193: Opening the glove box

Opening the glove box

- ▶ Pull the handle.
Glove box opens automatically.

Closing the glove box

- ▶ Close the cover by pressing on it.
The glove box can be locked and unlocked using the emergency key.

Installing and removing the storage compartment

WARNING

Objects in the centre console

If the storage compartment or cupholder is not inserted in the centre console, objects can block or activate the parking brake button. This can lead to unwanted braking.

- ▶ When storing objects in the centre console, always use the supplied storage compartment.
- ▶ Only use the cupholder for the storage of drinks as intended.
- ▶ Never store items in the cupholder.
- ▶ Never operate the vehicle without an inserted cupholder or inserted storage compartment.



Fig. 194: Installing and removing the storage compartment

Installing the storage compartment

The vehicle is delivered with a storage compartment that can be inserted in the centre console.

- ▶ Insert the storage compartment in the opening in front of the centre armrest and it push downwards as far as it will go.

Removing the storage compartment

- ▶ Grip the storage compartment and remove it.

Opening the storage compartment in the armrest



Fig. 195: Opening the storage compartment in the armrest

Opening the storage compartment

- ▶ Press the button on the right-hand side of the armrest.
The lid pops up automatically.

Sun Visors

Adjusting sun visor



Fig. 196: Adjusting sun visor

- ▶ Swivel the sun visor down to prevent glare from the front.

If you are dazzled from the side:

- ▶ Unclip the sun visor from the inner bracket and swivel it round so that it is in front of the side window.

Opening vanity mirror

CAUTION

Cover of vanity mirror open

The mirror glass may break in the event of an accident and may fall into the passenger compartment if the cover is open.

- ▶ Keep the cover closed when driving.



Fig. 197: Opening vanity mirror

- ▶ Open the cover of the vanity mirror on the inside of the sun visor.
The vanity mirror light comes on.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the vanity mirror cover.

- ▶ Do not force the cover beyond its end position.

Telephone

Brief Overview – Phone

This brief overview does not replace the comprehensive descriptions. Safety messages and warnings, in particular, are not replaced by this brief overview.



















For information on operating Porsche Communication Management (PCM):

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Porsche Communication Management (PCM)" on page 175.



Fig. 198: Dialling a number (keypad)

What do I want to do?	What do I have to do?	Where?
Connect phone via Bluetooth® (mobile phone preparation)	▶ PHONE ▶ Search for new phone or select an already known phone.	▶ p. 223
Switch between two connected mobile phones	▶ Select the currently connected mobile phone at the top right in the header. The two devices already connected are displayed ▶ Select the desired mobile phone.	▶ p. 224
Use PCM for making phone calls with an external SIM card	▶ Open armrest ▶ Insert SIM card in SIM card slot (missing corner at front left, chip facing down) ▶ Enter PIN if necessary ▶ Use SIM card for calls (otherwise data services only) .	▶ p. 224
Establish a data connection		▶ p. 182
Dial number	▶ PHONE ▶ KEYPAD (see A) ▶ Select (see G).	–
Select breakdown call	✓ Private mode is deactivated.	▶ p. 106

What do I want to do?	What do I have to do?	Where?
	▶ PHONE  ▶ KEYPAD  (see A) ▶ Breakdown call	
Select emergency call	▶ PHONE  ▶ KEYPAD  (see A) ▶ Emergency call	▶ p. 103
Store contact as favourite	▶ PHONE  ▶ FAV  (see B) ▶ Add favourite ▶ Select desired contact from list ▶ Select  .	▶ p. 225
Display call list	▶ PHONE  ▶ CALLS  (see C)	–
Display a contact	▶ PHONE  ▶ CONTACT  (see D)	–
Display messages	▶ PHONE  ▶ MESSAGE  (see E) ▶ Select desired folder, e.g. Text messages .	▶ p. 226
Listen to mailbox	▶ Select PHONE  ▶ KEYPAD  ▶ Keep button 1 (see F) pressed for a long time.	–
Accept/reject a call	▶ Select Accept  or Reject  .	–
End a call	▶ Select  in the footer or in the phone menu.	–

Various use options are available depending on model, country and equipment. The features described here are therefore not available in all models, countries and equipment versions.

WARNING Risk of accident due to using mobile phone

Using mobile phones while driving may distract from the traffic situation. You may lose control of the

vehicle.

- ▶ Only make or receive calls using hands-free equipment.

WARNING Danger of injury

Mobile phones must be switched off in certain danger areas, e.g. near petrol stations, fuel depots, chemical plants or during blasting work. They may

interfere with technical equipment.

- ▶ Always comply with instructions as well as legal requirements and local restrictions.

Connecting mobile phone via Bluetooth®

Connecting a new mobile phone


- ✓ Bluetooth® function of the mobile phone is activated and is visible to other devices.

- ✓ Bluetooth® function of the PCM activated.
- ▷ Please refer to chapter "Device Manager" on page 96.

1. PHONE  ▶ KEYPAD  ▶ Search for new phone

2. Select a mobile phone from the device list. A 6-digit Bluetooth® code is generated and displayed in the PCM and on the mobile phone.

3. Compare the Bluetooth® code in the PCM and on the mobile phone.




4. If the Bluetooth® code in the mobile phone match, confirm.
When the phone is successfully connected, the numeric input (**KEYPAD ** menu) is displayed in the PCM.

Information

- Depending on the Bluetooth® capability of the mobile phone, it is possible to access the content of the phone book, call lists and messages. It is also possible to transfer a current call to the mobile phone after stopping the vehicle and continue it outside the vehicle if the mobile phone supports this function.
- You will find an overview of compatible mobile phones on the Porsche website for your country under: Models ▶ Your model (e.g. 911 Carrera) ▶ Download Brochures ▶ Via Bluetooth®.



Connecting a mobile phone (Windows® and iOS operating system)

For mobile phones with Windows® and iOS operating systems, we recommend initiating the connection from the mobile phone:

1. Search for available devices in the mobile phone's Bluetooth® menu. Press  or  in the header (depending on the connection status) to make the PCM visible.
2. Select the PCM from the list of available devices. The Bluetooth® device name of the PCM can be displayed by selecting **Device manager** under Options  ▶ **Bluetooth** ▶ **Bluetooth name**.

Connecting to registered mobile phones



- ✓ The mobile phone's Bluetooth® function is activated.
- ✓ Bluetooth® function of the PCM activated.
- ▷ Please refer to chapter "Device Manager" on page 96.

1. Select  or  in the footer (depending on the connection status).
A list with a maximum of 20 registered mobile phones will be displayed.

2. Select a mobile phone from the list.
The mobile phone is connected via Bluetooth®.

Connecting and using a second mobile phone

- ✓ A mobile phone is already connected to the PCM or the inserted external SIM card is enabled to make calls.

1. Select  or  in the footer (depending on the connection status).

2. Select a mobile phone from the list or connect a new mobile phone.
▷ Please refer to chapter "Connecting a new mobile phone" on page 223.
Both connected mobile phones can receive

calls, but only the active mobile phone can make calls.

3. Select the currently connected device at the top right in the headline in order to switch between the two connected mobile phones.

The two devices already connected are displayed.

- or -

PHONE  ▶ Options  ▶ **Select phone** ▶ Select the desired device.

Using the PCM for making phone calls with an external SIM card

In some countries, the external SIM card can also be used to make and receive calls in addition to establishing a data connection. The embedded SIM card **cannot** be used for making and receiving calls. For information on data connection:

- ▷ Please refer to chapter "Porsche Connect" on page 182.

An inserted external SIM card deactivates the function of the embedded SIM card (availability dependent on country). Additional costs may be incurred for the data connection (e.g. due to data roaming).

Inserting and removing external SIM card

NOTICE

If you are using a SIM card adapter, the SIM card may fall out of the adapter due to vibrations and components of the card may get stuck in the drive.

- ▶ Do not use adapters for SIM cards.

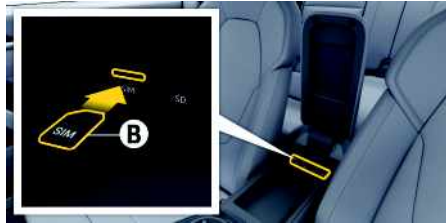









Fig. 199: External SIM card in the armrest

1. Insert external SIM card **B** (mini-SIM, dimensions: 25 x 15 mm). The missing corner must be at the front left with the chip facing downwards.
2. SIM card **with** PIN:
 - a. If necessary, enter the PIN for the external SIM card and confirm with **OK**.
 - b. Select **Store PIN**.
3. Activate **Use SIM card for calls (otherwise data services only)** if necessary in order to use the SIM card for calls in addition to data use.
4. To remove the external SIM card, press on the inserted card and remove it.

Displaying connection status



The following displays may appear in the header depending on the model, country and equipment:

-  No phone connected.
-  No data connection available (possible causes: no connection, poor network quality, interruption of the data connection during a voice connection).
-  Data connection via the LTE mobile phone network.
-  Data connection via the UMTS/HSPA mobile phone network (3G).



-  Data connection via the EDGE mobile phone network (GSM).
-  Reception field strength of the mobile phone network for the phone function.
-  Data connection via external WiFi hotspot.

Storing and editing a favourite




Storing a favourite

1. **PHONE**  ► **FAV** 
2. Select a contact from **Last contacted** and move to **Favourites** by drag & drop.

Organising favourites

1. **PHONE**  ► **FAV** 
2. Select the desired contact and move to the desired position via drag & drop.

Deleting a favourite


1. **PHONE**  ► **FAV** 
2. Select the desired contact and move upwards from the **Favourites** display area via drag & drop.
– or –
If available, select the  icon.

Functions during a phone call



- ✓ **PHONE**  ► **KEYPAD**  selected.

Muting the microphone





- ✓ Active phone call.

- Select  to mute the microphone.


Holding a call

- ✓ Active phone call.
- Select 
- To resume the call, select 

Starting a conference call

- ✓ Active phone call.
- 1.  ► Add a new call (enter number or contact)
► 
- 2. Select  to activate the conference.
- 3. Select  to disconnect the conference.

Switching between two conversations (swapping)

- ✓ First phone call is active.
- ✓ Second phone call is on hold.
- Select  to activate the call on hold and put the previously active call on hold.

Displaying phone information in the instrument cluster

- Select the desired function in the Car & Info display on the instrument cluster:
 - Please refer to chapter "D – Car & Info display" on page 120.
- **Incoming call: Accept or Reject** the incoming call using the phone buttons on the steering wheel.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

- **Last calls:** Display a list of the last numbers dialled using the phone button and rotary knob on the steering wheel.
- **Conference:** Make other calls or add the participants to a conference call during an active phone call using the rotary knob and phone button on the steering wheel.

For information on operating the instrument cluster:

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Operating the instrument cluster" on page 122.




Displaying and editing messages

You can read text messages and e-mails, have the messages read out to you or use the numbers contained in the messages for making phone calls if the mobile phone supports this function. The mobile phone may support the text message function but not the e-mail function. You will find further information on these settings in the operating instructions for the mobile phone.




Information

- If the mobile phone is only able to display the text message stored in the device memory, the text message received in the vehicle may not appear in the mobile phone message list. Otherwise, received text messages are stored on the SIM card.
- Multimedia Messaging Service (MMS) is not supported by the PCM.

Writing text messages/e-mails

1. **PHONE**  ▶ **MESSAGE**  ▶ **Text message/E-mail**
2. Select 
3. Add the recipient (by entering the number or selecting a contact).
4. Enter text using the input field and confirm with **OK**.
5. Select **Send**.

Replying to or forwarding text message/e-mail

1. **PHONE**  ▶ **MESSAGE**  ▶ **Text message/E-mail**
2. Select the text message/e-mail that you want to reply to/forward.
3. Select  ▶ **Reply/Replies/Forward**.

Stowing a mobile phone (availability dependent on country)



Fig. 200: Storage compartment in the armrest



Depending on the equipment, the storage compartment in the armrest has various interfaces. The USB

ports can be used to charge mobile phones and connect to the PCM.




- ✓ Keypad/code lock on the mobile phone is activated.
- ▶ Place the mobile phone in the storage compartment with the display facing upwards.
- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Ports" on page 180.

Changing phone settings

General settings

- ▶ **PHONE**  ▶ **Options**  ▶ **Telephone settings**
- ▶ Select the desired setting.




Deleting a call

- ✓ SIM card inserted.
- or –
- Mobile phone is connected via Bluetooth® and supports the function.
- ▶ **PHONE**  ▶ **CALLS**  ▶ **Options**  ▶ **Delete call**

Managing contacts

- ▶ **PHONE**  ▶ **CONTACT**  ▶ **Options**  ▶ Select the desired setting.

Editing messages

- ▶ **PHONE**  ▶ **MESSAGE**  ▶ **Text message/e-mail folder** ▶ **Options**  ▶ Select the desired setting.

Tests on Test Stands

Performing tests on test stands

WARNING

Inhalation of toxic exhaust gases

Risk of serious or fatal injury as a result of inhaling toxic exhaust gases.

Exhaust gas contains colourless and odourless carbon monoxide, which is toxic even in low concentrations.

- ▶ Perform work with the engine running only in the open or with suitable extraction systems for the exhaust gases.

WARNING

Insufficiently secured vehicle

An unsecured or incorrectly secured vehicle can move unexpectedly or tip or fall off lifting equipment, e.g. a jack or lifting platform. This can result in serious injury and damage.

- ▶ The vehicle must be raised using the jack only when on a solid and level surface.
- ▶ Raise the vehicle only at the prescribed jacking points on the vehicle underbody.
- ▶ Always place the vehicle on solid supports when working under the vehicle. The car jack is not suitable for this.
- ▶ Never start the engine once the vehicle is raised. Engine vibration could cause the vehicle to fall.

Performance test

Performance tests on roller-type test stands are not approved by Porsche.

Performing brake tests

- ▶ Perform brake tests only on roller-type test stands.

The following limit values must not be exceeded:

- Test speed 7.5 km/h (4.7 mph)
- Test duration 20 seconds

Testing the electric parking brake

- ▶ Electric parking brake tests on the brake test stand **must only be performed with the ignition switched on and with the manual transmission in neutral or with the PDK in operating mode N (transmission parking lock not activated)**.

The vehicle switches automatically to brake test stand mode, in which the electric parking brake can be tested. A message appears on the instrument cluster.

Towing

Information

- ▶ Always observe the laws governing towing and tow-starting.
- ▶ Exercise extreme care when your vehicle is being towed. Before starting off, both drivers should familiarise themselves with the special conditions that apply to tow-starting and towing.
- ▶ In the case of a power failure or faults in the electrical system, an external power source may need to be connected in order to release the electric parking brake or steering column lock.

Tow-starting and push-starting the vehicle

NOTICE

Danger of significant vehicle and transmission damage through tow-starting or push-starting vehicles with PDK.

- ▶ **Never** tow-start or push-start vehicles.
- ▶ Do not attempt to tow the vehicle.
- ▶ Call a roadside assistance or breakdown recovery service.
- ▶ Have the vehicle transported with both axles on a recovery vehicle, car transporter or trailer.

NOTICE

Danger of significant vehicle damage.

- ▶ Tie the vehicle down only at its wheels. Do not attach tension straps to the towing lug.

- ▶ Vehicles with manual transmission may only be tow-started or push-started when the engine is cold. If the engine is warm, unburnt fuel could damage the catalytic converter.

If the battery is defective or fully discharged, the engine can only be started after the battery has been replaced or by using jump leads.

- ▷ Please refer to chapter "Battery" on page 52.
- ▷ Please refer to chapter "Jump-lead Starting" on page 129.

Vehicle with manual transmission¹ Towing

WARNING

Increased steering and braking forces as a result of no power assistance

No steering assistance is available on the towed vehicle when its engine is not running. Increased force is required for braking and steering.

- ▶ Exercise extreme care when your vehicle is being towed.

Important information for vehicles with all-wheel drive/Porsche Traction Management (PTM)

- ▶ The vehicle must be moved on a car transporter or a trailer, or must have all **four wheels** on the ground when being towed. It is **not** permissible

to lift the vehicle and tow it on one axle (irrespective of whether it is the front or rear axle).

Special note for vehicles with a faulty or fully discharged battery

- ▶ If the battery is defective or fully discharged, the engine can only be started after the battery has been replaced or by using jump leads.
- ▷ Please refer to chapter "Battery" on page 52.
- ▷ Please refer to chapter "Jump-lead Starting" on page 129.

Instructions for towing a vehicle on all four wheels

- ▶ Switch on the ignition so that the brake lights and direction indicator lights can operate and the steering lock will not engage.

Notes on towing on one axle (vehicles with rear-wheel drive only)

- ▶ Switch off ignition. Leave the driver's key in the ignition lock so that the steering lock does not engage.
- ▶ Make sure that the vehicle has sufficient lighting.

Towing the vehicle

- ▶ Vehicles with manual transmission: move gear-shift lever to neutral position.
- ▶ Do not exceed the maximum speed of 50 km/h (30 mph). Do not exceed a maximum towing distance of 50 km (30 mph). For longer towing distances, the vehicle must be transported on a car transporter or a trailer.
- ▷ Please refer to chapter "Transporting the vehicle on car trains, ferries and car transporters" on page 230.

1. Equipment may be available for use only at a later time or may only be available in certain markets.

Pulling out a vehicle stuck in snow, sand, etc.

- ▶ Always pull out the vehicle with the greatest care.
- ▶ Do not pull out the vehicle abruptly or at an angle.
- ▶ If possible, pull the vehicle out backwards in its own tracks.

Towing a vehicle with PDK



Fig. 201: Permissible towing



Fig. 202: Impermissible towing

Special note for vehicles with a faulty or fully discharged battery

- ▶ If the battery is defective or fully discharged, the engine can only be started after the battery has been replaced or by using jump leads.
- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Battery" on page 52.
- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Jump-lead Starting" on page 129.
- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Transporting the vehicle on car trains, ferries and car transporters" on page 230.

Using a towing rope or towing bar

- ▶ For specifications and mounting instructions, please refer to the manual from the accessory manufacturer. Observe the manufacturer's safety and operating instructions.
- ▶ Observe the permissible towing force of the towing rope or towing bar. The towing rope or towing bar must be approved for the vehicle weight. Never exceed the manufacturer's specifications.
- ▶ The towed vehicle must not be heavier than the towing vehicle.
- ▶ Vehicles with defective brakes must **not** be towed.
- ▶ When towing, screw the towing lug to the vehicle before the towing rope or towing bar is secured to the towing lug.
 - ▶ Please refer to chapter "Using the towing lug" on page 229.

Using a towing rope

- ▶ Always keep the towing rope taut when towing. Avoid jerky and sudden loads.

Using a towing bar

- ▶ Do **not** attach the towing bar diagonally between the vehicles.

Using the towing lug



Fig. 203: Towing lug

Fitting the towing lug

The towing lug is stored in the tool kit.

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Luggage compartment" on page 146.
1. Press the lower edge of the plastic cover into the bumper until it disengages or carefully disengage the plastic cover using a suitable tool (e.g. screwdriver).
 2. Pull the plastic cover out of the bumper and let it hang by its thread.
 3. Screw in towing lug **A** anti-clockwise as far as it will go (left-hand thread) and tighten hand-tight.

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Removing the towing lug

1. Unscrew the towing lug **A** (turn clockwise, left-hand thread).
2. Insert the plastic cover at the lower edge of the opening.
3. Fold in the plastic cover and press on the upper edge until it engages in the bumper.
4. Store the towing lug in the tool kit.

Transporting the vehicle on car trains, ferries and car transporters

1. Tie the vehicle down only at its wheels. Do **not** attach tension straps to the towing lug.
2. Deactivate interior surveillance and the inclination sensor.
 - ▷ Please refer to chapter "Alarm System" on page 38.
3. Activate Porsche Vehicle Tracking System Plus (PTVS Plus) transport mode.
 - ▷ Please refer to chapter "Transport" on page 189.

Traffic Sign Detection

WARNING

Lack of attention

Responsibility when driving, e.g. choosing an appropriate speed, remains with the driver even if traffic sign detection is being used. The system is no substitute for attention on the part of the driver.

Traffic sign detection does not adjust the speed of the vehicle to specified speed limits.

- ▶ Drive with extreme care.
- ▶ Always pay attention to the traffic situation and the area around the vehicle.
- ▶ Adapt your driving speed to traffic conditions.

WARNING

Failure of camera to detect traffic signs

Camera vision can be impaired by various factors (e.g. rain, snow, ice, heavy spray and oncoming headlights). Sometimes the camera cannot detect traffic signs or cannot detect them correctly. When this happens, no speed limit or bend ahead warning, or an incorrect speed limit or bend ahead warning is displayed. Traffic signs on the road always have priority.

- ▶ Always pay attention to traffic signs when driving on public roads.
- ▶ Drive with extreme care.
- ▶ Always keep the direction of travel in your field of view.

Traffic sign detection uses a camera **A** to detect speed limits as well as the start and end points of no-overtaking zones and bend ahead signs. Traffic signs are evaluated in combination with the navigation system's map data and shown on the instrument cluster.

If a speed limit is confined to a wet road, fog or a certain time, the detected additional sign is

compared with the information provided by the vehicle (e.g. rain sensor, navigation data and time). The bend ahead warning is issued approx. 150 m before a bend that is significant for the driver and continues until the relevant bend has been passed. Traffic sign detection is country-dependent and is not available for all countries.

When driving in a country in which traffic sign detection is not available, the driver is alerted to this fact by a message on the instrument cluster.



Fig. 204: Windscreen camera

Information

Traffic sign detection is available in limited form in the following sample situations for example:

- Camera heavily soiled, iced-up or covered (e.g. stickers)
- In unfavourable weather conditions (e.g. heavy rain)
- Traffic signs covered or damaged

Information

To ensure there is no interference with camera operation:

- Do not cover the camera area on the interior mirror **A** with objects (e.g. stickers).
- The camera must always be kept free of dirt, ice and snow.

Information

If the camera does not detect a traffic sign, the speed limit stored in the navigation system will be automatically displayed.

Displaying speed limits and bend ahead warning

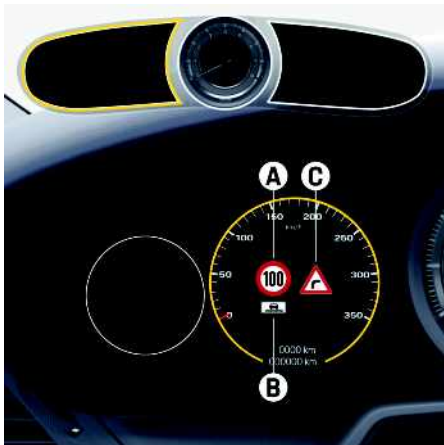


Fig. 205: Traffic sign display on the instrument cluster

- A Main traffic signs
- B Additional signs
- C Bend ahead warning

Up to three main traffic signs **A** including additional signs **B** can be displayed in the Speed & Assist display on the instrument cluster. The highest priority traffic sign is displayed on the left.

After the ignition is switched on, the most recent speed limit in force appears in the instrument cluster. If no speed limit is detected (e.g. on a motorway that has no speed limit) or if traffic sign detection is not available in the current area, a message appears in the instrument cluster.

- ▷ Please refer to chapter "Warning and Information Messages" on page 255.

Information

- In zones with traffic calming or residential streets, the display reads "5 km/h" (3 m/h).
- At unsigned motorway and dual carriageway entry and exit points, the relevant speed limit for country roads is displayed.

Speed limit warning

A speed limit warning with a warning threshold of 0 – 20 km/h (0 – 12 mph) can be activated in the PCM. When this threshold is exceeded, the relevant traffic sign starts to "glow". The first time it is exceeded, the displayed traffic sign also flashes.

Activating speed limit warning

- ▷ ASSIST ▷ Options ▷ Speed limits

Transmission

Driving with Porsche Doppelkupplung (PDK)

The 8-speed Porsche Doppelkupplung (PDK) is a transmission featuring an automatic and a manual shifting mode.

In **automatic shifting mode** (operating mode **D**), gear changing is automatic. You can change temporarily from automatic to manual shifting mode using the shift paddles on the steering wheel.

In **manual shifting mode** (operating mode **M**), you can change gear using the shift paddles on the steering wheel. You can switch between the **D** and **M** modes as required while driving.

- ▶ Make sure that the gearshift paddles on the steering wheel are not accidentally operated in automatic and manual shifting mode, triggering unintended gearshifts.

Changing operating mode

Operating mode **P** is active when the ignition is switched off.

The brake pedal must be pressed when switching from **P** to **N**, **D** or **R**.

The brake pedal must be pressed when switching from **D** to **R** or from **R** to **D**.

It is only possible to switch to the **M** operating mode from the **D** operating mode. In order to switch to the **P** operating mode, either the P button on the selector lever has to be pressed or the ignition switched off.

P button

The **P button** on the selector lever activates the transmission parking lock. When the ignition is switched off, the transmission parking lock is automatically engaged in the **D**, **M** or **R** operating modes.

Starting the engine

The engine can only be started if the brake pedal is pressed and mode **P** or **N** is activated.

Driving off in the vehicle

- ▶ Only select the desired operating mode for driving off (**D**, **M** or **R**) when the engine is idling and keep the brake pedal pressed while doing so.
- ▶ Since the vehicle crawls when in gear, only release the brake if you intend to drive off.

Driving off on hills

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "HOLD function" on page 119.

Stopping the vehicle

- ▶ During brief stops (e.g. at traffic lights), leave the selector lever in operating mode **D** or **M** and hold the vehicle with the brake pedal.
- ▶ Do not hold the vehicle on a slope using the accelerator. Use the brake pedal or the electric parking brake instead.
- ▶ Before leaving the vehicle, always apply the electric parking brake and activate operating mode **P**.

Parking the vehicle

- ▶ Press the accelerator pedal gently!
- ▶ When parking or manoeuvring in a small space, control the speed by careful use of the brake pedal.

Reading the indicator for operating mode and engaged gear



Fig. 206: Indicator for operating mode and engaged gear

When the engine is running, the operating mode **A** and engaged gear **B** are shown.

If the operating mode is inadvertently switched from **P** or **N** to a different operating mode without the brake being applied, the operating mode does not change. A message appears on the instrument cluster.

- ▶ To drive off, press the brake pedal and select the desired operating mode again from **P** or **N**.

Operating mode **R** or **D** flashes in the instrument cluster

An attempt has been made to select operating mode **R** above the permissible limit speed.

- ▶ Press the brake pedal and re-select the desired operating mode from **P** or **N**.

Operating modes

P – Parking lock

Engage parking lock only when the vehicle is stationary.



Fig. 207: Engaging the parking lock

- ▶ Press the **P** button.
If operating mode **P** flashes, the parking lock is not engaged. The vehicle can roll away.
- ▶ Select **P** from **R** again.

R – Reverse gear

- ▶ Select only if the vehicle is stationary and the brake is applied.

N – Neutral

Operating mode **N** must be selected for towing or in car washes, for example.

- ▶ Only select the desired position for driving off (**D**, **M** or **R**) when the engine is idling and the brake pedal is pressed.

D – Automatic shifting mode

- ▶ Engage operating mode **D** for "normal" driving.
The gears are shifted automatically according to the accelerator position and speed.

Information

Shifting gears on the steering wheel allows you to switch temporarily from automatic shifting mode **D** to manual shifting mode **M**.

For example, in the following cases:

- Shifting down before bends and on entering built-up areas.
- Shifting down on downward slopes (engine braking).
- Shifting down for brief spurts of acceleration.

Manual shifting mode remains engaged in the following cases:

- In overrun mode.
- When the vehicle is stationary, e.g. at an intersection.
- If the shifting logic of the vehicle would shift down by more than one gear.

The system leaves manual shifting mode in the following cases:

- Automatically after 6 seconds.

M - manual shifting mode

The shift paddles on the steering wheel enable shifting of the eight forward gears.



Fig. 208: Manual shifting mode

- ▶ Press the **M** button.
The currently engaged gear is retained when you change from **D** to **M**.
If you switch from **M** to **D**, the gear-changing map suitable for your current driving style is selected and the appropriate gear is selected.



Fig. 209: Steering wheel with shift paddles

Upshifting with the right "+" shift paddle

- ▶ Pull the right shift paddle.

Downshifting with the left "-" shift paddle

- ▶ Pull the left shift paddle.

Shifting to N – Neutral using the shift paddles

- ▶ Pull both shift paddles simultaneously and release them again immediately.

The transmission shifts to **N** - Neutral. The vehicle then rolls with the engine disengaged and idle speed without engine braking effect. When the operating mode last activated is **D** or **M**, the number in the gear indicator flashes.

Pulling one of the shift paddles engages a gear again.

Information

Below a speed threshold, the clutch does not re-engage. The desired operating mode must then be re-selected from **N** when the brake pedal is pressed.

Actuating the kickdown function

The kickdown function is active in mode **D**.

- ▶ For optimum acceleration, e.g. when overtaking, quickly press the accelerator pedal down as far as it will go (kickdown).

The transmission shifts down depending on the speed of travel and engine speed.

Upshifts occur at the highest possible engine speeds.

Driving in coasting mode

Coasting refers a vehicle driving with the engine disengaged at idle speed without engine braking.

Depending on the traffic, coasting can be initiated through attentive driving to increase efficiency.

The same applies for the active use of the engine brake, for example, when approaching the vehicle in front or a red traffic light. Efficient engine overrun shut-off can be activated by braking sharply or by using the shift paddle.

Preconditions for automatic coasting mode

- ✓ Driving in operating mode **D** or **M**.
- ✓ Cruise control or Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) activated.
- ✓ SPORT or SPORT PLUS driving programme not activated.
- ✓ No severe uphill or downhill gradients.

Initiating gliding mode manually

- ✓ Driving in operating mode **D** or **M**.
- ✓ Cruise control or Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) not activated.
- ✓ SPORT or SPORT PLUS driving programme not activated.
- ✓ No severe uphill or downhill gradients.
- ▶ Use the shift paddle to manually shift up beyond the highest possible gear

Ending coasting mode

- ▶ Press accelerator pedal.
 - or –
- ▶ Shift down with the shift panel.

The engine is engaged again and coasting is ended.

Driving off with Launch Control

- ✓ Vehicles with Sport Chrono package.

WARNING

Loss of control over the vehicle or endangering other road users

In certain circumstances (poor road conditions, lack of attention, etc.) you may lose control of the vehicle or endanger other road users.

- ▶ Only use Launch Control on public roads if road and traffic conditions permit.
- ▶ Do not endanger other road users when driving off with the Launch Control.

Information

Stress on components increases dramatically when starting with maximum acceleration in comparison with normal driving off.

Launch Control achieves maximum acceleration from a standstill.

- ✓ Transmission at operating temperature.
 - ✓ Road gradient low.
 - ✓ SPORT PLUS driving programme activated.
 - ✓ Steering wheel positioned straight ahead.
1. Press the brake pedal with your left foot.
 2. Quickly press down the accelerator fully and hold it down.

Engine speed levels off automatically.

- A message appears on the instrument cluster.
- Release the brake pedal within one second.

With manual transmission¹ driving

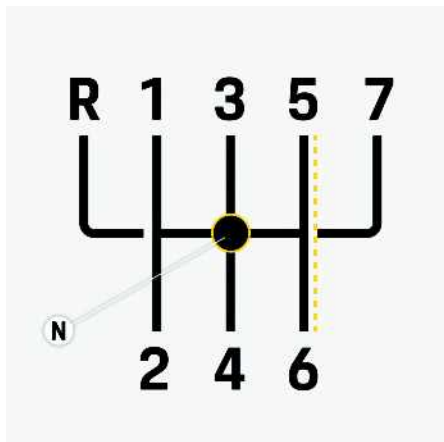


Fig. 210: Shift pattern on the gear lever

WARNING

Blocked pedals

Unsuitable or incorrectly secured floor mats and other objects can restrict the movement of the pedals or interfere with operation of the pedals.

- ▶ Ensure the floor mats or other objects do not interfere with the movement of the pedals.
- ▶ When changing gears, always ensure that the

clutch pedal is fully depressed and the gear has engaged fully.

- ▶ Select an appropriately low gear on upward and downward slopes.

This will ensure optimum use of engine power and engine braking

Information

Gears 1 to 6 are designed for normal and performance-oriented driving (top speed is achieved in 6th gear).

7th gear is designed for reduced engine speed, so that an increase in comfort is achieved at higher speeds while reducing fuel consumption at the same time.

Shifting the transmission to neutral

The neutral position **N** of the transmission is between 3rd and 4th gear.

Shifting to 7th gear

A sequential gearshift lock is installed to prevent an accidental shift to 7th gear when a sporty driving style is adopted.

7th gear can only be selected from an engaged 5th or 6th gear (see (Fig. 210), white/yellow line).

Shifting from 7th to 6th gear

- ▶ Guide the gear lever with slight pressure to the right from 7th into 6th gear.

Shifting from 7th to 5th gear

- ▶ Recommendation: From 7th gear, first shift to the neutral position **N** (gearshift lock active) and then into 5th gear.

Displaying engaged gear


The gear indicator in the instrument cluster indicates the currently engaged gear.


Engaging reverse gear

- ▶ Select reverse gear only when the vehicle is stationary.
- ▶ Reverse gear can be engaged after moving the gearshift lever to the left past the stop. When reverse gear is selected and the ignition is switched on, the reversing lights come on.

Driving with upshift prompt

The consumption-orientated upshift indicator in the instrument cluster helps the driver develop a fuel-saving driving style.

The upshift indicator  lights up - prompting you to shift up to the next-higher gear - depending on the selected gear, engine speed and accelerator pedal position.

- ▶ Change to the next-higher gear when the upshift indicator  lights up.

Observing permitted engine speed

- ▶ Change into a higher gear or ease off the accelerator before the needle reaches the red mark on the tachometer.

If the red zone is reached during acceleration, fuel feed is interrupted.

1. Equipment may not be available until a later date or may only be available in certain markets.

NOTICE

Risk of engine damage (overrevving) when shifting down to a lower gear.

- ▶ Take care not to exceed the maximum permitted engine speed when shifting down.

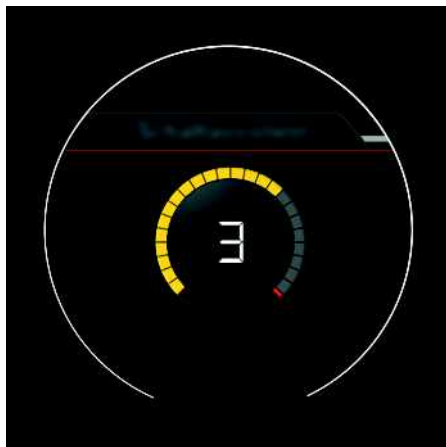
Driving with gear shift assist

Fig. 211: Example of gear shift assist

▶ **Gear shift assist**

In order to provide assistance during performance-oriented driving, the upshift indicator is displayed. The gearshift assist displays a prompt to shift to the next-higher gear with a pre-indication via segments that fill up. The sequence in which the segments are filled with colour is white, yellow, red.



Fig. 212: Example: higher gear

When all the segments are filled in red, a + sign appears next to the engaged gear in the display as a prompt to shift to the next-higher gear.

Tyres and Wheels

In addition to correct tyre inflation pressure and correct wheel alignment, the service life of the tyres also depends on your driving style. Abrupt acceleration, high cornering speeds and heavy braking increase tyre wear. Tyre wear is also greater at higher outside temperatures and on rough road surfaces.

Complying with load and speed requirements

- ▶ Drive at an appropriate speed.
- ▶ Do not overload the vehicle and check the roof load.
- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Technical Data" on page 280.

Checking tyre pressure

NOTICE

Insufficient tyre pressure can cause tyres to over-heat and thus be damaged – even invisibly.

- ▶ Hidden tyre damage will not be eliminated by correcting the tyre pressure.
- ▶ Never let air out of warm tyres. When tyres are warm, the tyre inflation pressure is increased. This could cause the tyre pressure to fall below the prescribed value.



Fig. 213: Tyre pressure plate

The tyre inflation pressure must match the prescribed value. These values are for cold tyres (20 ° C).

- ▶ Observe tyre pressure plate.
- ▶ Check the tyre pressure at least every 2 weeks when the tyres are cold.

Tyre Pressure Monitoring (TPM)

Tyre Pressure Monitoring offers the following functions:

- Permanent monitoring of tyre pressure and temperature.
- Display of actual tyre pressure (actual pressure) while driving.
- Tyre pressure warnings in two stages (yellow and red warning).
- Vehicle is stationary: Display of the pressure deviation from the required pressure.

The tyre pressure warning light and a corresponding message on the instrument cluster warn

against loss of pressure in two stages (yellow and red tyre pressure warning, depending on the extent of the pressure loss).

The tyre pressure warning light goes out only when the tyre pressure has been corrected.

The yellow tyre pressure warning is displayed for around 10 seconds after the car comes to a standstill and the ignition has been switched off or when the ignition is switched on again. The yellow tyre pressure warning can be acknowledged when the ignition is switched on. The red tyre pressure warning also appears during driving and can be acknowledged.

- ▶ If the tyre pressure warning light lights up and a tyre pressure warning is displayed despite the correct tyre pressure: Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Information

Tyre Pressure Monitoring gives a warning about a pressure drop caused by natural diffusion as well as about a gradual loss of pressure caused by foreign objects. Tyre Pressure Monitoring cannot warn you about tyre damage that occurs suddenly (e.g. a flat tyre due to unexpected external effects).

WARNING

Defective tyres

Driving with defective tyres can result in serious accidents.

- ▶ If a red tyre pressure warning appears on the instrument cluster: Stop immediately in a suitable place and check tyres for damage. If necessary, correct the damage using tyre sealant or fit the

spare wheel.

- ▶ **Do not** continue driving with defective tyres. Have defective tyres replaced immediately. Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.
- ▶ **Do not** drive with tyres in which the tyre pressure drops again very quickly. In case of doubt, have tyres checked by a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

WARNING

High speed with comfort pressure

Driving at excessive speeds when the comfort pressure is active will destroy the tyres and wheels.

- ▶ Reduce speed to below the maximum speed displayed on the instrument cluster.
- ▶ Inflate the tyres to the standard tyre pressure when driving at higher speeds.

Faults in the Tyre Pressure Monitoring (TPM) system

TPM will not function correctly in the following situations, for example:

- If the Tyre Pressure Monitoring is faulty
- If wheel transmitters for Tyre Pressure Monitoring are missing
- During the learning phase after the tyre settings have been updated
- After a wheel change without updating the tyre settings
- If tyre temperatures are too high

Viewing tyre pressure

The individual tyre pressures are only displayed above a speed of approx. 25 km/h (16 mph) or if the tyre has been inflated by at least 0.1 bar (1.5 psi). When the ignition is switched on after the vehicle has been stationary for more than approx. 10 minutes, lines (-.-) are shown instead of the tyre pressures.

▶ Tyre pressure ▶ Current press.

The display of the actual pressure is only for information. The tyre pressures change depending on the temperature.

- ▶ Under no circumstances should the tyre pressures be changed based on this display.

Displaying pressure difference



Fig. 214: Example of pressure difference

- ✓ The vehicle is stationary.

▶ Tyre pressure ▶ Deviation

The difference to the required pressure is displayed on the relevant wheel. Example: If **-0.1 bar (-1.5 psi)** is displayed for the rear right wheel, 0.1 bar (1.5 psi) must be added to this tyre. The displayed pressures take into account the tyre temperature.

- ▶ Always use the pressure deviation from the display or from the corresponding tyre pressure warning to correct the tyre pressure.

Setting tyres

Settings for the tyre type and tyre size, load and comfort/standard pressure can be made via the touch display in the dashboard:

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Tyre Pressure Monitoring (TPM)" on page 238.

Configuring Tyre Pressure Monitoring (TPM) in the PCM

WARNING

Incorrect settings

Low or high tyre pressure irreparably damages the tyre and the wheel, lengthens the braking distance and greatly increases the risk of an accident.

Despite the Tyre Pressure Monitoring system, it is still the driver's responsibility to ensure that the tyres are inflated with the correct tyre pressure and the vehicle settings are correct. Incomplete or incorrect settings may affect the accuracy of warnings and messages.

- ▶ Adapt tyre pressure to suit your specific tyres and the payload.
- ▶ Make sure that the settings in the TPM menu correspond to the tyres fitted on the vehicle and its payload (especially after a wheel change or changes in vehicle loading).
- ▶ Then select the type and size of fitted tyre again in the TPM menu, even if the settings for the newly fitted set of wheels are the same as for the old wheels.

Displaying pressure deviation and filling information

- ✓ The vehicle is stationary.

▶ CAR  ▶ CONTROL  ▶ Vehicle ▶ Tyre pressure monitoring ▶ Tyre pressure

The required pressure and the pressure deviation from the required pressure at the relevant wheel as well as the setting for load, tyre type and size are displayed.

Example: If **-0.1 bar** (-1.5 psi) is displayed for the rear right wheel, 0.1 bar (1.5 psi) must be added to this tyre. The displayed pressures take into account the tyre temperature.

- ▶ Always use the pressure deviation from the display or from the corresponding tyre pressure warning to correct the tyre pressure.

If the tyres are not yet taught, the new required pressures are displayed instead of the actual pressure deviations.

Setting tyre type and tyre size

Information

The options available depend on the model and tyre type. For this reason, some of the selection options shown here may not be available.

- ▶ Before fitting tyres and wheels with dimensions that are not available for selection in the TPM menu, the missing information should be added. Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.
- ▶ Use only tyres and wheels authorised by Porsche.

▶ CAR  ▶ CONTROL  ▶ Vehicle ▶ Tyre pressure monitoring ▶ Tyre selection

Selecting full load or partial load

▶ CAR  ▶ CONTROL  ▶ Vehicle ▶ Tyre Pressure Monitoring ▶ Full load

- Full load**
Full load is activated.
- Full load**
Partial load is activated.
- ▶ Adapt the tyre pressures to the selected load type.

Information

If the option **Full load** is not displayed, the specified tyre pressures are valid for all types of vehicle load.

Selecting comfort or standard pressure

The tyre pressures can be reduced to increase driving comfort.

If comfort pressure is selected, Tyre Pressure Monitoring automatically uses lower nominal pressure values when monitoring tyre pressure.


▶ CAR  ▶ CONTROL  ▶ Vehicle ▶ Tyre pressure monitoring ▶ Comfort pressure

- Comfort pressure**
Comfort pressure is activated.
- Comfort pressure**
Standard pressure is activated.
- ▶ Adapt the tyre pressures to comfort pressure or standard pressure.

Teaching in Tyre Pressure Monitoring

Tyre Pressure Monitoring begins to learn the tyres after a wheel change, wheel transmitter replacement or update of the tyre settings. During this process, Tyre Pressure Monitoring recognises the wheels and their locations. Position and pressure information is displayed as soon as Tyre Pressure Monitoring has assigned the wheels recognised as belonging to the vehicle to the correct wheel positions.

During this process, the required pressures for cold tyres (20 °C) are displayed in the PCM and a message appears on the instrument cluster.

The tyre pressure warning light  on the instrument cluster remains lit until all the wheels have been taught in.

Inflating tyres

CAUTION

Hot filling hose

The compressor's filling hose can get hot during the inflation process and can cause burns.

- ▶ Wear gloves.

The compressor is located under the cover in the luggage compartment.

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Luggage compartment" on page 146.
 - ▶ Read and follow the operating instructions on the compressor.
1. Screw the compressor's filler hose onto the tyre valve.
 2. Connect the compressor to a plug socket in the vehicle and switch on the compressor. The tyre is inflated.
 3. Check inflation pressure using the pressure

gauge and reduce tyre pressure or add more air if necessary. Check the inflation pressure again.

4. Switch off compressor.
5. Unscrew the compressor's filler hose.

Information

The tyre pressure can also be checked at a service station and the tyres can be inflated.

Reducing inflation pressure

1. Switch off compressor.
2. Open air bleed screw on the filler hose until the correct inflation pressure is achieved.

Reading off inscription on tyres



Fig. 215: Inscription on tyres

- A** Nominal width in mm
- B** Cross-section ratio in %
- C** Belt type code letter
- D** Rim diameter in inches
- E** Load rating code number
- F** Speed code letter

The speed code letter **F** indicates the maximum permitted speed for the tyre.

H	up to 210 km/h (130 mph)
V	up to 240 km/h (150 mph)
W	up to 270 km/h (168 mph)

Y	up to 300 km/h (186 mph)
----------	--------------------------

(Y)	up to 300 km/h (186 mph) as for Y tyres. Speeds of more than 300 km/h (186 mph) are also possible at a maximum tyre load capacity of 85 % (confirmation from tyre manufacturer required for speeds of more than 300 km/h (186 mph)).
------------	--

Detecting tyre damage

WARNING

Hidden tyre damage and rim flange damage

Hidden tyre damage can cause the tyre to burst. You may lose control of the vehicle.

- ▶ Check tyres, including the sidewalls, regularly for foreign bodies, nicks, cuts, cracks and bulges.
- ▶ Cross kerb edges slowly and at right angles if possible. Avoid heavy or sharp-angled impact against steep and sharp kerbs or sharp-edged objects (e.g. stones).
- ▶ If in doubt, have the wheel – particularly the inner side – checked by an expert. Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.
- ▶ Tyres must never be repaired under any circumstances. Sealing the tyre with the tyre sealant is only an emergency solution to enable you to drive to the nearest workshop.

In the case of the following tyre damage, the tyre must be replaced for safety reasons:

- Tyre damage where the possibility of a ply fracture cannot be ruled out.

- If the tyre has been thermally and mechanically overloaded following a loss of pressure or other previous damage.

Changing tyres and wheels

- ▶ Switch off the ignition when changing a wheel.

WARNING

Lack of grip

In the initial period, new tyres do not yet have their full road-holding ability or grip.

- ▶ You should therefore drive at moderate speeds during the first 200 km (125 miles) to extend the service life of the tyres and achieve full performance capability.
-
- ▶ Only fit tyres of the same make with the same specification number (e.g. "N..." etc.).
 - ▶ Before fitting new tyres, inquire about their current approval status: Contact your Porsche partner.
 - ▶ Use only tyre makes tested and approved by Porsche.
 - ▶ The deviation in tread depth on an axle must not be more than 30 %.
 - ▶ Only use second-hand tyres if you know their history.
 - ▶ Always replace both tyres on an axle so that different profile depths will not unnecessarily influence vehicle handling.
 - ▶ Tyres should only be fitted by professionals. Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained

workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

- ▶ Adapt your driving style to the changed vehicle handling.
- ▶ Only use tyres with tyre pressure sensors for Tyre Pressure Monitoring (TPM).
- ▶ Make sure that the wheels are compatible with the TPM system in the vehicle. For information on suitable wheels and on the TPM system in the vehicle: Contact your Porsche partner.
- ▶ When changing a tyre, check the battery charge condition of the tyre pressure sensors: Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.
- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Technical Data" on page 280.

Information

If new tyres are fitted to only one axle, the different tread depths on the two axles can cause a marked change from the previous driving behaviour to which you have become accustomed. This is particularly true when new tyres are fitted to the rear axle. The effect is reduced continuously, however, as tyre mileage increases.

Checking and replacing valves and valve caps

- ▶ Use only genuine Porsche valves for the Tyre Pressure Monitoring (TPM) system.
- ▶ Check the valves whenever the tyres are changed and replace them if necessary. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

If valve caps are missing, the valve is unprotected from dust and dirt, resulting in leaks.

- ▶ Always screw on valve caps tightly to protect valve inserts from dirt. Dirty valve inserts can cause creeping air loss.
- ▶ Replace missing valve caps immediately.
- ▶ Use only plastic valve caps.

Using winter tyres

WARNING

Exceeding the maximum permitted speed

Exceeding the maximum permitted speed can cause tyres to burst.

- ▶ Observe the maximum permitted speed for the tyre.
 - ▶ Only fit winter tyres with a maximum permitted speed rating that is lower than the specified maximum vehicle speed if they bear the M+S designation or the snowflake symbol, depending on the country, on the tyre sidewall. Observe country-specific laws.
 - ▶ Affix a sticker showing the maximum permitted speed in the driver's field of vision. Observe country-specific laws.
 - ▶ Set the maximum permitted speed as the speed limit.
-
- ▶ Install winter tyres in a timely manner before the cold season begins.
 - ▶ Use only tyre makes tested and approved by Porsche.
 - ▶ Before fitting new tyres, inquire about their current approval status: Contact your Porsche partner.

Information

At low temperatures, juddering noises caused by the tyres can occur during manoeuvring or accelerating out of curves on both dry and wet road surfaces.

The driving performance and comfort of summer tyres is reduced at low temperatures below 7 °C. Porsche therefore recommends that you fit winter tyres on the vehicle when temperatures are below 7 °C.

Extremely low temperatures below –15 °C can cause permanent damage to summer tyres.

Winter tyres are no longer suitable if their tread depth is less than 4 mm.

Using snow chains

Snow chains can be fitted to the rear axle only, with the tyre/wheel combinations listed under "Technical Data" and marked for snow chain use.

- ▶ Use only the snow chains approved by Porsche to guarantee sufficient clearance between the wheel well and the chain.
- ▶ Remove ice and snow deposits in the wheel well before installing the chains.
- ▶ Observe the different national regulations regarding maximum speeds.

Checking tyre tread

Most tyres have integrated wear indicators in the centre of the tread. These wear indicators are located in the main tread channels and display the minimum tread depth of 1.6 mm.

- ▶ Check tyre tread regularly, particularly before and after long journeys.

Measuring tyre tread depth

- ▶ Insert a commercially available tread depth gauge or calliper in the tyre tread and measure the tyre tread depth.

Information

Uneven tyre wear indicates a defect on the vehicle:

- ▶ Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Storing wheels

Tyres must **not** be more than 6 years old. Chemical additives, which make the rubber in the tyre elastic, lose their effect over the course of time and the rubber becomes brittle. The age of a tyre can be seen from the DOT code on the tyre sidewall. If the last four digits are 3016, for example, the tyre was manufactured in the 30th week of 2016.

- ▶ Always store wheels in cool, dry and dark conditions. Tyres without rims should be stored in a standing position.
- ▶ Do not store summer tyres or park vehicles fitted with summer tyres at ambient temperatures below –15 °C.
- ▶ Avoid contact with petrol, oil and grease.

Balancing wheels

As a precaution, have wheels balanced in spring (summer tyres) and before winter (M+S tyres).

- ▶ Visit a qualified specialist workshop. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Changing a wheel

WARNING

Working under the vehicle

The vehicle can slip off the jack.

- ▶ Make sure that no one is in the vehicle when jacking up and changing a wheel.
- ▶ Raise the vehicle only at the prescribed jacking points on the vehicle underbody.
- ▶ Never jack up the vehicle when it is parked on a surface that slopes up, down or to the side.
- ▶ Only use the jack to raise the vehicle for changing wheels.
- ▶ Always place the vehicle on solid supports when working under the vehicle.

Information

The tools needed for changing wheels (jack, wheel bolt wrench, mounting aids, etc.) are not included in the standard scope of supply for the vehicle.

- ▶ For information on the tool required: Contact your Porsche partner.

Information

The tyre and wheel sizes are different on each axle. When removing the wheels, mark the direction of rotation and position on each wheel and carry out the installation according to these markings.

- ▶ Only use wheels/tyres with approved dimensions for the relevant axle.
- ▶ Please refer to the vehicle registration documents or the "Technical data" chapter in this Manual.

Caring for wheel attachment faces

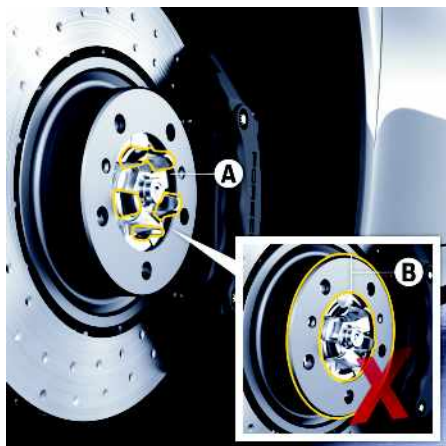


Fig. 216: Wheel attachment faces

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the wheel and wheel attachment face.

- ▶ The wheel attachment face **B** on the brake disc and on the wheel hub itself must **not** be greased.
- ▶ Only the areas **A** may be greased. Grease these areas very thinly with Optimoly® TA: Contact your Porsche partner. Do not use any other grease or paste.

Caring for wheel bolts

- ▶ Always clean the wheel bolts before fitting.
- ▶ Wheel bolts must not be greased.
- ▶ Replace damaged wheel bolts. Only use genuine Porsche wheel bolts assigned especially to this model, or wheel bolts of similar quality which

have been manufactured according to Porsche specifications and production requirements.

- ▶ **Tighten wheel bolts to a tightening torque of 160 Nm (118 ftlb.).**
- ▶ Do not use any force-activated tools such as impact screwdrivers.

Using security wheel bolts



Fig. 217: Adapter for security wheel bolts

The adapter for the security wheel bolts is located in the tool kit.

- ▶ To loosen and tighten the wheel bolt with anti-theft protection, the adapter must be used between the wheel bolt and the wheel bolt wrench.
- ▶ When positioning the adapter ensure that it engages fully in the teeth of the wheel bolt.

Changing a wheel

Preparing the vehicle

1. Activate the transmission parking lock using the P button.
2. Activate the electric parking brake.
3. Switch off ignition.
4. Secure the vehicle to prevent it from rolling away, e.g. by placing wheel chocks at the wheels on the opposite side.
5. Slightly loosen the wheel bolts or wheel nuts on the wheel to be changed.
6. Lift the vehicle only at the specified jacking points.
 - ▶ Please refer to chapter "Jack and Lifting Platform" on page 128.
7. Raise the vehicle until the wheel lifts off the ground.

Changing a wheel



Fig. 218: Screw in one assembly aid on vehicles without PCCB



Fig. 219: Screw in two assembly aids on vehicles with PCCB

1. For vehicles without PCCB: Remove one wheel bolt and screw in one assembly aid.
– or –
1. For vehicles with PCCB: Remove two wheel bolts and screw in two assembly aids **A** and **B**.

NOTICE

The brake discs can become damaged in the case of improper wheel change, especially in vehicles with PCCB.

► Screw in assembly aids when changing a wheel.

2. Remove the remaining wheel bolts.
 - Please refer to chapter "Caring for wheel bolts" on page 244.
3. Remove the wheel.
 - Please refer to chapter "Caring for wheel attachment faces" on page 244.
4. Fit a new wheel.
5. Insert wheel bolts and tighten slightly in diagonally opposite sequence.
6. Remove assembly aids and screw in remaining wheel bolts. Initially tighten wheel bolts only slightly in diagonally opposite sequence so that the wheel is centred.
7. Inflate the tyre if necessary.
8. Lower the vehicle fully and remove the jack.
9. Tighten the wheel bolts in diagonally opposite sequence. Do not use any force-activated tools such as impact screwdrivers.
- 10. Immediately after changing a wheel, use a torque wrench to check the prescribed tightening torque of the wheel bolts (160 Nm/118 ftlb.).**
11. The settings for Tyre Pressure Monitoring (TPM) are updated.























- Please refer to chapter "Configuring Tyre Pressure Monitoring (TPM) in the PCM" on page 239.











Vehicle Settings

Different vehicle settings can be adjusted depending on the model, country and equipment. The vehicle settings described here are therefore not available in all models, countries and equipment versions. For safety reasons, some functions are only available when the vehicle is stationary.

The vehicle settings remain stored after the ignition is switched off.

▷ Please refer to chapter "Personal Settings" on page 169.

What do I want to do?	What should I choose?	Where?
Set locking and unlocking options	▶ CAR  ▶ CONTROL  ▶ Vehicle ▶ Locking	
Adjust lighting, windscreen wipers and exterior mirror	▶ CAR  ▶ CONTROL  ▶ Vehicle ▶ Light and visibility	
Adjust seat heating, seat ventilation and seat position	▶ CAR  ▶ CONTROL  ▶ Vehicle ▶ Seat settings	
Set Tyre Pressure Monitoring (TPM)	▶ CAR  ▶ CONTROL  ▶ Vehicle ▶ Tyre Pressure Monitoring	▷ p. 238
Set quick access buttons (◊ buttons) on the multi-function steering wheel/on the centre console switch panel	▶ CAR  ▶ CONTROL  ▶ Vehicle ▶ Quick access buttons	
Program garage door opener (HomeLink®)	▶ CAR  ▶ CONTROL  ▶ Vehicle ▶ Garage door opener	▷ p. 117
Display service history (electronic service record)	▶ CAR  ▶ CONTROL  ▶ Vehicle ▶ Service history The servicing performed and the service scope are displayed.	
Modify the PCM display	▶ CAR  ▶ CONTROL  ▶ Show ▶ PCM display	
Modify the instrument cluster display	▶ CAR  ▶ CONTROL  ▶ Show ▶ Instrument cluster display	
Modify customised view in the instrument cluster	▶ CAR  ▶ CONTROL  ▶ Displays ▶ Display instrument cluster ▶ Content ▶ Customised view Four fields can be filled with a variety of vehicle information via drag & drop. One item of vehicle information cannot be assigned to several fields.	
Set date and time	▶ CAR  ▶ CONTROL  ▶ System ▶ Date and time	

What do I want to do?	What should I choose?	Where?
Set units	▶ CAR  ▶ CONTROL  ▶ System ▶ Units	
Set the voice control system	▶ CAR  ▶ CONTROL  ▶ System ▶ Voice control	
Set the language	▶ CAR  ▶ CONTROL  ▶ System ▶ Language	
Adjust volume of warning signals and ParkAssist	▶ CAR  ▶ CONTROL  ▶ System ▶ Warning tones	
Reset to factory settings	▶ CAR  ▶ CONTROL  ▶ System ▶ Factory settings Resetting to the factory settings deletes all settings made.	

Voice Control

WARNING

Impaired voice recognition

Your voice may change in stressful situations. This can lead to the desired telephone connection failing or not coming about quickly enough under certain circumstances.

- ▶ Do not use voice control in an emergency.
- ▶ Enter the emergency number via the touch display.

Voice control can be used to access media, phone and navigation functions, air-conditioning settings and apps. Voice control adjusts to the speaker and starts learning from the first dialogue.

On-board and Online voice recognition functions¹ are linked seamlessly in the voice control system. Voice control does not support all system languages.

For information on operating Porsche Communication Management (PCM):

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Porsche Communication Management (PCM)" on page 175.

Calling up voice control




Fig. 220: Voice control button on the steering wheel

1. Prerequisite: A data connection is established.

Starting voice control


- ✓ Ignition switched on.
- ✓ No phone call active.
- ✓ Parking aid is not active.

1. Briefly press the  button on the steering wheel.


A rising acoustic signal is heard and the symbol  for voice control appears on the PCM.

2. Say the voice command.


Ending voice control

- ✓ Voice control is active.
- ▶ Press the  button on the steering wheel. A fading acoustic signal sounds.

Information

The dialogue can be paused by tapping on the microphone symbol  and started again by tapping again.

Other functions of the voice control button

The  button on the steering wheel can activate different functions depending on the application:


- Skips a running announcement when pressed briefly.
 - Interrupts the current dialogue when pressed briefly.
 - Activates the Siri voice control system through a longer press.
- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Switching between Apple CarPlay and using the iPhone as an iPod" on page 40.

Information

- Navigation announcements and traffic notices are not given during a dialogue.
- With voice control active, list entries can be selected via voice control, the rotary push button or the touch display.
- If the spoken voice command is not understood or if it cannot be interpreted, voice control responds with the question **Excuse me?** and the voice command can then be repeated.

Interrupting voice control

Voice control can be interrupted in order to say other voice commands. Activating/deactivating voice control interruption in the PCM:

- ▶ Select **SET**  ▶ **System settings** ▶ **Voice control** ▶ **Interrupt voice control**.

Using Porsche Connect services in the voice control system

- ✓ Data connection is successfully established.
- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Porsche Connect" on page 182.
- Online search function for entering navigation destinations as well as loading portal POIs and other POI categories from My Porsche.
- Online voice search as well as dictating text messages/e-mails.

Notes on communication using voice control

Note the following points when using voice control:

- Speak clearly and at a normal volume.

- Stress voice commands evenly, without long pauses in your speech.
- Reduce disruptive sounds caused by closing doors, windows and sliding roof, for example.
- Only the driver should issue voice commands, as the hands-free microphone is pointed towards the driver's side.


Adapting voice control

1. CAR  ► CONTROL  ► System ► Voice control

2. Select the desired setting.

Saying voice commands

There are three types of voice commands:

- **Global voice commands** can always be used. If, for example, the main menu **NAV**  is active and the command **Radio station XY** is spoken, the station mentioned is called up.
- **General and valid voice commands** can be spoken at any point in the dialogue:

- **New input**
- **Correction:** If, for example, a telephone number was input in several blocks (e.g. 0711 911), the most recent block input is deleted.
- **Pause:** Pauses voice control, e.g. when dictating a message. Voice control can be paused for a maximum of 5 minutes. When this time elapses, the dialogue is automatically terminated.
- **Help:** Input assistance with possible voice commands is displayed.
- **Cancel**
- **Dialogue-related voice commands** are needed as soon as a dialogue is conducted with the PCM, e.g. **Line 1, Next page/Previous page, Yes/No**

Information

More information about Porsche Connect (help videos, Porsche Connect operating instructions and questions & answers) can be found at www.porsche.com/connect and in the "Good to know" app (availability dependent on country).

Operating the list by voice control

Browsing through a list

- In order to scroll forwards/backwards in a list in the PCM, say **Next page/previous page**.
 - or –
 - Navigate a list via touch display or rotary push button.

Saying a list entry

List entries and line numbers marked in blue in the touch display in the dashboard can be spoken.

- Say the voice command **Line 1**.
 - or –
 - Say a list entry marked in blue.

Global voice commands for radio

What do I want to do?	What do I have to say?	Information
Switch reception range	(Set/switch on) tuner e.g. FM/DAB/Online Radio	
Select station	Select station	Only stations that can currently be received can be spoken.
Tune to a station that can currently be received	(Switch on) station e.g. station XY	Only stations that can currently be received can be spoken.
Enter frequency	(Play) frequency e.g. 91.1 FM	Directly selecting a frequency may cause the reception range to change.

Global voice commands for media

What do I want to do?	What do I have to say?	Information
Change the media source	Play e.g. SD card/USB/Bluetooth/iPod	
Select artist/album/track/genre	Play (artist) e.g. Allan Taylor Play (album) e.g. Songs For The Road Play (track) e.g. Let the Music Flow Play (genre) e.g. Rock Play e.g. Let The Music Flow from Songs for the Road Play e.g. Let The Music Flow by Allan Taylor Play e.g. Songs For The Road by Allan Taylor	Only artists/albums/songs/genres that are available in the active media source can be spoken.
Play music similar to current track	Play similar music	
Use natural voice commands	Examples: Play me something from the SD card. I want to listen to rock music.	As an alternative to actual commands, the PCM can detect natural voice commands (not available in all languages).

Global voice commands for telephone

- ✓ The telephone is connected to the PCM.
- ▷ Please refer to chapter "Telephone" on page 222.

What do I want to do?	What do I have to say?	Information
Open the redial feature	Redial	
Enter a phone number	Dial number/Number e.g. 0711 911 12345	In the next step, the system asks for the telephone number./The number you entered is called.
Call mailbox	Call mailbox	
Call a contact	Call contact/Display phonebook	In the next step, the system asks for the name of the contact.

What do I want to do?	What do I have to say?	Information
Call a stored contact	Call e.g. Smith (private/work/general)	If the contact is not unique, the command leads to the dialogue. You can say the first name, surname or both. A specific telephone number can also be selected.
Call up the call list	Call list/missed calls/incoming calls/dialled numbers	Voice commands lead to a global call list from which an entry can be selected or called.
Read out e-mails/text messages	Read out e-mails/text messages	✓ The connected mobile phone supports the function.
Dictate messages	Dictate (new) e-mail/(new) text message	✓ The connected mobile phone supports the function. The service is not available in all languages and markets. Service cannot be used with Apple devices.
Use natural voice commands	Examples: I want to call John Smith. Call John Smith on the mobile phone. Show me my call list. Dial the last number again.	As an alternative to actual commands, the PCM can detect natural voice commands (not available in all languages).

Global voice commands for navigation

What do I want to do?	What do I have to say?	Information
Enter a new destination	Take me to e.g. London, 10 Downing Street/ Enter address/Enter new destination	Depending on the country selected, you can navigate by saying Take me to in one sentence or step by step.
Select a recent destination	Recent destinations/stored destinations	
Enter a stopover	Enter a stopover	
Select home/work as destination	Take me home/Take me to work	Starts navigation to the stored address.
Drive to the address of a stored contact	Take me to e.g. John Smith	In the next step, the system asks for the name of the contact.

A	What do I want to do?	What do I have to say?	Information
B C D E F G H I	Search for destination or point of interest	Search (point of interest) e.g. Porsche Service Search e.g. an Italian restaurant nearby/along the route/at a stopover/at the destination	You can say brand names or POI categories (e.g. search for point of interest airport).
J K L M N O	Search for a destination online	Online Search/Internet search for e.g. a baker's shop	The service is not available in all languages and markets. ▷ Please refer to chapter "Porsche Connect" on page 182.
P Q R S T	Select country	Enter country/change country	
U V W X Y Z	Select town/city	Enter location	
	Search for a restaurant/rest area/toilet/cash machine/petrol station	Next Restaurant/Rest area/Toilet/ATM/Petrol station	Shows the respective search criterion nearby.
	Start/stop route guidance	Start/stop route guidance	
	Determine amount of fuel remaining	Range/remaining range	
	Call up traffic information	Traffic information	✓ Route guidance active.
	Request arrival time	When will I arrive?	✓ Route guidance active.
	Calculate alternative route/Avoid traffic jam	Calculate alternative routes/avoid traffic jam	After alternative routes are calculated, you can make a choice, for example, via Route 2 or via the colour of the alternative route in the map view such as green .
	Use natural voice commands	Examples: Take me to e.g. London, 10 Downing Street. Drive me to the next restaurant. Where is the next petrol station? I have to refuel. Show me the map. Are there any traffic jams on the route?	As an alternative to actual commands, the PCM can detect natural voice commands (not available in all languages).

Global voice commands for air conditioning

What do I want to do?	What do I have to say?	Information
Switch on air conditioning	Switch on air conditioning	
Set temperature	Set air conditioning to e.g. 19 degrees	
Increase/reduce temperature	Increase the temperature by e.g. 2 degrees	
Seat heating	Switch seat heating on/off Switch seat heating to e.g. level 1	
Seat ventilation	Switch seat ventilation on/off Switch seat ventilation to e.g. level 1	
Switch defrost mode on	Switch defrost mode on/off	
Switch on Eco Mode	Switch Eco Mode on/off	
Switch on air circulation	Switch air circulation on/off	
Switch ioniser on	Switch ioniser on/off	
Switch on climate synchronisation	Switch climate synchronisation on/off	
Use natural voice commands	Examples: I am cold. It is too warm.	As an alternative to actual commands, the PCM can detect natural voice commands (not available in all languages).

Global voice commands for apps

What do I want to do?	What do I have to say?	Information
News	Show me the news Show me the news from BBC News	
Weather	Show me the weather How is the weather in e.g. London Will it rain tomorrow	
Use natural voice commands	Examples: What's new in the headlines? Read out the headlines to me. I want to see the weather report.	As an alternative to actual commands, the PCM can detect natural voice commands (not available in all languages).

Global voice commands for online music services

What do I want to do?	What do I have to say?	Information
Play Napster content	Play e.g. Allan Taylor from Napster Play e.g. Jazz from Napster Play e.g. Songs For The Road by Allan Taylor from Napster	

Global voice commands for calendar

What do I want to do?	What do I have to say?	Information
Show appointments	Show me my appointments e.g. today What appointments do I have e.g. tomorrow from 4 pm	

Warning and Information Messages








If a warning message appears, always refer to the corresponding chapters in this manual.












When certain warning lights appear, an additional acoustic signal sounds.










Warning messages only appear if all measurement prerequisites are met – all fluid levels should therefore be checked regularly.













The following tables are an extract from the main warning and information messages.


Security

Display	Message	Meaning and action required
	 <p>Airbag system fault Driving permitted Inspection necessary</p>	<p>Airbag system is faulty.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	 <p>Relieve steering</p>	<p>There is too much strain on the steering lock.</p> <p>Possible to drive on.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Relieve the steering lock by turning the steering wheel to the left or right.
	 <p>Steering locked Visit workshop</p>	<p>Steering lock is active.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Unlock the vehicle to unlock the steering wheel. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	 <p>PowerAssist failure Increased steering force Driving permitted</p>	<p>Power steering has failed, is restricted or is faulty.</p> <p>Possible to drive on.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
 lights up	 <p>Brake fluid level low Park vehicle safely</p>	<p>Brake fluid level is too low.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Stop in a suitable place. ▶ Do not continue driving. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	 <p>Brake booster failure</p>	<p>Power steering has failed or is faulty.</p>

A	Display	Message	Meaning and action required
B			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Stop in a suitable place. ▶ Do not continue driving. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
C			
D			
E			
F	 lights up		<p>Brake force distribution fault</p> <p>Park vehicle safely</p> <p>Brake force distribution is faulty.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Stop in a suitable place. ▶ Do not continue driving. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
G			
H			
I			
J	 lights up		<p>ABS/PSM failure</p> <p>Adapted driving permitted</p> <p>ABS or Porsche Stability Management (PSM) has failed. Possible to drive on.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
K			
L			
M	 lights up		<p>Brake pads worn</p> <p>Change brake pads</p> <p>Driving permitted</p> <p>Brake pads are worn.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have brake pads replaced immediately. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
N			
O			
P			<p>Parking brake in service mode</p> <p>Parking brake is in service mode.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
Q			
R			<p>P not available</p> <p>Vehicle can roll away</p> <p>Apply electric parking brake</p> <p>Vehicles with PDK: Transmission parking lock P not available.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Select operating mode P. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▷ Please refer to chapter "Transmission" on page 233.
S			
T			
U			<p>Rain or light sensor faulty</p> <p>Service necessary</p> <p>Rain/light sensor is defective.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Switch on windscreen wipers and lights manually. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
V			
W			
X	 flashes		<p>Example:</p> <p>Left stat. cornering light defective</p> <p>Check static cornering light</p> <p>The indicated cornering light is faulty.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Check relevant light. ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
Y			
Z			






Display	Message	Meaning and action required
 lights up	 Driving light control fault Temporary status Driving permitted	Driving light control is faulty. ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	 Example: Rear left indicator faulty Check indicator	Indicated light is defective. ▶ Check relevant light. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	 High beam assist. not available Driving permitted Activate high beam manually	Full beam assistant is temporarily unavailable. ▶ Actuate high beam manually. If the fault persists: ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	 High beam assist. not available No camera view Clean windscreen if necessary	Full beam assistant temporarily unavailable due to camera fault. ▶ Windscreen may need cleaning. If the fault persists: ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	 Headlight beam adjust fault Driving permitted Inspection necessary	Headlight levelling is faulty. ▶ Adapt your speed to the changed conditions. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	 Wiper defective Service necessary	Windscreen wiper is defective. ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
 lights up	 Check tyres	Significant pressure loss in one or several tyres.

A	Display	Message	Meaning and action required
B			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Stop in a suitable place. ▶ Check the indicated tyre for damage. ▶ Add sealant if necessary. ▶ Set the correct tyre pressure at the next opportunity. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▷ Please refer to chapter "Flat Tyre" on page 110.
C			
D			
E			
F			
G	 lights up	 <p style="text-align: center;">Inflate</p>	<p>Pressure loss in one or several tyres.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Set the correct tyre pressure at the next opportunity. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▷ Please refer to chapter "Flat Tyre" on page 110.
H			
I			
J	 flashes or lights up	 <p style="text-align: center;">TPM fault Service necessary</p>	<p>Fault in Tyre Pressure Monitoring (TPM) system. Tyre pressure is not monitored.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
K			
L			
M	 flashes or lights up	 <p style="text-align: center;">System briefly not available Temporary status Driving permitted</p>	<p>Tyre Pressure Monitoring (TPM) is temporarily inactive, e.g. in the case of overheated sensors or interference signals.</p> <p>Tyre pressure is not monitored.</p> <p>If the fault persists:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
N			
O			
P			
Q	 flashes or lights up	 <p style="text-align: center;">TPM inactive System learning above xx km/h</p>	<p>Tyre Pressure Monitoring (TPM) requires the displayed speed to learn the wheels.</p> <p>During this time, the current tyre pressures are not displayed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Perform Tyre Pressure Monitoring again later.
R			
S			
T	 flashes or lights up	 <p style="text-align: center;">Tyre change detected Update settings</p>	<p>After the wheels have been changed, the tyre settings must be updated.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Update tyre settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▷ Please refer to chapter "Vehicle Settings" on page 246.
U			
V			
W			
X	 lights up	 <p style="text-align: center;">Tyre pressure too low or Comfort pressure Reduce speed</p>	<p>Speed for set tyre pressure has been exceeded.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Reduce speed. ▶ Check the tyre pressure at the next opportunity.
Y			
Z			





Display	Message	Meaning and action required
	<p>Pedestrian warning not available</p> <p>Service necessary</p>	<p>Pedestrian warning is temporarily unavailable.</p> <p>If the fault persists:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*









* Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Engine

Display	Message	Meaning and action required
	<p>Oil level critical</p> <p>Add up to xx l</p>	<p>The minimum oil level has been exceeded.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Stop immediately in a suitable place and switch off the engine. ▶ Check whether there is an obvious oil leak on or under the vehicle. Do not continue driving if there is an obvious oil leak. ▶ Call up oil measurement in instrument cluster. ▶ Add oil if necessary. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▷ Please refer to chapter "Engine oil" on page 108. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	<p>Oil level too high</p> <p>Driving permitted</p> <p>Inspection necessary</p>	<p>Oil level is above maximum.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	<p>Oil level measurement fault</p> <p>Driving permitted</p> <p>Visit workshop</p>	<p>Oil level measurement failure.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	<p>Oil level low</p> <p>Add up to xx l</p>	<p>Minimum oil level is reached.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Add oil. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▷ Please refer to chapter "Engine oil" on page 108.
	<p>Oil pressure low</p> <p>Park vehicle</p>	<p>Oil pressure is too low.</p>




A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

A	Display	Message	Meaning and action required
B		safely	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Stop immediately in a suitable place and switch off the engine. ▶ Do not continue driving. ▶ Check whether there is an obvious oil leak on or under the vehicle. ▶ Call up oil measurement in instrument cluster. ▶ Add oil if necessary. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▷ Please refer to chapter "Engine oil" on page 108. ▶ Do not continue driving if the warning message is displayed despite the oil level being correct. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
C			
D			
E			
F			
G			
H			
I			
J		Oil pressure measurement fault	Oil pressure measurement fault.
K		Driving permitted	Possible to drive on.
L		Visit workshop	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
M			
N			
O		Oil temperature too high	Oil temperature is too high.
P		Reduce load	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Stop in a suitable place, switch off the engine and let it cool down. ▶ Do not continue driving. ▶ Call up oil measurement in instrument cluster. ▶ Add oil if necessary. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▷ Please refer to chapter "Engine oil" on page 108.
Q			
R		Oil temperature gauge fault	Oil temperature gauge is faulty.
S		Driving permitted	Possible to drive on.
T		Visit workshop	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
U			
V			
W	Coolant temperature display at maximum mark		Engine coolant level too low
X		Park vehicle safely and allow to cool down	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Stop immediately in a suitable place, switch off the engine and let it cool down. ▶ Check engine coolant level. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▷ Please refer to chapter "Coolant" on page 90. ▶ Add engine coolant if necessary.
Y			If the fault persists:
Z			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*

Display	Message	Meaning and action required
	 <p>Coolant temperature gauge fault Driving permitted Visit workshop</p>	<p>Coolant temperature gauge failure.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
Engine coolant or oil temperature display at maximum mark	 <p>Engine temperature too high Park vehicle and allow engine to cool</p>	<p>Engine coolant or oil temperature is too high.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Stop immediately in a suitable place, switch off the engine and let it cool down. ▶ Check the radiators and air guides in and around the vehicle for obstructions. ▶ Check coolant and oil level. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▷ Please refer to chapter "Engine oil" on page 108. ▶ Add engine coolant if necessary. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▷ Please refer to chapter "Coolant" on page 90. <p>If the fault persists:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	 <p>Coolant pump faulty</p>	<p>Coolant pump is faulty. Possible to drive on.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
 lights up	 <p>Reduced engine power Driving permitted Visit workshop</p>	<p>Engine power is reduced. Possible to drive on.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
 lights up	 <p>Engine control fault Park vehicle safely</p>	<p>Engine control system is faulty.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Stop in a suitable place and switch off the engine. ▶ Do not continue driving. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	 <p>Engine control fault Driving permitted Visit workshop</p>	<p>Engine control system is faulty. Possible to drive on.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*



A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z







A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z









Display	Message	Meaning and action required
	Check particle filter See Driver's Manual	The particle filter has become clogged with soot. Adapt your driving style so that the filter cleans itself automatically. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Select SPORT driving programme. ▶ Switch off cruise control and Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC). ▶ Change alternately between accelerating to the maximum permissible speed (preferably extra-urban) and releasing the accelerator pedal, removing the foot completely from the pedal. Always observe the relevant speed limits. ▶ Repeat the procedure until the message extinguishes. If the fault persists: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	Particle filter Driving permitted Consult dealer	The particle filter has become clogged with soot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	Particle filter Park vehicle safely	The particle filter has become clogged with soot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Stop immediately in a suitable place. ▶ Have the vehicle towed to a qualified specialist workshop.*








* Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Vehicle

Display	Message	Meaning and action required
	Vehicle electrical system fault Park vehicle safely	Fault in vehicle electrical system. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Stop immediately in a suitable place. ▶ Do not continue driving. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	Engine run req. for electricity Vehicle electrical system fault Park vehicle	Fault in vehicle electrical system. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Stop in a suitable place. ▶ Do not continue driving. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*









Display	Message	Meaning and action required
	safely	
	Vehicle electrical system fault or Battery low Service necessary	Fault in vehicle electrical system or battery is low. Possible to drive on. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	Start/stop failure	The Start Stop function is not available at present. If the fault persists: ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	Transmission failure Park vehicle safely	Vehicles with PDK: Transmission failure. Vehicle can be driven only until it comes to a stop. Do not continue driving. ▶ Stop immediately in a suitable place. ▶ Have the vehicle towed to a qualified specialist workshop. ▶ Please refer to chapter "Towing" on page 228.
	Transmission overheated Park vehicle safely Allow transmission to cool	Vehicles with PDK: Transmission temperature is too high. ▶ Stop in a suitable place and let the transmission cool down. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	Transmission temperature too high Reduce load	Vehicles with PDK: Transmission temperature is too high. Possible to drive on. A "warning jerk" can be felt when driving off. Engine power may be restricted. ▶ Stop in a suitable place. ▶ Reduce engine load. ▶ Do not hold the vehicle with the accelerator; use the brakes instead. ▶ Allow the engine to run in operating mode P or N until the warning disappears.
	Transmission fault Reverse gear not available	Vehicles with PDK: Transmission error. Reverse gear may not function.










A	Display	Message	Meaning and action required
B C			Possible to continue driving with restricted gearshift comfort. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
D E F		Service notification transmission	Vehicles with PDK: Additional transmission service is required. Possible to drive on. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
G H I		Press clutch	Vehicles with manual transmission: Start possible only when clutch pedal is pressed. ▶ Press the clutch pedal when starting.
J K		Emergency call function fault Service necessary	Emergency call function is faulty. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
L M N		Driver Card not found	Driver Card was not detected. ▶ Contact Security Operating Centre (SOC) if necessary.
O P Q		Maintenance in xx days	Service reminder. ▶ Bring the vehicle in for service no later than after the distance or time shown has elapsed. The intervals in the "Guarantee and Maintenance" booklet are decisive however.
R S T U V		Key not found or key fault Hold back of key against marked area	Battery in the driver's key is flat. ▶ To start the vehicle, place the key at the front left in the storage compartment in the centre console. ▶ Replace battery. ▷ Please refer to chapter "Driver's Key" on page 97. or
W X Y Z	 or 	Change key position	Key fault, key not found or not recognised. Key position fault. ▶ Switch off possible interference sources. ▶ Carry the driver's key with you. – or – Change key position in vehicle.

Display	Message	Meaning and action required
	Spoiler failure Reduce speed	Driving stability is impaired. ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
 or 	Spoiler fault or Spoiler control fault Adapted driving permitted	Driving stability is impaired. ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation. If the fault persists after restarting the engine: ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	Lift system fault Service necessary	Lift system fault. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	Lift system currently unavailable Temperature protection active	Lift system is not available. The vehicle may not be lowered or raised as a result of thermal protection of the system or child-locking protection. If the fault persists: ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	Lowering is not possible. Door open Close door	The vehicle cannot be lowered with the door open. ▶ Close the door.
	Front end not lowered Reduce speed	Speed limit "X km/h (X mph)" has been exceeded. Vehicle is not lowered. ▶ Reduce speed to "X km/h (X mph)".
	Release door handle and pull it again to open	The door opener was actuated too quickly or vehicle is de-energised. ▶ Release door opener and pull it again

* Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.






Driving systems










Display	Message	Meaning and action required
	 <p>Chassis system fault Adapted driving permitted. See Driver's Manual.</p>	<p>Chassis fault. Vehicle handling may be affected. Possible to drive on.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	 <p>Chassis system fault Visit workshop Adapted driving permitted</p>	<p>Chassis fault. Vehicle handling may be affected. Possible to drive on.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	 <p>Chassis system failed Park vehicle safely</p>	<p>Chassis failure.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Stop in a suitable place. ▶ Do not continue driving. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
 lights up	 <p>PSM failure Visit workshop Adapted driving permitted</p>	<p>Porsche Stability Management (PSM) failure. Possible to drive on.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
 lights up	 <p>ABS/PSM failure Adapted driving permitted</p>	<p>Porsche Stability Management (PSM) failure. Possible to drive on.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	 <p>PSM Sport Vehicle stability system restricted</p>	<p>Vehicle stability system is only available to a restricted extent when Porsche Stability Management (PSM) Sport is active. Possible to drive on.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation.

Display	Message	Meaning and action required	
		<p>All-wheel drive system fault Adapted driving permitted</p>	<p>Porsche Traction Management (PTM) fault.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Reduce load. <p>If the fault persists:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
		<p>All-wheel drive system failure or All-wheel system overloaded Rear-wheel drive only Adapted driving permitted</p>	<p>Temporary failure of Porsche Traction Management (PTM).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Reduce load. <p>If the fault persists:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
		<p>All-wheel drive system temperature limit Reduce load</p>	<p>Porsche Traction Management (PTM) is overloaded.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Reduce load. <p>If the fault persists:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
		<p>Rear differential lock overloaded Adapted driving permitted</p>	<p>Porsche Torque Vectoring Plus (PTV Plus) is overloaded.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Reduce load. <p>If the fault persists:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
		<p>Rear differential lock failure or Rear differential lock fault Adapted driving permitted</p>	<p>Porsche Torque Vectoring Plus (PTV Plus) has failed or is faulty. Possible to drive on.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
		<p>Rear-axle steering failure</p>	<p>Rear axle steering has failed or is faulty. Possible to drive on.</p>




A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z








A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Display	Message	Meaning and action required
	<p>or</p> <p>Rear-axle steering fault</p> <p>Adapted driving permitted</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	 <p>Camera system not available</p> <p>Temporary status</p> <p>Driving permitted</p>	<p>Assistance systems or cameras are faulty.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	 <p>Camera system restricted</p> <p>No camera view</p> <p>Clean windscreen if necessary</p>	<p>Assistance systems or camera temporarily unavailable due to weather conditions or dirt on the windscreen.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Windscreen may need cleaning. <p>If the fault persists:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	 <p>System fault</p> <p>Driving permitted</p> <p>Inspection necessary</p>	<p>One or more electrical systems may have failed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	 <p>ParkAssist audio failure</p> <p>or</p> <p>Instrument cluster audio failure</p> <p>Driving permitted</p> <p>Inspection necessary</p>	<p>Acoustic warning and distance signals (e.g. for ParkAssist) are not available.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	 <p>Front ParkAssist failed</p> <p>or</p> <p>Rear ParkAssist failed</p>	<p>ParkAssist is not available.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation. ▶ Possible problems when parking. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*


Display	Message	Meaning and action required
		Driving permitted Inspection necessary
		<p>PAS fault Service necessary</p> <p>Porsche Active Safe (Warning and brake assist) is faulty. Possible to drive on.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
		<p>PAS restricted See Driver's Manual</p> <p>Porsche Active Safe (Warning and brake assist) is restricted or faulty. Possible to drive on.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation. <p>If the fault persists:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
		<p>PAS restricted Sensor soiled, please clean sensor</p> <p>Porsche Active Safe (warning and brake assist) may be affected by weather conditions or by dirt on the sensor in the vehicle.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation. ▶ Windscreen may need cleaning. <p>If the fault persists:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
		<p>ACC not available Driver takeover necessary</p> <p>Adaptive cruise control (ACC) not available.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Take over control of the vehicle.
		<p>ACC not available ABS/PSM intervention</p> <p>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is not available during ABS or PSM intervention.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation.
		<p>ACC not available</p> <p>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) system error. Possible to drive on.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation. <p>If the fault persists:</p>

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

A	Display	Message	Meaning and action required
B			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
C			
D		<p>ACC not available</p>	<p>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) only possible when D or M operating mode is selected.</p>
E		<p>Engage transmission range D or M</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Select operating mode (transmission range) D or M.
F			
G		<p>ACC not available</p>	<p>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is temporarily unavailable due to poor weather conditions or dirt on the sensor.</p>
H		<p>Sensor soiled, please clean sensor</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Clean the sensor.
I			<p>If the fault persists:</p>
J			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
K		<p>Speed limit display currently limited</p>	<p>Speed limit display is temporarily unavailable due to weather conditions or dirt on the windscreen.</p>
L		<p>No camera view</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Windscreen may need cleaning.
M		<p>Clean windscreen if necessary</p>	<p>If the fault persists:</p>
N			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
O		<p>Speed limit display not available</p>	<p>Navigation data reception is temporarily unavailable.</p>
P		<p>Temporary status</p>	<p>Possible to drive on.</p>
Q		<p>Driving permitted</p>	<p>If the fault persists:</p>
R		<p>or</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
S		<p>You are outside of the service area</p>	
T			
U		<p>or</p>	
V		<p>No navigation data available</p>	
W			
X		<p>LCA not available</p>	<p>Lane Change Assist (LCA) is temporarily unavailable due to weather conditions.</p>
Y		<p>Temporary status</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Activate Lane Change Assist (LCA) by pressing the button.
Z		<p>Driving permitted</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Please refer to chapter "Lane Change Assist (LCA)" on page 132.



Display	Message	Meaning and action required
	LCA not available Sensor dirty, please clean sensor	Lane Change Assist (LCA) sensors are covered, e.g. by bicycle carriers, stickers, dirt or a build-up of ice, for example. ▶ Have the sensor fault corrected. ▶ Activate Lane Change Assist (LCA) by pressing the button. ▷ Please refer to chapter "Lane Change Assist (LCA)" on page 132.
	Please drive in middle of lane	Lane Keep Assist must intervene over a longer period of time. ▶ Align the vehicle in the centre of the lane or increase distance to the lane marking.
	Please take over steering	Lane Keep Assist detects excessively weak or no steering wheel movements if the vehicle is about to stray from the lane several times. ▶ Keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times and actively steer.
	Lane Keep Assist not available Driving permitted Inspection necessary	Lane Keep Assist is not available. ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	Lane Keep Assist restricted No camera view Clean windscreen if necessary	Lane Keep Assist is temporarily unavailable due to weather conditions or dirt on the windscreen. ▶ Windscreen may need cleaning. If the fault persists: ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	Lane Keep Assist restricted Temporary status Driving permitted	Lane Keep Assist is temporarily unavailable. If the fault persists: ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
	Night View Assist not available	Night View Assist is not available. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

Display	Message	Meaning and action required
	 <p>Night View Assist</p> <p>Pedestrian marking not available</p>	<p>Pedestrian marking is not available.</p> <p>Pedestrians and large wild animals are not detected.</p> <p>Possible to drive on.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation.

* Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

PCM

Message	Meaning and action required
 <p>Critical fault! Please contact a qualified specialist workshop.</p>	<p>A software update has failed.</p> <p>Displays and comfort functions (e.g. ParkAssist) may not work fully.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Before using the vehicle, check that displays and comfort functions (e.g. ParkAssist) are working. ▶ Adapt your driving style to the situation. ▶ Have the fault corrected at a qualified specialist workshop.*
 <p>Update in progress. Avoid using the vehicle.</p>	<p>A software update is installing.</p> <p>Displays and comfort functions (e.g. ParkAssist) may not work fully.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Stop in a suitable place. ▶ Do not continue driving. ▶ Do not use the vehicle during the software update.

* Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Windows

Opening and closing windows

WARNING

Opening and closing the windows

When opening or closing the windows, particularly in one-touch mode, parts of the body may get trapped between the moving window and fixed vehicle parts.

- ▶ When opening and closing the windows, make sure that no parts of the body can become trapped between the moving window and fixed vehicle parts.
- ▶ Always switch off the ignition when leaving the vehicle. Uninformed persons could injure themselves by operating the power windows.
- ▶ In the event of danger, immediately release the button on the driver's key or the proximity sensor in the door handle on vehicles with Comfort Access.
- ▶ Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended.

WARNING

Closing a side window manually

If one-touch operation has been disabled following blockage of a side window, the side window shuts with its full closing force during manual closing. Parts of the body that become trapped between the moving side window and fixed vehicle parts may be crushed.

- ▶ Make sure that nobody is trapped or crushed when closing the side windows.

Information

If a side window is blocked by an object during closing, it will stop and open again by several centimetres.

If the side window is blocked a second time within approx. 10 seconds, one-touch operation will be disabled for this window. The side window can be closed manually. One-touch operation is enabled again once the side window has been closed completely using the manual closing function.

Opening and closing windows

- ✓ Ignition switched on.
– or –
- ✓ Ignition is switched off, but not for longer than 10 minutes.
- ✓ Driver's or passenger's door not yet opened.



Fig. 221: Power window buttons in driver's door

- A** Power windows, driver's side
- B** Power windows, passenger's side
- C** Switching between front/rear windows (Cabriolet)

The rocker switches have a **two-stage function**. When actuating the buttons, both positions can be clearly felt through resistance when pulling or pressing.

Stage one – manual operation

- ▶ Press or pull the relevant rocker switch to the first setting until the desired position is reached. The process stops when the switch is released.

Stage two – automatic operation

- ▶ Briefly push or pull the relevant rocker switch all the way to the second setting. The window opens or closes automatically to the end position.
- ▶ Actuate the button again to stop the window at the desired position.

Opening and closing windows with driver's key

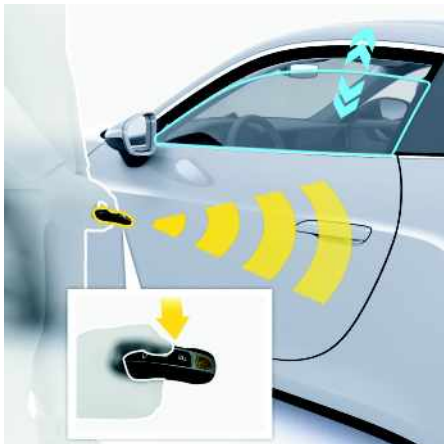


Fig. 222: Opening and closing windows with driver's key

- ✓ Function activated.
 - ▷ Please refer to chapter "Vehicle Settings" on page 246.
- ▶ Press and hold the button for locking and unlocking the vehicle on the driver's key until the windows have reached the desired position.

Cabriolet: selecting windows

- ▶ Press button **C** to select the front or rear windows.
If the rear windows are selected, the indicator light on button **C** lights up.

When the convertible top is open, the rear windows can only be closed if the front windows are closed.

Closing windows with proximity sensor in door handle

- ✓ Vehicles with Comfort Access

- ✓ Carry the driver's key with you, e.g. in your trouser pocket.
- ✓ Function activated.
 - ▷ Please refer to chapter "Vehicle Settings" on page 246.
- ▶ Touch the proximity sensor in the door handle when locking the vehicle until the windows have reached the desired position.

Storing end position of windows

The end positions of the windows are lost when the battery is disconnected and reconnected. One-touch operation of the windows is disabled.

Perform the following steps for all windows:

1. Close window completely once by pulling the switch to the second setting.
2. When the window is completely closed, briefly pull the rocker switch to the second setting again.
3. Completely open the window once by pressing the switch.

Windscreen Wipers

Brief overview

This brief overview does not replace the complete information provided under "Windscreen wipers". Safety messages and warnings, in particular, are not replaced by this brief overview.



Fig. 223: Windscreen wiper stalk



Fig. 224: Switch for rain sensor/intermittent operation and rear wiper

What do I want to do?	What do I have to do?	Where?
Wipe automatically at front (rain sensor/intermittent operation)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Press the stalk to detent position 1. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ p. 276
Set rain sensor/intermittent operation sensitivity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Press switch B on the right of the stalk upwards (wipe more often) or downwards (wipe less often). 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ p. 277
Wipe at front	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Slow: Press the stalk to detent position 2. ▶ Fast: Press the stalk to detent position 3. ▶ Once: Briefly press the stalk to position 4 (holding stalk in position 4 accelerates wiping action). 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ p. 276

A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
I
J
K
L
M
N
O
P
Q
R
S
T
U
V
W
X
Y
Z

What do I want to do?	What do I have to do?	Where?
Spray and wipe at front	▶ Pull stalk towards the steering wheel at position 5 and hold.	▶ p. 277
Wipe at rear (intermittent wiping)	▶ Press switch A .	▶ p. 277
Wipe at rear (wipe once)	▶ Press switch B all the way up or down.	▶ p. 277
Fold windscreen wipers out	▶ Switch off ignition and press wiper stalk downwards to position 4 once. Windscreen wipers move upwards by approx. 90°.	▶ p. 276

WARNING

Unintended wiping

In rain sensor operation, the windscreen wipers wipe automatically if moisture is detected on the windscreen.

- ▶ Always switch off the windscreen wipers before cleaning the windscreen.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to luggage compartment lid, windscreen and wiper system.

- ▶ Only wipe the windscreen when sufficiently wet, otherwise it could become scratched.
- ▶ Carefully detach frozen wiper blades from the windscreen before driving.
- ▶ Always switch off windscreen wipers in car washes to prevent them wiping unintentionally (rain sensor operation).
- ▶ Always hold the wiper arm securely when replacing the wiper blade.
- ▶ When replacing wiper blades, observe different lengths of the wiper blades.

Operating windscreen wipers



Fig. 225: Windscreen wiper stalk

0 Windscreen wipers off

When the windscreen wipers and the ignition are switched off, the wipers move up slightly from their rest position so that the wiping edges are aligned correctly.

1 Rain sensor/intermittent operation, windscreen wipers

- ▶ Move wiper stalk upwards to the first detent.

2 Windscreen wipers slow

- ▶ Move wiper stalk upwards to the second detent.

3 Windscreen wipers fast

- ▶ Move wiper stalk upwards to the third detent.

4 One-touch function for windscreen wipers

- ▶ Press the wiper stalk downwards. The windscreen wipers carry out one wiping cycle.

5 Windscreen wipers and washer system

- ▶ Pull wiper stalk towards the steering wheel. When the wiper stalk is released, a few drying wipes are performed. After every 10 wipes, the camera is cleaned automatically as well.

Information

- ▶ If windscreen is very dirty, repeat wash.
- ▶ Persistent dirt (e.g. insect remains) should be removed regularly.

Windscreen wiper blades that are in perfect condition are vital for a clear view.

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Caring for wiper blades" on page 63.

Adjusting wiper interval



Fig. 226: Switch for rain sensor/intermittent operation

On vehicles without a rain sensor, the wipe intervals of the windscreen wipers can be adjusted to 4 settings:

Decreasing the wiper interval

- ▶ Move switch **A** upwards.
The setting is confirmed by one wipe of the windscreen.

Increasing the wipe interval

- ▶ Press switch **A** downwards.

Adjusting rain sensor operation

For vehicles with a rain sensor, the amount of rain on the windscreen is measured. The wipe interval is automatically controlled accordingly.

Rain sensor operation is automatically activated at speeds of less than approx. 4 km/h (2.5 mph) if the windscreen wiper is switched on.

If a speed of approx. 8 km/h (5 mph) is exceeded, the system switches to the preselected wiper setting.

Information

- If the wiper stalk is already in position **1** when the ignition is switched on, the rain sensor is activated when the driving speed exceeds approx. 4 km/h (2.5 mph).
- If the wiper stalk is already in position **2** or **3** when the ignition is switched on, the windscreen wipers remain switched off until the wiper stalk is actuated.

Information

The wiper is stopped when the luggage compartment lid is opened.

- ▶ To switch on the wipers again, move the windscreen wiper stalk upwards/downwards.

Adjusting the rain sensor sensitivity manually

The wiper speed can be set manually:

- ▶ Press switch **A** upwards – **high sensitivity**.
The setting is confirmed by one wipe of the windscreen.
- ▶ Press switch **A** downwards – **low sensitivity**.

Operating rear window wiper

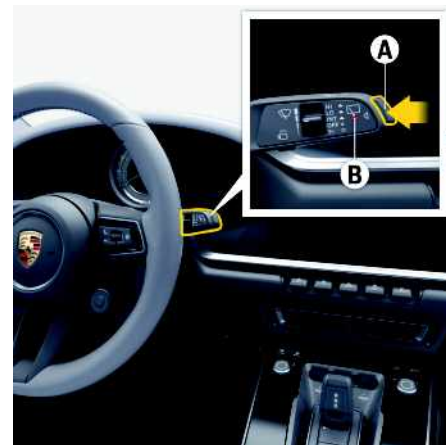


Fig. 227: Switch for rear window wiper

Switching on intermittent operation of rear window wiper

- ▶ Press button **A**.
The indicator light **B** on the stalk comes on.

Switching off intermittent operation of rear window wiper

- ▶ Press button **A**.
The indicator light **B** on the stalk goes out.

Switching on reverse function

When the windscreen wipers are active, the rear window wiper performs a few wipes when reverse gear is engaged. The function can be activated or deactivated in the PCM.

- ▶ Please refer to chapter "Vehicle Settings" on page 246.

Wiper blades

NOTICE

If the wiper arms accidentally fall back onto the windscreen, they can damage the windscreen.

- ▶ Always hold the wiper arms securely when replacing the wiper blades.

NOTICE

The wiper blades can freeze at low temperatures.

- ▶ Thaw and release frozen wiper blades before driving.

NOTICE

The graphite coating on the wiper blades can be damaged if they are not cleaned properly.

- ▶ Ensure that the cleaning jet does not hit the wiper blades.
- ▶ Do not clean wiper blades with a cloth or sponge.
- ▶ Clean wiper blades with clear water only.

Replacing wiper blades

The wiper blades should be replaced twice a year (before and after the cold season) or if wiper performance deteriorates or the blades are damaged. Fold windscreen wipers out for replacing wiper blades or for fitting ice or sun shields.

CAUTION

Incorrectly fitted wiper blades

If they are not changed properly, the incorrectly fitted wiper blades can come loose while driving.

- ▶ The wiper blades must latch properly in the wiper arm.
- ▶ Check that the wiper blades are fitted securely.

Replacing front wiper blades

Extending the wipers

- ✓ Ignition switched off.

1. Press the wiper lever downwards once (position **4**).

Windscreen wipers move upwards by approx. 90°.

2. Replace the wiper blades according to the separate instructions provided by the manufacturer. Observe different lengths of the wiper blades.

Retracting the wipers

- ✓ Ignition switched on.

- ▶ Press the wiper lever downwards for approx. 1 second (position **4**).

The windscreen wipers return to their initial position.

Information

Get a qualified specialist workshop to carry out this work if necessary. Porsche recommends a Porsche partner as they have trained workshop personnel and the necessary parts and tools.

Technical Data

On the following pages, you will find the technical data for your vehicle.

Technical Data

The information contained in this Manual may differ from the vehicle-specific data due to differing items of equipment or for country-specific reasons. Unless specified separately, it applies for all body variants. For the vehicle-specific data, please refer to the official vehicle registration documents and the information plates (e.g. identification plate) in the vehicle. The information in the official vehicle registration documents always takes priority over the information in this Manual.

Vehicle identification number



Fig. 228: Vehicle identification number fixing point

The vehicle identification number is located at the bottom left behind the windscreen and under the front passenger's seat.

- ▶ When ordering spare parts, always quote the vehicle identification number.

Identification plate (country-dependent)



Fig. 229: Identification plate fixing point

Tyre pressure plate



Fig. 230: Tyre pressure plate fixing point

The tyre pressure plate is attached to the door sill area at the driver's door.

Vehicle data carrier

The vehicle data carrier is located in the "Warranty and Maintenance" booklet. It contains all important data about your vehicle. This data carrier cannot be re-ordered if it is lost or damaged.

Dimensions

Length (depending on equipment)	4,519 mm – 4,533 mm
Width	1,852 mm
Width with exterior mirrors	2,024 mm
Height at DIN kerb weight depending on chassis version	1,288 mm – 1,302 mm
Ground clearance at DIN kerb weight depending on chassis version	113 mm – 126 mm

Filling capacities

Washer fluid	Approx. 2.5 litres (vehicles with Night View Assist: approx. 3.5 litres)
Fuel tank	<p>Vehicles with rear-wheel drive: approx. 64 litres (optionally approx. 90 litres, depending on country), with a reserve of approx. 8 litres (vehicles with PDK) or approx. 10 litres (vehicles with manual transmission)</p> <p>Vehicles with all-wheel drive: approx. 67 litres, with a reserve of approx. 8 litres (vehicles with PDK) or approx. 10 litres (vehicles with manual transmission)</p>

Fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions

CO₂ emissions depend directly on fuel consumption. A defensive driving style and regular servicing contribute towards minimising CO₂ emissions.

Information

Depending on the country, the fuel consumption and emissions values applicable for the vehicle are contained in the vehicle documents provided during delivery of the vehicle (e.g. "Certificate of Conformity"). The values indicated there were determined according to the specified measuring method (Euro 6: Regulation (EU) 715/2007 in the current version; Euro 5: ECE-R 83 in conjunction with ECE-R 101 in the current versions).

Weights

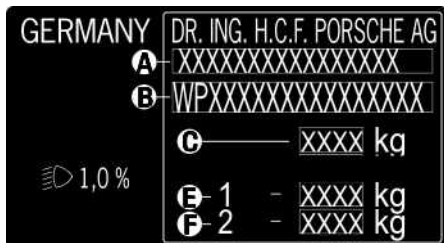


Fig. 231: Example of identification plate

- A EC type approval number (country-dependent)
- B Vehicle identification number
- C Permissible gross weight
- E Maximum axle load, front
- F Maximum axle load, rear

Load, maximum gross weight and maximum axle loads

Maximum load – plus driver (75 kg)	
Depending on model and equipment	225 kg – 400 kg
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Vehicle-specific weights are shown on the identification plate or in the official vehicle registration documents (depending on country, e.g. "Certificate of Conformity") provided during delivery of the vehicle. The identification plate is attached to the door sill area at the driver's door. ▶ Do not exceed the maximum gross weight and maximum axle loads. If additional accessories are installed, the maximum permissible load will be reduced. 	
Roof load	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Only use roof transport systems that are from the Porsche Tequipment product line or that have been tested and approved by Porsche. ▶ Do not drive at a speed of more than 130 km/h (80 mph) when the roof transport system is loaded. ▶ Please refer to chapter "Roof Transport System" on page 195. 	
Maximum roof load	
Coupé	75 kg

Wheels and tyres

Wheel and tyre sizes

Tyres approved by Porsche are the best possible tyres for your vehicle. The load capacity index (e.g. "105") and classification letter (e.g. "Y") for maximum permitted speed are minimum requirements. When fitting new tyres or changing tyres:

- ▷ Please refer to chapter "Tyres and Wheels" on page 238.
- ▶ Snow chains must only be fitted to the appropriately marked wheel and tyre sizes. Observe the applicable national regulations regarding maximum speeds when snow chains are fitted. Only use snow chains approved by Porsche.
- ▶ Before fitting different wheels and tyres, check the official vehicle registration documents (depending on country, e.g. "Certificate of Conformity") to see if the desired wheel/tyre combination is permitted for your vehicle. For further information, please contact your Porsche partner.

Tyre type	Tyre size	Wheel size	Fitting snow chains
Summer tyres	FA: 235/40 ZR 19 (92Y) ¹ RA: 295/35 ZR 20 (101Y) ¹	FA: 8.5J x 19, RO 52 ¹ RA: 11.5J x 20, RO 67 ¹	No
	RA: 245/35 ZR 20 (91Y) RA: 305/30 ZR 21 (100Y)	FA: 8.5J x 20, RO 53 RA: 11.5J x 21, RO 67	No
Winter tyres	FA: 235/40 R 19 92V M+S ^{1 2} RA: 295/35 R 20 101V M+S ^{1 2}	FA: 8.5J x 19, RO 52 ^{1 2} RA: 11J x 20, RO 66 ^{1 2}	On rear axle only
	FA: 245/35 R 20 91V M+S RA: 295/30 R 21 98V M+S	FA: 8.5J x 20, RO 53 RA: 11J x 21, RO 66	On rear axle only

FA = front axle, RA = rear axle, RO = rim offset

Tyre pressure



All tyre pressures apply only to the tyre makes and types approved by Porsche for cold tyres (20 °C).

The correct tyre pressures for factory-fitted tyres can be found on the tyre pressure plate. The specified tyre pressures for all other tyre options can be found on the Tyre Pressure Monitoring (TPM) display in the PCM.

- ▶ Set tyre type, tyre size and load condition in the Tyre Pressure Monitoring (TPM) and select "Standard tyre pressure" or "Comfort tyre pressure" (depending on country and equipment).

1. Not for vehicles with Porsche Ceramic Composite Brake (PCCB).

2. **Australia, South Korea, Vietnam:** Not for vehicles with Porsche Active Suspension Management (PASM) sports chassis (-10 mm).

- ▷ Please refer to chapter "Tyre Pressure Monitoring (TPM)" on page 238.
- ▷ Refer to the tyre pressure plate and the Tyre Pressure Monitoring (TPM) display in the PCM.
 - **CAR**  **▶ CONTROL**  **▶ Vehicle ▶ Tyre pressure monitoring ▶ Pressure deviation**
- ▷ Adapt the tyre pressure according to specifications.

WARNING

Low tyre pressure

The "Comfort pressure" option is country-dependent and is not available for all countries.

Driving at high speed and low tyre pressure destroys the tyres.

- ▷ Only set comfort pressure in the tyres on vehicles with "Comfort pressure" option.

Spare wheel

- ▷ Please refer to chapter "Using the collapsible spare wheel" on page 111.

Wheel and tyre size

Tyre type	Tyre size	Wheel size	Fitting snow chains
Collapsible spare wheel	T 185/55-20 100P	6B x 20, RO 21	No

FA = front axle, RA = rear axle, RO = rim offset

Tyre pressure

All tyre pressures apply only to the tyre makes and types approved by Porsche for cold tyres (20 °C).

	FA	RA
Collapsible spare wheel	3.5 bar / 350 kPa / 51 psi	3.5 bar / 350 kPa / 51 psi

Porsche Communication Management (PCM)

Technical data: Audio and video files	
Supported media	SD cards up to 128 GB Portable players MTP Player, USB 2.0 devices of "USB Device Subclass 1 and 6" such as, for example, USB sticks, USB MP3 players without special driver software, external USB Flash memory and hard drives
File system	SD/SDHC/SDXC/MMC memory cards USB mass storage exFAT, FAT or FAT32, NTFS file systems with a maximum of 4 partitions
Format	MPEG 1/2 Layer 3; Windows Media Audio 9 and 10; MPEG 2/4; FLAC, MPEG 1/2; ISO-MPEG4; DivX 3, 4 and 5; Xvid; ISO-MPEG4 H.264 (MPEG4 AVC); Windows Media Video 9
File extension	.mp3; .wma; .asf; .m4a; .m4b; .aac; .flac; .mpg; .mpeg; .avi; .mp4; .m4v; .mov; .wmv
Playback lists	.M3U; .PLS; .WPL; .M3U8; .ASX
Characteristics	max. 320 kbit/s and 48 kHz sampling frequency; max. 2,000 kbit/s and 720x576 px. at max. 25 fps
Number of files	USB mass storage and memory cards max. 10,000 files per medium, max. 1,000 files per directory/playback list
Metadata	Album covers up to 800 x 800 pixels; GIF, JPG and PNG formats or via Gracenote database
Technical data: Connectivity	
Mobile networks	GSM/GPRS/EDGE: Dual Band, 900 MHz/1,800 MHz UMTS/HSPA+: Triple band, 900 MHz (Band VIII)/1,800 MHz (Band III)/2,100 MHz (Band I) LTE: Quad band, 800 MHz (Band 20)/900 MHz (Band 8) /1,800 MHz (Band 3)/2,600 MHz (Band 7)
WiFi	IEEE 802.11a/b/g/n (2.4 GHz)
Bluetooth®	Bluetooth® 2.1, IEEE 802.15.1, Class 2, range approx. 10 m
SIM card	Mini-SIM, dimensions: 25 x 15 mm

Technical data: Radio

Frequency ranges/standards

UKW (FM): 87.5 – 108 MHz
 Digital radio: DAB, DAB+, DMB

Tuning grid with automatic station search

UKW (FM): 100 kHz

Bluetooth® approval (extract)

Albania – Andorra – Angola – Aruba – Australia – Austria – Bahamas – Bahrain – Barbados – Belarus – Belgium – Belize – Bolivia – Bonaire – Bosnia and Herzegovina – Brazil – Brunei – Bulgaria – Burkina Faso – Canada – Chile – China – Colombia – Costa Rica – Croatia – Curacao – Cyprus – Czech Republic – Denmark – Dominican Republic – Ecuador – Egypt – El Salvador – Estonia – Ethiopia – Finland – France – French Guyana – French Polynesia – Gabon – Germany – Ghana – Gibraltar – Guadeloupe – Guatemala – Greece – Greenland – Hong Kong – Hungary – Iceland – India – Indonesia – Ireland – Iraq – Israel – Italy – Ivory Coast – Jamaica – Japan – Jordan – Kenya – Kosovo – Kuwait – Latvia – Lebanon – Lesotho – Liberia – Libya – Liechtenstein – Lithuania – Luxembourg – Macau – Macedonia – Madagascar – Malaysia – Malta – Martinique – Mauritius – Mexico – Monaco – Mongolia – Morocco – Mozambique – Netherlands – New Caledonia – New Zealand – Nigeria – Norway – Oman – Pakistan – Panama – Peru – Poland – Portugal – Puerto Rico – Qatar – Réunion – Romania – Russia – San Marino – Saudi Arabia – Senegal – Serbia – Singapore – Slovakia – South Africa – Spain – St. Lucia – Sweden – Switzerland – Tahiti – Taiwan – Thailand – United Arab Emirates – United Kingdom – Uruguay – USA – Venezuela – Vietnam – Yemen – Zimbabwe

Recycling

Returning end-of-life vehicles

Only in European Union countries:

End-of-life Porsche end-of-life can be scrapped by Dr. Ing. h.c. F. Porsche AG free of charge in an environmentally friendly way. To return your vehicle and obtain the relevant Certificate of Destruction:

- ▶ Contact your Porsche partner.

Airbag and seat belt tensioner units

Non-ignited gas generators, or whole vehicles or assemblies with airbag and seat-belt tensioner units must not be disposed of as "normal" scrap or waste or put into any other form of end storage.

For more information on proper disposal:

- ▶ Contact your Porsche partner.

Electrical/electronic devices and old batteries

Electrical/electronic devices marked with a crossed-out rubbish bin and old batteries must not be discarded with the domestic rubbish, but must be disposed of properly.

- ▶ Observe the country-specific disposal regulations.
- ▶ Hand in old batteries and electrical and electronic devices at a collection point.
- ▶ The 12-volt lithium battery is hazardous goods. Do not tamper with this battery and never dispose of it yourself.

For more information on proper disposal:

- ▶ Contact your Porsche partner.

Radio equipment in accordance with 2014/53/EU

Declaration of Conformity

Your vehicle features a variety of radio equipment. The manufacturers of this radio equipment declare that it complies with the specifications for their use in accordance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the relevant EU Declaration of Conformity is available at the following Internet address:

<http://www.porsche.com/international/accessoriesandservice/porscheservice/vehicleinformation/documents/>



Mapping tables

The mapping tables help to make a connection between the device designation in a declaration of conformity, and the vehicle equipment and terminology in his driver's manual.

Security

Driver's key

- PK3
- 28415031.28416032 Radio frequency transmitter used in vehicle locking/unlocking systems

Porsche vehicle tracking system – telematics control unit

- Telematic Control Unit 2145/2146

Porsche vehicle tracking system – driver card

- PD2
- Driver Card Remote for Tracking System 2781

Garage door opener (HomeLink®)

- Universal Garage Door Opener HomeLink® ADHL5D

Control units

Central control unit

- Bodycomputer BCM2
- BCMevo Body Controller Module inclusive remote key transceiver unit
- PAG-BCM-Front-433-140930, PAG-BCM-Front-434-140930 Keyless Vehicle Module

Gateway control unit – networking

- TKCGWE20 Network access device

tyre

Tyre Pressure Monitoring (TPM) system – gen. 3 control unit

- TPMS ECU G5 compact 433.92 MHz TSSS G4G5

Tyre Pressure Monitoring (TPM) system – gen. 3 wheel electronics

- TPMS Sensor G3.8 433.92 MHz TSSRE4Dg

Infotainment

Porsche Communication Management (PCM)

- Radio and Car Control Unit MIB2P ZSB001

- MMXF
- MMXF online

Smartphone tray

- LTE-MBC-EU Multi Band Compensor

Driver assistance

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

- LRR4 Automotive radar sensor

Lane Change Assist (LCA)

- R3TR Short Range Radar

Antennas

- Kommunikationsbox C-Box low: ConBox Low
- 9P1.035.504: AG27P
- 992.035.504: 992035504, 9J1.035.500.A
- VAG_724791001
- 920-460-379-380-384-388-392
- 9Y0.051.515A: TRANSCVRP01
- 920286352
- VAG_724791007

Radio system, frequency band, maximum transmission power

Unless stated otherwise, the details apply to all models or vehicles that are equipped with the relevant radio¹ system. Deviations are marked in the footnotes.

Security

Driver's key	
21.85 kHz	< 40 dB μ A/m @ 10m
433,47 – 434,37 MHz	10.00 mW
Porsche vehicle tracking system – telematics control unit	
GSM 850 (824 – 849 MHz)	1995.26 mW
GSM 900 (880 – 915 MHz)	1995.26 mW
GSM 1800 (1710 – 1785 MHz)	1000.00 mW
GSM 1900 (1850 – 1910 MHz)	1000.00 mW

Porsche vehicle tracking system – driver card	
21.85 kHz	< 40 dB μ A/m @ 10m
433,85 – 433,99 MHz	10.00 mW
433,47 – 434,37 MHz	10.00 mW
Garage door opener (HomeLink®)	
433,05 – 434,79 MHz	10.00 mW
868,00 – 868,60 MHz	25.00 mW
868,70 – 869,20 MHz	
869,40 – 869,65 MHz	
869,70 – 870,00 MHz	

Control units

Central control unit	
21.85 kHz	< 40dB μ A/m @ 10m
125 kHz	< 40dB μ A/m @ 10m
433,05 – 434,79 MHz	Receiver only
Gateway control unit – networking	
GSM 850 (824 – 849 MHz)	1995.25 mW
GSM 900 (880 – 915 MHz)	1995.25 mW

Gateway control unit – networking	
GSM 1800 (1710 – 1785 MHz)	1000.00 mW
GSM 1900 (1850 – 1910 MHz)	1000.00 mW
EGPRS 850 (824 – 849 MHz)	501.19 mW
EGPRS 900 (880 – 915 MHz)	501.19 mW
EGPRS 1800 (1710 – 1785 MHz)	398.11 mW
EGPRS 1900 (1850 – 1910 MHz)	398.11 mW
UMTS 1 (1920 – 1980 MHz)	251.19 mW
UMTS 2 (1850 – 1910 MHz)	251.19 mW
UMTS 3 (9) (1710 – 1785 MHz)	251.19 mW
UMTS 4 (1710 – 1755 MHz)	251.19 mW
UMTS 5 (6) (824 – 849 MHz)	251.19 mW
UMTS 8 (880 – 915 MHz)	251.19 mW

1. In some countries, commissioning or approval for use of the radio technology may be restricted, not permitted or permitted with additional requirements.

Tyres

Tyre Pressure Monitoring (TPM) system – gen. 3 wheel electronics

433,85 – 433,99 MHz 10.00 mW

Infotainment

Porsche Communication Management (PCM)

WiFi 42.66 mW
(2400 – 2484 MHz)

WiFi 35.89 mW
(5150 – 5250 MHz)¹

WiFi 23.23 mW
(5725 – 5875 MHz)

Bluetooth® 7.83 mW
(2400 – 2483.5 MHz)

GSM 900 1995.26 mW
(880 – 915 MHz)

GSM 1800 1000 mW
(1710 – 1785 MHz)

WCDMA I 251.19 mW
(1920 – 1980 MHz)

WCDMA III 251.19 mW
(1710 – 1785 MHz)

WCDMA VIII 251.19 mW

Porsche Communication Management (PCM)

(880 – 915 MHz)

LTE FDD1 199.53 mW
(1920 – 1980 MHz)

LTE FDD3 199.53 mW
(1710 – 1785 MHz)

LTE FDD7 199.53 mW
(2500 – 2570 MHz)

LTE FDD8 199.53 mW
(880 – 915 MHz)

LTE FDD20 199.53 mW
(832 – 862 MHz)

LTE FDD28 199.53 mW
(703 – 748 MHz)

Smartphone tray

GSM 900 1995.25 mW
(800 – 915 MHz)

GSM 1800 1000.00 mW
(1710 – 1785 MHz)

WCDMA I 125.00 mW
(1920 – 1980 MHz)

WCDMA III 125.00 mW
(1710 – 1785 MHz)

WCDMA VIII 125.00 mW

Smartphone tray

(880 – 915 MHz)

LTE FDD1 200.00 mW
(1920 – 1980 MHz)

LTE FDD3 200.00 mW
(1710 – 1785 MHz)

LTE FDD7 200.00 mW
(2500 – 2570 MHz)

LTE FDD8 200.00 mW
(880 – 915 MHz)

LTE FDD20 200.00 mW
(832 – 862 MHz)

Driver assistance

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

76 – 77 GHz 981.75 mW

Lane Change Assist (LCA)

76 – 77 GHz 1000.00 mW

1. Use in open spaces is subject to country-specific restrictions.

Antennas**Communication box C-Box low**

GPS (1575.42 MHz)	Receiver only
----------------------	---------------

GSM 900 (880 – 915 MHz)	1995.26 mW
----------------------------	------------

GSM 1800 (1710 – 1785 MHz)	1000.00 mW
-------------------------------	------------

WCDMA I (1920 – 1980 MHz)	251.19 mW
------------------------------	-----------

WCDMA VIII (880 – 915 MHz)	251.19 mW
-------------------------------	-----------

LTE FDD1 (1920 – 1980 MHz)	199.53 mW
-------------------------------	-----------

LTE FDD3 (1710 – 1785 MHz)	199.53 mW
-------------------------------	-----------

LTE FDD7 (2500 – 2570 MHz)	199.53 mW
-------------------------------	-----------

LTE FDD8 (880 – 915 MHz)	199.53 mW
-----------------------------	-----------

LTE FDD20 (832 – 862 MHz)	199.53 mW
------------------------------	-----------

LTE FDD28 (758 – 803 MHz)	199.53 mW
------------------------------	-----------

LTE FDD38 (2570 – 2620 MHz)	199.53 mW
--------------------------------	-----------

Radio equipment outside European countries

Inspection marks and declarations of conformity

Albania, Bahrain, Bosnia and Herzegovina, French Guyana, Georgia, Gibraltar, Guadeloupe, Iceland, Israel, Ivory Coast, Kuwait, Macedonia, Martinique, Monaco, Montenegro, New Caledonia, Norway, Reunion, Sri Lanka, St. Lucia, Switzerland, Trinidad & Tobago, Turkey.



Argentina



CNC ID: H-21037
CNC ID: C-18053

Australia



Belarus



Brazil



Fig. 232: Inspection marks G2 Brazil

Modelo BCMev05: 02393-19-05364
Modelo PK3: 00971-18-02930
2294-15-3616
0716-15-03745
05674-16-06830

"Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário."

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados. Este produto está homologado pela ANATEL, de acordo com os procedimentos regulamentados pela Resolução 242/2000, e atende aos requisitos requisitos técnicos aplicados. Para maiores informações, consulte o site da ANATEL www.anatel.gov.br

Brunei

DTA-002281

Canada

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may Not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Cet appareil est conforme à la Partie 15 des réglementations de la FCC et avec la norme RSS-210 de l'Industrie Canadienne. Son fonctionnement est soumis aux deux conditions suivantes:

1. Cet appareil ne doit pas causer d'interférences nuisibles et
2. Cet appareil doit accepter toute interférence reçue, y compris les interférences pouvant entraîner un fonctionnement.

Customs Union (including Armenia, Belarus, Kazakhstan, Russia)



Модель: LTE-MBC-EU
Изготовитель: Molex CVS Dabendorf GmbH
Сделано в Германии
Электропитание : 12 V=, 400 mA
Декларация о соответствии ТР ТС 020/2011 ЕАЭС № RU Д-ДЕ.ЭМ03.В.00148 от 05.03.2018, действительна по 04.03.2023, зарегистрирована органом по сертификации продукции ФГУП Ордена Трудового Красного Знамени научно-исследовательский институт радио «Испытательный центр «Омега»

Модель: LTE-MBC-EU2
Изготовитель: Molex CVS Dabendorf GmbH
Сделано в Германии
Электропитание : 12 V=, 400 mA
Декларация о соответствии ТР ТС 020/2011 ЕАЭС № RU Д-ДЕ.ЭМ03.В.00148 от 05.03.2018, действительна по 04.03.2023, зарегистрирована органом по сертификации продукции ФГУП Ордена Трудового Красного Знамени научно-исследовательский институт радио «Испытательный центр «Омега»

Ghana

NCA APPROVED: 1R3-1M-7E0-14B

NCA APPROVED: 6X6-4H-7EO-OF3

Hong Kong

HKCA 1035: Automotive radar: radio equipment exempted from licensing.

Indonesia



55538/SDPPI/2018
2208

53856/SDPPI/2017
47817/SDPPI/2016

Israel

Model Name: TSSRE4Dg
Manufacturer: Huf Electronics Bretten
Model Name: LRR4
Manufacturer: Bosch

Japan

204-560001
202-LSC054
202-JN0638

Japanese Radio Law Compliance. This device is granted pursuant to the Japanese Radio Law. This device should not be modified (otherwise the granted designation number will become invalid).

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA - PK3.

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA - BCMev05.

Jordan

TRC/LPD/2014/212
TRC/LPD/2016/584
TRC/LPD/2017/615

Malaysia



CIDF15000490
CIDF17000143
CIDF19000029

Mexico

IFETEL: RLVPOPK17-1947
IFETEL: RLVBOLR14-1873
IFETEL: RLVDER316-1666

Moldova



MD OC TIP 024 A6116-18

Mongolia



APPROVED
IN MONGOLIA
ID: A18000286



APPROVED
IN MONGOLIA
ID: A17000167

Morocco

Numéro d'agrément :
MR 17800 ANRT 2018
Date d'agrément : 24/10/2018
AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément :
MR 15019 ANRT 2017
Date d'agrément : 26/10/2017
Numéro d'agrément :
MR 9668 ANRT 2014
Date d'agrément : 30/09/2014
Numéro d'agrément :
MR 12623 ANRT 2016
Date d'agrément : 11/10/2016
Numéro d'agrément: MR 19520 ANRT 2019
Date d'agrément: 13/04/2019

Oman

OMAN - TRA/TA-R/4813/17
D100428
OMAN - TRA
D172249
TA056891

OMAN - TRA/TA-R/2609/15
 D080134
 OMAN - TRA/TA-R/2160/14
 OMAN - TRA-R/3848/17
 D080134
 OMAN - TRA
 TA044715
 D100428

Pakistan



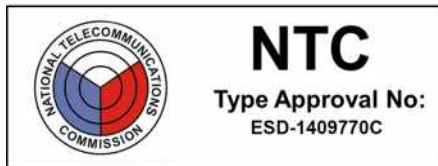
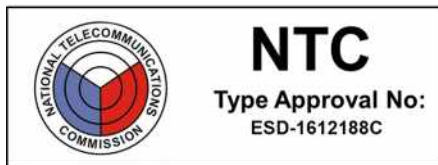
Paraguay



NR: 2017-12-I-0000410

Fig. 233:

Philippines



Qatar

Approval Ref.: CRA/SA/2015/R-4714
 Approval Ref.: CRA/SA/2014/R-4315

Russia



Модель: LTE-MBC-EU
 Изготовитель: Molex CVS Dabendorf GmbH
 Сделано в Германии
 Электропитание : 12 V=, 400 mA

Serbia



34540-1020/17-3
 34540-1313/16-3

Singapore

Complies with IDMA Standard DA 103787.
 Complies with IDMA Standards DB 106879.
 Registration Number N3078-18

South Africa

ICASA TA-2014/2597 APPROVED

ICASA TA-2014/1784 APPROVED

ICASA TA-2016/2759 APPROVED

ICASA TA-2017/2491 APPROVED

ICASA TA-2019/5116 APPROVED

South Korea



R-C-MQU-PK3
 MSIP-REM-HEB-TSSSG4G5
 MSIP-CRM-HEB-TSSRE4DG
 BO-LRR4
 MCIP-CRM-DDG-R3TR
 송신기 주파수 21.85 kHz
 B급 기기 (가정용 방송통신기자재)

이 기기는 가정용(B급) 전자파적합기기로서 주로 가정에서 사용하는 것을 목적으로 하며, 모든 지역에서 사용할 수 있습니다.

해당 무선 설비는 전파혼신 가능성이 있으므로 인명안전과 관련된 서비스는 할 수 없음

송신기 주파수 433.92 MHz

B급 기기(가정용 방송통신기자재)

이 기기는 가정용(B급) 전자파적합기기로서 주로 가정에서 사용하는 것을 목적으로 하며, 모든 지역에서 사용할 수 있습니다.

해당 무선 설비는 전파혼신 가능성이 있으므로 인명안전과 관련된 서비스는 할 수 없음

인증 받은 자의 상호 Molex CVS Dabendorf GmbH /

제조사/제조국가 Germany /

기자재의 명칭/ 모델명 LTE-MBC-CN /

기자재의 명칭/ 모델명 MSIP-RMM-N7V-LTE-MBC-CN

Taiwan

CCAK15LP0801T1

CCAE15LP0190T0

CCAF16LP2450T2

低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法

第十二條: 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機, 非經許可, 公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

第十四條: 低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信; 經發現有干擾現象時, 應立即停用, 並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前項合法通信, 指依電信法規定作業之無線電信。

低功率射頻電機需忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法

第十二條經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機, 非經許可, 公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變

更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

第十四條低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信; 經發現有干擾現象時, 應改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。前項合法通信, 指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

本器材須經專業工程人員安裝及設定, 始得設置使用, 且不得直接販售給一般消費者
電磁波警語標示: 「減少電磁波影響, 請妥適使用
輸入電源需使用所附的5A保險絲於產品前端做保護

Ukraine



001



109



United Arab Emirates

TRA REGISTERED No: ER66073/18,
DEALER No: 0018994/09

TRA REGISTERED No: ER58762/17,
DEALER No: 0018994/09

TRA REGISTERED No: ER38964/15,
DEALER: HUF ELECTRONICS GmbH
TRA REGISTERED No: ER36213/14,
DEALER No: DA36785/14
TRA REGISTERED No: ER497919/16,
DEALER No: DA0062437/11
TRA REGISTERED No: ER71148/19
DEALER No: DA0043253/10

United States of America

NOTICE:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications made to this equipment not expressly approved by the manufacturer may void the FCC authorization to operate this equipment.

Radiofrequency radiation exposure Information:

The radiated output power of the device is far below the FCC radio frequency exposure limits.

Nevertheless, the device shall be used in such a manner that the potential for human contact during normal operation is minimized.

Vietnam



Software licences

Declaration on open source software for the instrument cluster - list of OSS components

The instrument cluster contains components that are licensed as open source software. The affected components and the associated licence conditions are listed below. The licensee receives a non-exclusive right of use for the open source software from the respective copyright holders under the conditions that provide for the relevant valid licence conditions. The liability and warranty provisions of open source licences are only valid in relation to the respective copyright holders. This list of open source program codes was compiled by reference to the third-party software that was integrated into the services at the time the list was created.

1. C11 Emulation Library

Boost Software License 1.0

Boost Software License – Version 1.0

August 17th, 2003

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person or organization obtaining a copy of the software and accompanying documentation covered by this license (the "Software") to use, reproduce, display, distribute, execute, and transmit the Software, and to prepare derivative works of the Software, and to permit third-parties to whom the Software is furnished to do so, all subject to the following: The copyright notices in the Software and this entire statement, including the above license grant, this restriction and the following disclaimer, must be included in all copies of the Software, in whole or in part, and all derivative works of the Software, unless such copies or derivative works are solely in the form of machine-executable object code generated by a

source language processor. THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS OR ANYONE DISTRIBUTING THE SOFTWARE BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

2. DRM CRTX

MIT Style License

* Permission to use, copy, modify, distribute, and sell this software and its * documentation for any purpose is hereby granted without fee, provided that * the above copyright notice appear in all copies and that both that copyright * notice and this permission notice appear in supporting documentation, and * that the name of the copyright holders not be used in advertising or * publicity pertaining to distribution of the software without specific, * written prior permission. The copyright holders make no representations * about the suitability of this software for any purpose. It is provided "as * is" without express or implied warranty. * * THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE, * INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS, IN NO * EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR * CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, * DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF

CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER * TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE * OF THIS SOFTWARE.

3. EGLEXT Chromium

BSD 3-clause License

Copyright (c) YEAR, OWNER

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

Neither the name of the ORGANIZATION nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY,

WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

4. Expat XML Parser-libexpat

Expat License

Copyright (c) 1998, 1999, 2000 Thai Open Source Software Center Ltd and Clark Cooper

Copyright (c) 2001, 2002, 2003, 2004, 2005, 2006 Expat maintainers.

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

5. FASTCRC32

License of Stephan Brumme/Zlib style License

Unless otherwise noted in a file's first 5 lines, all source code published on <http://create.stephan-brumme.com> and its sub-pages is licensed similar to the zlib license: This software is provided 'as-is', without any express or implied warranty. In no event will the author be held liable for any damages arising from the use of this software. Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose, including commercial applications, and to alter it and redistribute it freely, subject to the following restrictions: The origin of this software must not be misrepresented; you must not claim that you wrote the original software. If you use this software in a product, an acknowledgment in the product documentation would be appreciated but is not required. Altered source versions must be plainly marked as such, and must not be misrepresented as being the original software.

6. Free Type

Freetype Project License

The FreeType Project LICENSE

2006-Jan-27

Copyright 1996-2002, 2006 by
 David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg

Introduction

=====

The FreeType Project is distributed in several archive packages; some of them may contain, in addition to the FreeType font engine, various tools and contributions which rely on, or relate to, the FreeType Project.

This license applies to all files found in such packages, and which do not fall under their own explicit license. The license affects thus the FreeType font engine, the test programs, documentation and makefiles, at the very least.

This license was inspired by the BSD, Artistic, and IJG (Independent JPEG Group) licenses, which all encourage inclusion and use of free software in commercial and freeware products alike. As a consequence, its main points are that:

We don't promise that this software works. However, we will be interested in any kind of bug reports. ('as is' distribution)

You can use this software for whatever you want, in parts or full form, without having to pay us. ('royalty-free' usage)

You may not pretend that you wrote this software. If you use it, or only parts of it, in a program, you must acknowledge somewhere in your documentation that you have used the FreeType code. ('credits')

We specifically permit and encourage the inclusion of this software, with or without modifications, in commercial products. We disclaim all warranties covering The FreeType Project and assume no liability related to The FreeType Project.

Finally, many people asked us for a preferred form for a credit/disclaimer to use in compliance with this license. We thus encourage you to use the following text:

"Portions of this software are copyright © 1996-2002, 2006 The FreeType Project (www.freetype.org). All rights reserved."

Legal Terms

=====

Definitions

Throughout this license, the terms 'package', 'FreeType Project', and 'FreeType archive' refer to the set of files originally distributed by the authors (David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg) as the 'FreeType Project', be they named as alpha, beta or final release.

'You' refers to the licensee, or person using the project, where 'using' is a generic term including

compiling the project's source code as well as linking it to form a `program` or `executable`. This program is referred to as `a program using the FreeType engine`.

This license applies to all files distributed in the original FreeType Project, including all source code, binaries and documentation, unless otherwise stated in the file in its original, unmodified form as distributed in the original archive. If you are unsure whether or not a particular file is covered by this license, you must contact us to verify this.

The FreeType Project is copyright (C) 1996-2000, 2006 by David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg. All rights reserved except as specified below.

No Warranty

 THE FREETYPE PROJECT IS PROVIDED `AS IS` WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT WILL ANY OF THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES CAUSED BY THE USE OR THE INABILITY TO USE, OF THE FREETYPE PROJECT.

Redistribution

 This license grants a worldwide, royalty-free, perpetual and irrevocable right and license to use, execute, perform, compile, display, copy, create derivative works of, distribute and sublicense the FreeType Project (in both source and object code forms) and derivative works thereof for any purpose; and to authorize others to exercise some or all of the rights granted herein, subject to the following conditions:

Redistribution of source code must retain this license file (`FTL.TXT`) unaltered; any additions,

deletions or changes to the original files must be clearly indicated in accompanying documentation. The copyright notices of the unaltered, original files must be preserved in all copies of source files.

Redistribution in binary form must provide a disclaimer that states that the software is based in part of the work of the FreeType Team, in the distribution documentation. We also encourage you to put an URL to the FreeType web page in your documentation, though this isn't mandatory.

These conditions apply to any software derived from or based on the FreeType Project, not just the unmodified files. If you use our work, you must acknowledge us. However, no fee need be paid to us.

Advertising

 Neither the FreeType authors and contributors nor you shall use the name of the other for commercial, advertising, or promotional purposes without specific prior written permission.

We suggest, but do not require, that you use one or more of the following phrases to refer to this software in your documentation or advertising materials: `FreeType Project`, `FreeType Engine`, `FreeType library`, or `FreeType Distribution`.

As you have not signed this license, you are not required to accept it. However, as the FreeType Project is copyrighted material, only this license, or another one contracted with the authors, grants you the right to use, distribute, and modify it. Therefore, by using, distributing, or modifying the FreeType Project, you indicate that you understand and accept all the terms of this license.

Contacts

 There are two mailing lists related to FreeType: freetype@nongnu.org

Discusses general use and applications of FreeType, as well as future and wanted additions to the library

and distribution. If you are looking for support, start in this list if you haven't found anything to help you in the documentation.

devel@nongnu.org

Discusses bugs, as well as engine internals, design issues, specific licenses, porting, etc.

Our home page can be found at

<http://www.freetype.org>

— end of FTL.TXT —

7. Freetype_BDF

The MIT License

Copyright (c) year copyright holders

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

8. FreeType_PCF

The MIT License

- ▷ Please refer to chapter "7. Freetype_BDF" on page 299.

9. HarfBuzz

The MIT License

- ▷ Please refer to chapter "7. Freetype_BDF" on page 299.

10. Intel DVO i915

MIT Style License

- ▷ Please refer to chapter "2. DRM CRTC" on page 297.

11. Khronos EGL Headers

The MIT License

- ▷ Please refer to chapter "7. Freetype_BDF" on page 299.

12. Khronos Group-OpenGL ES

SGI Free Software License B v2.0

SGI FREE SOFTWARE LICENSE B (Version 2.0, Sept. 18, 2008)

Copyright (C) [dates of first publication] Silicon Graphics, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice including the dates of first publication and either this permission notice or a reference to <http://oss.sgi.com/projects/FreeB/>

shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL SILICON GRAPHICS, INC. BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

Except as contained in this notice, the name of Silicon Graphics, Inc. shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization from Silicon Graphics, Inc.

13. libdrm

The MIT License

- ▷ Please refer to chapter "7. Freetype_BDF" on page 299.

14. libunibreak

zlib License

The zlib/libpng License

Copyright (c) year copyright holders

This software is provided 'as-is', without any express or implied warranty. In no event will the authors be held liable for any damages arising from the use of this software.

Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose, including commercial applications, and to alter it and redistribute it freely, subject to the following restrictions:

1. The origin of this software must not be misrepresented; you must not claim that you wrote the original software. If you use this software in a product,

an acknowledgment in the product documentation would be appreciated but is not required.

2. Altered source versions must be plainly marked as such, and must not be misrepresented as being the original software.

3. This notice may not be removed or altered from any source distribution.

15. Libva

The MIT License

- ▷ Please refer to chapter "7. Freetype_BDF" on page 299.

16. Linus Graphics Drivers from Intel – Kernel DRM-bsd

The MIT License

- ▷ Please refer to chapter "7. Freetype_BDF" on page 299.

17. lua

The MIT License

- ▷ Please refer to chapter "7. Freetype_BDF" on page 299.

18. lz4 Compression algorithm

BSD 2-clause "Simplified" License

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE AUTHOR "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE

IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

19. Mesa3D – MesaLib

The MIT License

▷ Please refer to chapter "7. Freetype_BDF" on page 299.

20. NetBSD

BSD-4-Clause (University of California-Specific)

BSD-4-Clause (University of California-Specific)
Copyright [various years] The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement: This product includes software

developed by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors.

4. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE REGENTS AND CONTRIBUTORS ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

BSD 3-clause

▷ Please refer to chapter "3. EGLEXT Chromium" on page 297.

HPND Like License

Portions Copyright (c) 1993 by Digital Equipment Corporation.

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software for any purpose with or without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and this permission notice appear in all copies, and that the name of Digital Equipment Corporation not be used in advertising or publicity pertaining to distribution of the document or software without specific, written prior permission.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND DIGITAL EQUIPMENT CORP. DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE, INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS. IN NO EVENT SHALL DIGITAL EQUIPMENT CORPORATION BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

21. PCFUtil

Open Group License

Copyright 1996, 1998 The Open Group

Permission to use, copy, modify, distribute, and sell this software and its documentation for any purpose is hereby granted without fee, provided that the above copyright notice appear in all copies and that both that copyright notice and this permission notice appear in supporting documentation.

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE OPEN GROUP BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

Except as contained in this notice, the name of The Open Group shall not be used in advertising or

otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization from The Open Group.

22. static_drm_mode

The MIT License

- ▷ Please refer to chapter "7. Freetype_BDF" on page 299.

23. Video Accelerator

BSD Style License

Redistribution. Redistribution and use in binary form, without modification, are * permitted provided that the following conditions are met: * Redistributions must reproduce the above copyright notice and the following * disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the * distribution. * Neither the name of Intel Corporation nor the names of its suppliers may be used * to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior * written permission. * No reverse engineering, decompilation, or disassembly of this software is permitted. * Limited patent license. Intel Corporation grants a world-wide, royalty-free, * nonexclusive license under patents it now or hereafter owns or controls to make, have made, * use, import, offer to sell and sell (.Utilize.) this software, but solely to the extent that any * such patent is necessary to Utilize the software alone. The patent license shall not apply * to any combinations which include this software. No hardware per se is licensed here under. * **DISCLAIMER. THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT * HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED * WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED * WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR * PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER * OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY**

DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, * SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT * NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; * LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER * CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, * STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) * ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF * ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

24. zlib

Zlib license

- ▷ Please refer to chapter "14. libunibreak" on page 300.

Index

Symbols

A

A/C MAX button	
Air-conditioning system	45
ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)	
Functional description	186
ACC	
Activating	32
Adaptive Cruise Control operating principle	30
Changing the desired speed	32
Controls	31
Display elements	31
Exceptional conditions	35
Interrupting and resuming cruise control and distance control	33
Operating states	31
Overriding control	33
Radar sensor	29
Setting the desired distance	32
Switching off	32
Switching on	32
Warning messages	35
Accepting/rejecting a call	222
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)	
Activating	32
Changing the desired speed	32
Controls	31
Display elements	31
Exceptional conditions	35
Interrupting and resuming cruise control and distance control	33
Operating principle	30
Operating states	31
Overriding control	33
Radar sensor	29
Setting the desired distance	32
Switching off	32
Switching on	32
Warning messages	35
Adjusting headlights	145
Adjusting seat position	203
Advertisement	
Car & Info	120
Speed & Assist	120

Air distribution	
Adjusting	46
Air-conditioning system	
Adjusting air distribution	46-47
Defrosting windshield	48
Setting automatic air-recirculation mode	47
Setting the footwell temperature	47
Setting type of climate control	47
Storing and retrieving personal settings	169
Switch on automatic climate control	45
Switching A/C MAX mode on/off	45
Switching air-recirculation mode on and off	47
Switching maximum cooling output on/off	45
Switching on/off	45
Switching the ioniser on/off	47
Upper ventilation panel	46
Air-recirculation button	47
Air-recirculation mode	
Switching on/off	47
Airbag	
Care instructions	65
Switching passenger airbag on and off	78
Warning light	36
Alarm system	
Function indication	38
Functional description	38
Switching off interior surveillance and inclination sensor	38
Switching on and off	38
Alcantara®	
Care instructions	65
All-wheel drive	
Torque distribution display	124
Alloy wheels	
Care instructions	64
Aluminium rims	
Care instructions	64
Ambient lighting	127
Anti-lock brake system (ABS)	
Functional description	186
Antifreeze	
In coolant	90
In washer fluid	199
Apple CarPlay	
Siri	39
Apple CarPlay	39
Switching between iPod and Apple CarPlay	40

Apps	
Porsche Connect App	41
Porsche Road Trip app	42
Porsche Track Precision App	41
Ashtray	
Emptying	210
Opening	210
Assigning ◊ button	246
AUTO (light switch)	
Automatic headlights	140
Auto Start Stop function	
Automatic engine start (vehicles with manual transmission)	49
Automatic engine start (Vehicles with PDK)	50
Automatic engine stop (vehicles with manual transmission)	49
Automatic engine stop (Vehicles with PDK)	49
Exceptions	50
Operating principle	49
Prerequisites	49
Automatic Coming Home lights	141
Automatic transmission	233

B

Baby carrier	78
Baby seat	78
Switching passenger airbag on and off	78
Battery	
Care (lead battery)	52
Care (lithium battery)	54
Charging (lead battery)	52
Charging (lithium battery)	54
Installation position (lead battery)	52
Installation position (lithium battery)	54
Instructions (lead battery)	52
Instructions (lithium battery)	54
Jump-lead starting (lead battery)	129
Jump-lead starting (lithium battery)	130
Lead battery	52
Lithium battery	54
Procedure after connection (lead battery)	52
Procedure after connection (lithium battery)	54
Replacing (lead battery)	52
Replacing (lithium battery)	54
Vehicle electrical system warning (lead battery)	52
Vehicle electrical system warning (lithium battery)	54
Warnings on the battery (lead battery)	52
Warnings on the battery (lithium battery)	54

Belts		Plastic parts	64	Centre console	
Care instructions	66	Protective films	64	Front storage compartment	219-220
Fastening	201	Race-Tex	65	Changing battery	
Notes	200	Scheinwerfer	64	Driver's key	98
Opening seat-belt buckle and removing seat belt	201	Seals	64	Changing button assignment on multi-function steering wheel	246
Seat-belt pretensioners	200	Seat belts	66	Chassis number	280
Warning light on the tachometer	200	Underbody protection	63	Chassis setup	
Warning message	200	Use of high-pressure cleaning equipment	61	Selecting	174
Bend ahead warning	231	Warnings	61	Check Engine (emission control)	121
Bluetooth®		Wheel bolts	244	child restraint system	79
Connecting a mobile phone	223	Windows	63	Child restraint system	
Device Manager	96	Car jack mode	246	Installing	78
Bonnet	107	Car washing	61	Installing with ISOFIX system	79
Brake fluid	57	Care instructions	61	Switching passenger airbag on and off	78
Changing brake fluid	57	Airbags	65	Using correctly	73
Checking the brake fluid level	57	Alcantara®	65	Child seat	
Brake pads		Alloy wheels	64	Installing	78
Warning message, brakes	59	Car washing	61	Installing with ISOFIX system	79
Brakes		Carpet	65	Switching passenger airbag on and off	78
Brake pad warning message	59	Decorative films	64	Top tether	81
Footbrake	59	Displays	66	Using correctly	73
Multi-collision brake	186	Fabric lining	65	Cleaning the air deflector	209
Porsche Ceramic Composite Brake (PCCB)	59	Floor mats	65	Cleaning the camera	
Test stand	227	Laying up a vehicle	66	Operating camera cleaning system	165
Breakdown		Leather	65	Clutch	
Breakdown call	106	Paint	63	Manual transmission	236
Breakdown call		PCM	66	CO ₂ emissions	281
Data transmission	106	Protective films	64	Cockpit	
Triggering	106	Race-Tex	65	Adjusting lighting	127
Buttons on the multi-function steering wheel	122	Screens	66	Car & Info display	120
C		Seals	64	Coolant temperature gauge	121
Cabriolet		Seat belts	66	Fuel gauge	121
Convertible top care	62	Touch displays	66	Odometer	124
Opening/closing convertible top	82	Underbody protection	63	Speed & Assist display	120
Roll-over protection	194	Wheel bolts	244	Tachometer	120
Wind deflector	83	Windows	63	Trip counter	124
Cabriolet: side windows	274	Care of wheels	64	Warning and indicator lights	121
Car care	61	Carpet	65	Collapsible spare wheel	111
Airbags	65	Care instructions	65	Comfort Access	
Alcantara®	65	Central locking		Locking vehicle	71
Alloy wheels	64	Locking vehicle with Comfort Access	71	Operating principle	68
Car washing	61	Locking vehicle with the driver's key	70	Unlocking vehicle	69
Decorative films	64	Opening and locking vehicle from inside	71	Comfort memory package	169
Fabric lining	65	Storing and retrieving personal settings	169	Comfort pressure	
Laying up a vehicle	66	Unlocking vehicle with Comfort Access	69	Selecting	240
Leather	65	Unlocking vehicle with driver's key	69	Speed warning	239
Paint	63	Centre armrest		Congestion updates (Navigation)	162
		Front storage compartment	220		

Connect			
Using Porsche Connect services	183		
Connecting an external device via USB	181		
Connection manager	96		
Connection status	225		
Connectivity			
Connection status	225		
Establishing data connection	182		
Using Porsche Connect services	183		
Contacts (phone)	222		
Convertible top			
Car Care	62		
Emergency operation	83		
Opening/closing	82		
Opening/closing with driver's key (remote control)	83		
Raising/lowering the wind deflector	83		
Convertible-top compartment lid			
Service position	107		
Coolant	90		
Adding coolant	90		
Checking coolant level	90		
Cornering lights			
Dynamic cornering lights	142		
Cruise control			
Activating	93		
Changing the speed	93		
Cruise control	92		
Display elements	92		
Functional description	92		
Interrupting operation	93		
Storing the speed	93		
Switching on	92		
Cupholders	94		
D			
DAB			
Retrieving program guide (EPG)	154		
Setting frequency range	152		
Data connection			
Device Manager	96		
Establishing (embedded SIM card)	182		
Establishing (external SIM card)	182		
Establishing (external WiFi hotspot)	183		
Selecting access point (APN)	182		
Using vehicle WiFi hotspot	183		
Date and time			
Setting	246		
Decorative films	64		
Care instructions	64		
Device Manager	96		
Diagnostic socket	7		
Digital Driver's Manual			
App	3		
On-board	3		
Digital speedometer	120		
Dimensions	281		
Dipped beams	140		
Direction indicator	143		
Lever	143		
Displaying and resetting odometer	124		
Displaying and resetting trip counter	124		
Displaying service intervals on the instrument cluster	126		
Displaying/editing e-mails	226		
Displaying/editing messages (text messages/e-mails)	226		
Displaying/editing text messages	226		
Displays			
Care instructions	66		
Door			
Emergency locking	72		
Emergency unlocking	72		
Locking vehicle with Comfort Access	71		
Locking with Comfort Access	71		
Locking with the driver's key	70		
Opening	71		
Opening and locking from inside	71		
Doors			
Cabriolet windows	274		
Drink holders	94		
Driver memory package	169		
Driver profile	169		
Driver's key	97		
Driver's key			
Changing battery	98		
Locking vehicle	70		
Unlocking vehicle	69		
Driver's key (remote control)			
Lifting and lowering the slide/tilt roof	207		
Opening/closing convertible top	83		
Opening/closing windows (without Comfort Access)	274		
Driving data display (trip information)	99		
Driving off			
Launch Control	235		
Driving programme	100		
Driving programmes	100		
Dynamic cornering lights	142		
Dynamic high beam	142		
E			
Electric parking brake			
Actuating	58		
Automatic parking brake release upon driving off	58		
Emergency braking function	58		
Releasing	58		
Testing on brake test stand	227		
Warning light	58		
Embedded SIM card			
Establishing data connection	182		
Emergency braking function	58		
Emergency call	103		
Breakdown Call	106		
Emergency locking of doors	72		
Emergency operation			
Filler flap	192		
Of the convertible top	83		
Of the wind deflector	83		
Emergency release			
Of luggage compartment lid	150		
Emergency unlocking of doors	72		
Emission control (Check Engine)	121		
Emission control warning light	121		
Encounter lights	143		
Engine			
Automatic stopping (Auto Start Stop function) (Vehicles with PDK)	49		
Cooling system	121		
Refilling oil	108		
Starting	216		
Stopping	216		
Stopping automatically (Auto Start Stop function) (vehicles with manual transmission)	49		
Engine compartment lid	107		
Engine oil	108		
Adding	108		
Filler opening	109		
General information	108		
Entering a stopover (Navigation)	161		
Entering/searching for a destination	159		
EPG (program guide)	154		
Extending spoilers			
Operating principle	212		

Exterior mirror			
Adjusting	155		
Adjusting as parking aid	156		
Storing settings (memory)	156		
Exterior mirrors			
Folding in/out	156		
External SIM card			
Establishing data connection	182		
F			
Fabric lining (care instructions)	65		
Factory settings			
Reset vehicle settings	246		
Faults			
Convertible top	83		
Driver's key battery	98		
Emergency unlocking of the filler flap	192		
Slide/tilt roof	208		
Storing end position of sun blind	208		
Storing end position of the slide/tilt roof	208		
Wind deflector	83		
Filler flap			
Emergency operation	192		
Identification of location	121		
Filling capacities	281		
Engine oil	281		
Washer fluid	281		
Fire extinguisher	13		
First aid kit	146		
Fitting ice or sun shields	278		
Flat driver's key battery			
Starting the vehicle	98		
Floor mats			
Care instructions	65		
Fluids and fuels	281		
Engine oil	281		
Fuel	281		
Washer fluid	281		
FM			
Setting frequency range	152		
Folding rear seat backrest forward	205		
Folding seat backrest forward or back	204		
Footbrake			
Safety instructions	59		
Footwell temperature			
Adjusting	47		
Four-wheel drive			
All-wheel display	124		
Front axle lift system			
Functional description	113		
Front axle ride-height lift system			
Faults	113		
Front seat			
Adjusting	203		
Folding seat backrest forward or back	204		
Fuel			
Fuel reserve warning	121		
Octane rating	191		
Quality	191		
Refuelling	191		
Tank capacity	281		
Fuel consumption	281		
Fuel gauge	121		
Fuel level indicator	121		
Full beam assist	142		
Full load			
Setting	240		
Function buttons on the multi-function steering wheel	122		
Fuse	114		
Changing electric fuses	114		
Fuse assignment	114		
Fuse box	114		
G			
G-force display	124		
Garage door opener			
HomeLink®	117		
Programming	117		
Using	117		
Glove box			
Storage	219		
H			
Hazard warning lights	145		
Headlight calibration, automatic	143		
Headlights			
Adjusting	145		
Care instructions	64		
Changing bulbs	145		
Matrix Beam	142		
Overseas mode	145		
High beam			
Dynamic high beam	142		
High beam stalk	143		
High beams			
Full beam assist	142		
High-pressure cleaning device			
Instructions for use	61		
HOLD function	119		
Driving-Off Assistant	119		
Standstill management	119		
Home screen	180		
HomeLink®			
Garage door opener	117		
HomeLink® Garage door opener			
Programming	117		
Using	117		
Hotspot			
Establishing data connection via external WiFi hotspot	183		
Using PCM WiFi hotspot	183		
I			
Identification number	280		
Identification plate	280		
Ignition lock			
Functional description	216		
Immobiliser	38		
Indicator lights	121		
INDIVIDUAL mode	100		
Info widget	180		
Instrument cluster	121		
Adjusting lighting	127		
Car & Info display	120		
Displaying service intervals	126		
Driving data display (trip information)	99		
Fuel gauge	121		
Menu overview	124		
Modifying display	246		
Odometer	124		
Operating	122		
Selecting options and activating functions	123		
Setting speed limit	126		
Setting speed warning	126		
Speed & Assist display	120		
Sport Chrono stopwatch	213		
Storing and retrieving personal settings	169		
Tachometer	120		
Trip counter	124		
Tyre Pressure Monitoring	238		

Instrument lighting	
Adjusting brightness	127
Set the off delay	127
Instrument panel	
Adjusting lighting	127
Car & Info display	120
Coolant temperature gauge	121
Fuel gauge	121
Modifying display	246
Speed & Assist display	120
Tachometer	120
Warning and indicator lights	121
Intelligent detour	162
Interior lighting	
Ambient lighting	127
Switching on and off	127
Interior mirror	
Adjusting	157
Dimming	157
Switching automatic anti-dazzle function on/off	158
Internet	
Establishing data connection	182
Ioniser	
Switching on/off	47
ISOFIX system	
Installation of child restraint system with ISOFIX system	79
Top tether	81
J	
Jack	
Lifting the vehicle	128
Jump-lead starting	129-130
External power supply (lead battery)	129
External power supply (lithium battery)	130
K	
Key	
Lifting and closing the slide/tilt roof	207
Locking vehicle	70
Opening/closing convertible top	83
Removing the emergency key	97
Storing and retrieving personal settings	169
Unlocking vehicle	69
Keyboard	179
Kombiinstrument	
Warning and indicator lights	121

L

Lane Change Assist	
Driving situations	134
Operating principle	133
Setting display brightness	134
Lane Change Assist (LCA)	
Rear Turn Assist	132
Switching on and off	132
Lane Keep Assist	137
Switching on/off	138
Language	
Setting	246
Lateral acceleration forces	
Display	124
Launch Control	235
Laying up a vehicle	66
LCA	
Lane Change Assist	132
Leather	
Care instructions	65
Light bulbs	145
Lighting	
Interior lighting	127
Setting the off delay for the interior lighting	127
Lights	
Adverse weather lights	142
Ambient lighting	127
Automatic Coming Home lights	141
Automatic headlight calibration	143
Automatic headlights	140
Care instructions	64
Changing bulbs	145
Dipped beams	140
Direction indicator	143
Dynamic high beam	142
Encounter lights	143
Entry function/Exit function	141
Exterior lights	140
Fog function	142
Full beam assist	142
Hazard warning lights	145
High beam	143
Interior lighting	127
Matrix Beam	142
Motorway function	142
Overseas mode	145
Passing lights	143
Porsche Dynamic Light System Plus (PDLs Plus)	141-142

Rear fog light	140
Setting the off delay	141
Side lights	140
Signage glare reduction	143
Situational lighting distribution	142
Switching off	141
Turning light	142
Listening to mailbox	222
Load	
Transported on the roof	195
Locking	
Emergency locking of vehicle	72
Locking vehicle from inside	71
Locking vehicle with Comfort Access	71
Locking vehicle with driver's key	70
Locking vehicle with the driver's key	69-70
SAFELOCK	70
Locking options	
Setting	246
Longitudinal acceleration forces	
Display	124
Luggage compartment	146
Closing	150
Emergency release	150
Opening	149
Luggage compartment lid	
Closing	150
Emergency release	150
Opening	149
M	
Maintenance work	
Adding engine oil	108
Adding washer fluid	199
Malfunctions	
Power windows	274
Storing end position of windows	274
Manual transmission	
Upshift indicator	236
Map (Navigation)	
Calling up	159
Configuring	162
Matrix Beam	142
Media	152
Browsing	152
Connecting an external device via USB	181
Making settings	154
Playing	152
Ports in the armrest	180

- Retrieving program guide (EPG) 154
- Selecting a source 152
- Storing/editing a favourite 153
- Supported media and data formats 285
- Tuning/storing stations 152
- Memory package 169
- Minor repairs
 - In the event of a flat tyre 110
 - Securing vehicle to prevent it from rolling away 110
 - Towing the vehicle 228
- Mirror
 - Adjusting exterior mirrors 155
 - Adjusting exterior mirrors as parking aid 156
 - Exterior mirror heating 48
 - Storing exterior mirror settings (memory) 156
 - Switching automatic anti-dazzle function on and off 158
 - Vanity mirror 221
- Mirrors
 - Folding exterior mirrors in/out 156
- Mobile data (connectivity) 182
- Mobile phone
 - Connecting a mobile phone 223
 - Connecting via Bluetooth® (known mobile phone) 224
 - Connecting via Bluetooth® (new mobile phone) 223
 - Connecting via Bluetooth® (second mobile phone) 224
 - Connecting via Bluetooth® (Windows® and iOS operating system) 224
 - Stowing 226
- Mode switch 100
- Motorway lights 142
- Multi-collision braking
 - Functional description 186
- Multi-function steering wheel
 - Assigning ◊ button 246
 - Buttons 122
- Music
 - Connecting an external device via USB 181
 - Playing 152
 - Ports in the armrest 180
 - Storing/editing a favourite 153
 - Supported data formats 285
- N**
- Navigation 159
 - Avoiding traffic disruptions 162
 - Configuring map content 162
 - Displaying traffic notices 162
 - Displaying/configuring the map display 162
 - Entering a stopover 161
 - Entering GPS coordinates 159
 - Entering/searching for a destination 159
 - Map view and navigation information on the instrument cluster 162
 - Planning a tour 161
 - Settings 162
 - Smart routing 161
 - Toll devices 163
- Night View Assist 164
 - Cleaning 165
 - Switching on/off 165
- O**
- Octane rating
 - Petrol 191
- Off delay
 - Setting 141
- Oil 108
 - Adding 108
 - Filler opening 109
 - General information 108
- On-board computer
 - Driving data display (trip information) 99
 - Menu overview 124
 - Tyre Pressure Monitoring 238
- Online navigation 159
- Online Services
 - Establishing data connection 182
- Opening and closing
 - Convertible top 82
 - Windows 273
- Opening and locking
 - Roll-up sunblind 207
 - Slide/tilt roof 206
 - Storing and retrieving personal settings 169
- Opening Driver's Manual in vehicle 180
- Opening manual in PCM 180
- Opening playlist 152
- Operating mode indicator 233
- Operating PCM
 - with rotary push button and buttons 178
- Operating rotary push button and buttons 178
- Operating the PCM
 - With the touch display 178
- Overseas mode
 - Lights 145
- P**
- Paint 63
 - Care 63
 - Care instructions 63
 - Polishing 63
 - Preserving 63
 - Removing marks 63
 - Repairing damage 63
- ParkAssist 166
 - Reversing camera 167
 - Surround View 167
- Parking
 - ParkAssist 166
 - PDK 233
 - Reversing camera 167
 - Surround View 167
- Parking aid
 - Swivelling down mirror glass 156
- Parking brake
 - Actuating 58
 - Automatic release 58
 - Manual release 58
 - Releasing 58
 - Testing on brake test stand 227
- Partial load
 - Setting 240
- PAS
 - Warning and brake assist 171
- PASM (Porsche Active Suspension Management)
 - Selecting chassis setup 174
- PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF/ON indicator 37
- Passenger mirror
 - Adjusting 155
 - Adjusting as parking aid 156
 - Folding in/out 156
- Passing lights 143
- PCM
 - Apple CarPlay 39
 - Care instructions 66
 - Configuring Home screen 180
 - Configuring Info widget 180
 - Driving data display (trip information) 99
 - Entering text and characters 179
 - Freehand entry 179
 - Home screen 180
 - Info widget 180
 - Keyboard 179
 - Modifying display 246
 - Opening menus 178

PCM phone	184
Setting time or temperature display	179
Switching on PCM phone	182
Switching on telephone function	182
Touch display in dashboard	177
Using PCM WiFi hotspot	183
PCM hotspot	183
PCM phone	184
PDK	233
Shifting gears on the steering wheel	234
PDS Plus	141-142
Petrol	
Fuel gauge	121
Fuel reserve warning	121
Octane rating	191
Quality	191
Refuelling	191
Petrol octane rating	191
Phone	
Breakdown call	106
Connecting via Bluetooth® (Windows® and iOS operating system)	224
Planning a tour (Navigation)	161
Plug socket (12 V)	211
Porsche Active Safe	
Preventive occupant protection function	172
Setting the distance warning	171
Setting the warning time for the collision warning	172
Switching on/off	171
Switching the collision warning off and on	172
Warning and brake assist	171
Porsche Active Suspension Management (PASM)	
Functional description	174
Porsche Ceramic Composite Brake (PCCB)	59
Porsche Communication Management (PCM)	
Opening manual in vehicle	180
Operating	175
Touch display in dashboard	177
Porsche Connect	
Establishing data connection	182
Logging in user (Porsche ID)	183
Managing user (Porsche ID)	183
PCM phone	184
Private mode	184
Settings	184
Using services	183
Porsche Connect App	41
Connecting to PCM via WiFi	41
Porsche Doppelkupplung (PDK)	
Operating mode	233
Shifting gears on the steering wheel	234
Porsche Dynamic Light System Plus (PDS Plus)	141-142
Porsche Road Trip app	42
Porsche Stability Management (PSM)	
Functional description	185
Switching off	185
Porsche Track Precision App	41
Porsche Vehicle Tracking System (PVTS)	188
Porsche Vehicle Tracking System Plus (PVTS Plus)	188
Porsche Wet Mode	100
Ports in the armrest	181
SD card reader	180
SIM card reader	180
USB	180
Power windows	
Closing windows using proximity sensor in door handle (vehicles with Comfort Access)	274
Opening/closing windows	273
Opening/closing windows with driver's key (remote control)	274
Storing end position	274
Private mode	184
Program guide (EPG)	154
Protective films	64
Care instructions	64
PSM (Porsche Stability Management)	
Functional description	185
Switching off	185
PSM Sport	185
Switching on	185
Pushing the emergency key	97
R	
Race-TeX	
Care instructions	65
Radar sensor	
Adaptive cruise control	29
Radio	152
Online radio	152
Setting frequency range	152
Storing/editing a favourite	153
Tuning/storing stations	152
Rear fog light	
Adaptation of light distribution	142
Switching on/off	140
Rear seat storage space	205
Rear spoiler	212
Operating principle	212
Rear Turn Assist	132
Rear window	
Switching heating on/off	48
Rear window wiper	277
Reverse function	277
Refuelling	191
Fuel	191
Identification for location of filler flap	121
Remote control	97
Lifting and closing the slide/tilt roof	207
Locking vehicle	70
Opening/closing convertible top	83
Unlocking vehicle	69
Retractable rear spoiler	
Extending and retracting	212
Retrieving personal settings	169
Reversing camera	167
Roll-over protection (Cabriolet)	194
Roll-up sunblind	
Opening/closing	207
Roof transport system	
Fitting basic carrier	195
Transporting a load on the roof	195
Warnings	195
S	
SAFELOCK	70
Deactivating with proximity sensor on door handle	71
Deactivating with the driver's key	70
Saving	
Personal settings	169
Screens	
Care instructions	66
SD card reader	180
Sealant/sealing set	
For defective tyres	110
Seals	
Care instructions	64
Seat belts	
Care instructions	66
Fastening	201
Notes	200
Opening seat-belt buckle and removing seat belt	201
Seat-belt pretensioners	200

Warning light on the tachometer	200	Snow chains		Switching on telephone function	182
Warning message	200	General information	243	Switching seat heating on/off	205
Seat memory	169	Spare wheel	111	Switching seat ventilation on/off	205
Seat-belt pretensioners	200	Spoiler		Switching steering wheel heating on/off	217
Seats		Operating principle	212		
Adjusting front seat	203	Sport Chrono mode switch	100		
Adjusting seat position	203	Sport Chrono stopwatch	213		
Baby carrier	78	Sport exhaust system	102		
Folding rear seat backrest forward or back	205	SPORT mode	100		
Folding seat backrest forward or back	204	SPORT PLUS mode	100		
Storing and retrieving the seat position	169	Standard pressure			
Selecting a source (media)	152	Selecting	240		
Selecting access point (APN)	182	Start Stop function	49		
Selecting APN (access point)	182	Starting			
Service history		Engine	216		
Displaying	246	Steering column lock	38		
Service position	278	Steering wheel			
Setting automatic air-recirculation mode		Adjusting	217		
Air-conditioning system	47	Assigning \diamond button	246		
Setting speed limit on instrument cluster	126	Steering lock	216		
Setting speed warning on instrument cluster	126	Switching heating on/off	217		
Settings		Stopping			
Storing and retrieving personal settings	169	Engine	216		
Vehicle	246	Stopping engine automatically (Auto Start Stop function) (vehicles with manual transmission)	49		
Shifting gears		Stopping the engine automatically (Auto Start Stop function) (Vehicles with PDK)	49		
Manual transmission	236	Stopwatch	213		
Porsche Doppelkupplung (PDK)	233	Storage compartment			
Side lights	140	Opening in the front armrest	220		
Signage glare reduction	143	Storage options	219		
SIM card		Storage options	219		
Establishing data connection	182	Storage compartment in front armrest	220		
Using the phone	222	Storing end position of power windows	274		
SIM card reader	180	Storing end position of sun blind	208		
Siri	39	Storing end position of the slide/tilt roof	208		
Slide/tilt roof		Storing/editing a favourite			
Cleaning the air deflector	209	Media	153		
Closing if roof drive mechanism fails	208	Telephone	225		
Emergency operation	208	Stowing mobile phone	226		
Functional description	206	Summer tyre			
Lifting and closing the slide/tilt roof with the driver's key	207	Storage	243		
Storing end position	208	Sun blind			
Smart routing	161	Storing end position	208		
Smartphone		Sun visor	221		
Connecting via Bluetooth®	223	Switching automatic anti-dazzle function on and off	158		
Stowing	226	Switching exterior mirror heating on/off	48		
Smoker's package	210				

T

Tachometer	120
Technical data	
CO ₂ emissions	281
Filling capacities	281
Fuel consumption	281
Tyre pressure tables	283
Weight	282
Wheel and tyre sizes	283
Telephone	
Connecting via Bluetooth®	223
Connecting via Bluetooth® (known mobile phone)	224
Connecting via Bluetooth® (new mobile phone)	223
Connecting via Bluetooth® (second mobile phone)	224
Connection status	225
Device Manager	96
Dialling a number	222
Emergency call	103
Functions during a phone call	225
Inserting external SIM card	224
Making settings	226
Managing contacts	226
Phone settings on the instrument cluster	225
Storing/editing a favourite	225
Stowing	226
Using PCM with a SIM card	224
Test stands	
Brake test	227
Brake testing	227
Theft protection	38
Tightening torque	
Wheel bolts	244
Toll devices	163
Tool kit	
Removing and stowing	146
Tools	146
Top tether	
Installing child restraint system with top tether	81
Installing child restraint systems with ISOFIX tether	81
Torque	
Tightening torque for wheel bolts	244
Touch display	
Care instructions	66

Modifying display	246
Operating	178
Touch display in dashboard	177
Home screen	180
Info widget	180
Towing	
General information	228
Towing lug	229
Using a towing rope or towing bar	229
Towing lug	
In tool kit	146
TPM (Tyre Pressure Monitoring)	238
Traffic notices	162
Traffic sign detection	
Bend ahead warning	231
Displaying speed limits	231
Transmission	
Manual transmission	236
Porsche Doppelkupplung (PDK)	233
Transport (on car trains, ferries, etc.)	
Securing the vehicle	230
Tray (phone)	226
Tread depth	
Tyres	243
Tuning/storing stations	152
Type of climate control	
Adjusting	47
Tyre filling compressor	
Removing	147
Stowing	148
Tyre pressure	
Check	238
Displaying in instrument cluster	238
Speed warning	239
System is learning	240
Tyre Pressure Monitoring (TPM)	238
Displaying	239
Teaching-in	240
Tyre pressure plate	280
Tyre pressure tables	283
Tyre pressure warning light	121
Tyre sealant/sealing set	
For defective tyres	110
Tyre sealing compound	
Removing and stowing	146
Tyres	238
Checking tyre pressure	238
Displaying pressure deviation	240
Fixing a flat tyre	110
Inscription on tyres	241
Replacing tyres (general information)	242
Sealant	110
Selecting comfort or standard pressure	240
Setting full load or partial load	240
Setting tyre type and tyre size	240
Snow chains (general information)	243
Storage	243
Teaching in new tyres in Tyre Pressure Monitoring (TPM)	240
Tread depth	243
Tyre pressure plate	280
Valves	242
Winter tyres (general information)	242
U	
Underbody protection	63
Care instructions	63
Unlocking	
Emergency unlocking of vehicle	72
Unlocking and opening luggage compartment lid	149
Unlocking vehicle from inside	70
Unlocking vehicle with Comfort Access	69
Unlocking vehicle with driver's key	69
Unlocking and locking the steering wheel	38
Upper ventilation panel	46
USB connection	180-181
V	
Valves	
Tyres	242
Vanity mirror	221
Vehicle	
Emergency locking	72
Emergency unlocking	72
Locking from inside	71
Locking with Comfort Access	71
Locking with the driver's key	70
Unlocking with Comfort Access	69
Unlocking with driver's key	69
Vehicle data carrier	280
Vehicle door	
Locking with Comfort Access	71
Opening	71
Opening and locking from inside	71
Unlocking from inside	70
Vehicle hotspot	183
Vehicle identification number	280
Vehicle settings	
Adjust seat heating, seat ventilation and seat position	246
Adjust volume of warning signals and ParkAssist	246
Changing button assignment on multi-function steering wheel	246
Configuring	246
Displaying pressure deviation	240
Modifying instrument cluster display	246
Modifying PCM display	246
Reset to factory settings	246
Set date and time	246
Set the language	246
Set the voice control system	246
Set units	246
Setting car jack mode	246
Setting door locking options	246
Setting tyre type and tyre size	240
Storing on person buttons	169
Tyre Pressure Monitoring (TPM)	239
Video	
Supported data formats	285
Voice control	248
Adapting	249
Calling up	248
Saying commands	249
Setting	246
Siri	39
Voice commands for air conditioning	253
Voice commands for apps	254
Voice commands for calendar	254
Voice commands for media	250
Voice commands for navigation	251
Voice commands for online music services	254
Voice commands for radio	249
Voice commands for telephone	250
W	
Warning and brake assist	
Porsche Active Safe (PAS)	171
Warning and information messages	255
Driving systems	266
Engine	259
PCM	272
Safety	255
Vehicle	262
Warning lights	121
Warning triangle	146

Washer fluid		Replacing wiper blades	278
Adding	199	Switching on rain sensor	276
Antifreeze	199	Windscreen wiper and washer system	276
Filling capacity	281	Wiper blades	278
Weight	282	Winter tyres	
Wet Mode	100	General information	242
WET mode	100	Wiper blades	
Wetness detection	100	Replacing	278
Wheel and tyre sizes	283	Wireless Internet Access	183
Wheel bolts	244		
Wheels	238		
Changing (without central lock)	243		
Fixing a flat tyre	110		
Inscription on tyres	241		
Replacing tyres (general information)	242		
Security wheel bolt (wrench socket)	244		
Snow chains (general information)	243		
Storage	243		
Tightening torque	244		
Tyre pressure plate	280		
Tyre sealant	110		
Valves	242		
Wheel bolts (care instructions)	244		
Winter tyres (general information)	242		
WiFi			
Device Manager	96		
Establishing data connection via external WiFi hotspot	183		
Using PCM WiFi hotspot	183		
Wind deflector			
Emergency operation	83		
Raising/lowering	83		
Windows			
Care instructions	63		
Defrosting windscreen	48		
Opening/closing	273		
Opening/closing with driver's key (remote control)	274		
Storing end position	274		
Switching heated rear window on/off	48		
Windscreen			
Defrosting	48		
Windscreen washer system			
Adding washer fluid	199		
Antifreeze	199		
Filling capacity	281		
Windscreen wipers			
Care instructions	63		
One-touch function	276		
Rear window wiping	277		